

Symantec™ Storage Foundation and High Availability 6.1 Installation Guide - Solaris

Symantec™ Storage Foundation and High Availability Installation Guide

The software described in this book is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Product version: 6.1

Document version: 6.1 Rev 4

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2015 Symantec Corporation. All rights reserved.

Symantec, the Symantec Logo, the Checkmark Logo, Veritas, Veritas Storage Foundation, CommandCentral, NetBackup, Enterprise Vault, and LiveUpdate are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symantec Corporation or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

The product described in this document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation/reverse engineering. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Symantec Corporation and its licensors, if any.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. SYMANTEC CORPORATION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.

The Licensed Software and Documentation are deemed to be commercial computer software as defined in FAR 12.212 and subject to restricted rights as defined in FAR Section 52.227-19 "Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights" and DFARS 227.7202, "Rights in Commercial Computer Software or Commercial Computer Software Documentation", as applicable, and any successor regulations, whether delivered by Symantec as on premises or hosted services. Any use, modification, reproduction release, performance, display or disclosure of the Licensed Software and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be solely in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

Symantec Corporation
350 Ellis Street
Mountain View, CA 94043

<http://www.symantec.com>

Technical Support

Symantec Technical Support maintains support centers globally. Technical Support's primary role is to respond to specific queries about product features and functionality. The Technical Support group also creates content for our online Knowledge Base. The Technical Support group works collaboratively with the other functional areas within Symantec to answer your questions in a timely fashion. For example, the Technical Support group works with Product Engineering and Symantec Security Response to provide alerting services and virus definition updates.

Symantec's support offerings include the following:

- A range of support options that give you the flexibility to select the right amount of service for any size organization
- Telephone and/or Web-based support that provides rapid response and up-to-the-minute information
- Upgrade assurance that delivers software upgrades
- Global support purchased on a regional business hours or 24 hours a day, 7 days a week basis
- Premium service offerings that include Account Management Services

For information about Symantec's support offerings, you can visit our website at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/index.jsp

All support services will be delivered in accordance with your support agreement and the then-current enterprise technical support policy.

Contacting Technical Support

Customers with a current support agreement may access Technical Support information at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/contact_techsupp_static.jsp

Before contacting Technical Support, make sure you have satisfied the system requirements that are listed in your product documentation. Also, you should be at the computer on which the problem occurred, in case it is necessary to replicate the problem.

When you contact Technical Support, please have the following information available:

- Product release level
- Hardware information

- Available memory, disk space, and NIC information
- Operating system
- Version and patch level
- Network topology
- Router, gateway, and IP address information
- Problem description:
 - Error messages and log files
 - Troubleshooting that was performed before contacting Symantec
 - Recent software configuration changes and network changes

Licensing and registration

If your Symantec product requires registration or a license key, access our technical support Web page at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/

Customer service

Customer service information is available at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/

Customer Service is available to assist with non-technical questions, such as the following types of issues:

- Questions regarding product licensing or serialization
- Product registration updates, such as address or name changes
- General product information (features, language availability, local dealers)
- Latest information about product updates and upgrades
- Information about upgrade assurance and support contracts
- Information about the Symantec Buying Programs
- Advice about Symantec's technical support options
- Nontechnical presales questions
- Issues that are related to CD-ROMs or manuals

Support agreement resources

If you want to contact Symantec regarding an existing support agreement, please contact the support agreement administration team for your region as follows:

Asia-Pacific and Japan customercare_apac@symantec.com

Europe, Middle-East, and Africa semea@symantec.com

North America and Latin America [supportolutions@symantec.com](mailto:supportsolutions@symantec.com)

Documentation

Product guides are available on the media in PDF format. Make sure that you are using the current version of the documentation. The document version appears on page 2 of each guide. The latest product documentation is available on the Symantec website.

<https://sort.symantec.com/documents>

Your feedback on product documentation is important to us. Send suggestions for improvements and reports on errors or omissions. Include the title and document version (located on the second page), and chapter and section titles of the text on which you are reporting. Send feedback to:

doc_feedback@symantec.com

For information regarding the latest HOWTO articles, documentation updates, or to ask a question regarding product documentation, visit the Storage and Clustering Documentation forum on Symantec Connect.

<https://www-secure.symantec.com/connect/storage-management/forums/storage-and-clustering-documentation>

About Symantec Connect

Symantec Connect is the peer-to-peer technical community site for Symantec's enterprise customers. Participants can connect and share information with other product users, including creating forum posts, articles, videos, downloads, blogs and suggesting ideas, as well as interact with Symantec product teams and Technical Support. Content is rated by the community, and members receive reward points for their contributions.

<http://www.symantec.com/connect/storage-management>

Contents

Technical Support	4
Section 1 Installation overview and planning	23
Chapter 1 Introducing Storage Foundation and High Availability	24
About Storage Foundation High Availability	24
About Symantec Replicator Option	25
About Veritas Operations Manager	26
About Storage Foundation and High Availability features	26
About LLT and GAB	26
About I/O fencing	27
About global clusters	28
About Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT)	28
About configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity	30
About I/O fencing for SFHA in virtual machines that do not support SCSI-3 PR	30
About I/O fencing components	31
Chapter 2 System requirements	34
Release notes	34
Important preinstallation information for SFHA	35
Supported operating systems	35
Veritas File System requirements	35
Disk space requirements	36
Checking installed product versions and downloading maintenance releases and hot fixes	37
Obtaining installer hot fixes	38
Disabling external network connection attempts	39
Database requirements	40
I/O fencing requirements	40
Coordinator disk requirements for I/O fencing	40
CP server requirements	41
Non-SCSI-3 I/O fencing requirements	44

	Number of nodes supported	45
Chapter 3	Planning to install SFHA	46
	About installation and configuration methods	46
	About response files	49
	Downloading the Storage Foundation and High Availability software	50
	About the VRTSspt package troubleshooting tools	51
Chapter 4	Licensing SFHA	52
	About Symantec product licensing	52
	Setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing	53
	Installing Symantec product license keys	55
Section 2	Preinstallation tasks	57
Chapter 5	Preparing to install Storage Foundation High Availability	58
	Installation preparation overview	59
	About using ssh or rsh with the installer	59
	Setting up the private network	60
	Setting up shared storage	63
	Setting up shared storage: SCSI disks	63
	Setting up shared storage: Fibre Channel	66
	Creating a root user	67
	Creating the /opt directory	68
	Setting environment variables	68
	Optimizing LLT media speed settings on private NICs	68
	Preparing zone environments	69
	Guidelines for setting the media speed of the LLT interconnects	70
	Mounting the product disc	70
	Assessing the system for installation readiness	71
	Prechecking your systems using the installer	71
	Making the IPS publisher accessible	72

Section 3	Installation using the script-based installer	74
Chapter 6	Installing SFHA	75
	About the script-based installer	75
	Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer	77
	Installing language packages	80
Chapter 7	Preparing to configure SFHA clusters for data integrity	81
	About planning to configure I/O fencing	81
	Typical SF HA cluster configuration with server-based I/O fencing	85
	Recommended CP server configurations	86
	Setting up the CP server	89
	Planning your CP server setup	89
	Installing the CP server using the installer	91
	Configuring the CP server cluster in secure mode	91
	Setting up shared storage for the CP server database	92
	Configuring the CP server using the installer program	93
	Configuring the CP server manually	105
	Configuring CP server using response files	111
	Verifying the CP server configuration	116
	Configuring the CP server using the web-based installer	117
Chapter 8	Configuring SFHA	119
	Configuring Storage Foundation High Availability using the installer	119
	Overview of tasks to configure SFHA using the script-based installer	119
	Required information for configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions	120
	Starting the software configuration	121
	Specifying systems for configuration	122
	Configuring the cluster name	123
	Configuring private heartbeat links	123
	Configuring the virtual IP of the cluster	126
	Configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability in secure mode	127

	Configuring a secure cluster node by node	127
	Adding VCS users	131
	Configuring SMTP email notification	132
	Configuring SNMP trap notification	133
	Configuring global clusters	135
	Completing the SFHA configuration	136
	Verifying and updating licenses on the system	136
	Configuring the SFDB repository database after installation	139
Chapter 9	Manually configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity	140
	Setting up disk-based I/O fencing using <code>installsfha</code>	140
	Initializing disks as VxVM disks	140
	Checking shared disks for I/O fencing	141
	Configuring disk-based I/O fencing using <code>installsfha</code>	144
	Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points for disk-based fencing using the <code>installsfha</code>	148
	Setting up server-based I/O fencing using <code>installsfha</code>	150
	Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points for server-based fencing using the <code>installsfha</code>	158
	Setting the order of existing coordination points for server-based fencing using the <code>installsfha</code>	160
	Setting up non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in virtual environments using <code>installsfha</code>	163
	Enabling or disabling the preferred fencing policy	165
Section 4	Installation using the web-based installer	169
Chapter 10	Installing SFHA	170
	About the web-based installer	170
	Before using the web-based installer	171
	Starting the web-based installer	171
	Obtaining a security exception on Mozilla Firefox	172
	Performing a preinstallation check with the web-based installer	173
	Setting installer options with the web-based installer	173
	Installing SFHA with the web-based installer	174

Chapter 11	Configuring SFHA	176
	Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer	176
	Configuring SFHA for data integrity using the web-based installer	181
Section 5	Automated installation using response files	193
Chapter 12	Performing an automated SFHA installation	194
	Installing SFHA using response files	194
	Response file variables to install Storage Foundation and High Availability	195
	Sample response file for SFHA install	197
Chapter 13	Performing an automated SFHA configuration	199
	Configuring SFHA using response files	199
	Response file variables to configure Storage Foundation and High Availability	200
	Sample response file for SFHA configuration	209
Chapter 14	Performing an automated I/O fencing configuration using response files	210
	Configuring I/O fencing using response files	210
	Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing	211
	Sample response file for configuring disk-based I/O fencing	214
	Response file variables to configure server-based I/O fencing	215
	Sample response file for configuring server-based I/O fencing	216
	Sample response file for configuring non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing	217
	Response file variables to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing	217

Section 6	Installation using operating system-specific methods	219
Chapter 15	Installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods	220
	About installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods	220
	Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using Automated Installer	221
	About Automated Installation	221
	Using Automated Installer	222
	Using AI to install the Solaris 11 operating system and SFHA products	222
	Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using JumpStart	226
	Overview of JumpStart installation tasks	226
	Generating the finish scripts	227
	Preparing installation resources	228
	Adding language pack information to the finish file	229
	Using a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system	230
	Creating the Symantec post-deployment scripts	231
	Manually installing SFHA using the system command	232
	Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using the pkgadd command	232
	Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using the pkg install command	234
	Manually installing packages on solaris10 brand zones	237
Chapter 16	Configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity	239
	Setting up disk-based I/O fencing manually	239
	Removing permissions for communication	240
	Identifying disks to use as coordinator disks	240
	Setting up coordinator disk groups	240
	Creating I/O fencing configuration files	241
	Modifying VCS configuration to use I/O fencing	242
	Verifying I/O fencing configuration	244
	Setting up server-based I/O fencing manually	245
	Preparing the CP servers manually for use by the SF HA cluster	246
	Generating the client key and certificates manually on the client nodes	249
	Configuring server-based fencing on the SF HA cluster manually	251
	Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points	258

	Verifying server-based I/O fencing configuration	259
	Setting up non-SCSI-3 fencing in virtual environments manually	260
	Sample /etc/vxfsfenmode file for non-SCSI-3 fencing	262
Section 7	Managing your Symantec deployments	267
Chapter 17	Performing centralized installations using the Deployment Server	268
	About the Deployment Server	269
	How to install the Deployment Script	270
	Deployment management overview	271
	Setting up a Deployment Server	272
	Setting deployment preferences	274
	Using the Deployment Server command line option to specify a non-default repository location	275
	Using the Deployment Server command line options to load and download the most recent release information	276
	Viewing or downloading available release images	277
	Viewing or removing repository images stored in your repository	281
	Deploying Symantec product updates to your environment	284
	Finding out which releases you have, and which upgrades or updates you may need	285
	Deploying a specific Symantec release	287
	Updating release information on systems without Internet access	288
Section 8	Upgrade of SFHA	290
Chapter 18	Planning to upgrade SFHA	291
	Upgrade methods for SFHA	291
	Supported upgrade paths for SFHA 6.1	292
	Considerations for upgrading SFHA to 6.1 on systems configured with an Oracle resource	295
	About using the installer to upgrade when the root disk is encapsulated	296
	Preparing to upgrade SFHA	296
	Getting ready for the upgrade	296
	Creating backups	299
	Tasks for upgrading the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB)	300

	Determining if the root disk is encapsulated	301
	Pre-upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database	301
	Pre-upgrade planning for Volume Replicator	301
	Preparing to upgrade VVR when VCS agents are configured	304
	Verifying that the file systems are clean	308
	Upgrading the array support	309
	Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes	310
Chapter 19	Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability	313
	Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer when OS upgrade is not required	313
	Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability to 6.1 using the product installer or manual steps	317
	Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer	318
	Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation to 6.1 using upgrade scripts (OS upgrade)	320
	Upgrading SFHA using the web-based installer	324
	Upgrading the Solaris operating system	325
	Upgrading Volume Replicator	328
	Upgrading VVR without disrupting replication	328
	Upgrading language packages	330
Chapter 20	Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA	331
	About rolling upgrades	331
	Supported rolling upgrade paths	334
	Performing a rolling upgrade using the script-based installer	334
	Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA using the web-based installer	337
Chapter 21	Performing a phased upgrade of SFHA	340
	About phased upgrade	340
	Prerequisites for a phased upgrade	340
	Planning for a phased upgrade	341
	Phased upgrade limitations	341
	Phased upgrade example	341
	Phased upgrade example overview	342
	Performing a phased upgrade using the script-based installer	343

	Moving the service groups to the second subcluster	343
	Upgrading the operating system on the first subcluster	348
	Upgrading the first subcluster	348
	Preparing the second subcluster	349
	Activating the first subcluster	353
	Upgrading the operating system on the second subcluster	355
	Upgrading the second subcluster	355
	Finishing the phased upgrade	356
	Performing a phased upgrade using the web-based installer	360
	Upgrading the first subcluster using the web-based installer	361
	Activating the first subcluster using the web-based installer	363
	Upgrading the second subcluster using the web-based installer	364
Chapter 22	Performing an automated SFHA upgrade using response files	366
	Upgrading SFHA using response files	366
	Response file variables to upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability	367
	Sample response file for SFHA upgrade	370
	Performing rolling upgrade of SFHA using response files	370
	Response file variables to upgrade SFHA using rolling upgrade	371
	Sample response file for SFHA using rolling upgrade	372
Chapter 23	Upgrading SFHA using Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade	374
	About Live Upgrade	374
	About ZFS Boot Environment (BE) upgrade	375
	Supported upgrade paths for Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade	376
	Performing Live Upgrade in a Solaris zone environment on Solaris 10	378
	Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems	378
	Before you upgrade SFHA using Solaris Live Upgrade	379
	Creating a new Solaris 10 boot environment on the alternate boot disk	380
	Upgrading SFHA using the installer for Solaris 10 Live Upgrade	384
	Completing the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade	385
	Verifying the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade of SFHA	387
	Administering boot environments in Solaris 10 Live Upgrade	387

	Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems	389
	Creating a new Solaris 11 BE on the primary boot disk	389
	Upgrading SFHA using the installer for upgrading BE on Solaris 11	390
	Completing the SFHA upgrade on BE on Solaris 11	392
	Verifying Solaris 11 BE upgrade	392
	Administering BEs in Solaris 11 BE upgrade	393
	About Live Upgrade in a Volume Replicator (VVR) environment	395
Chapter 24	Performing post-upgrade tasks	396
	Optional configuration steps	396
	Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group	397
	Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade	397
	Post upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database	398
	Migrating from a 5.0 repository database to 6.1	398
	Migrating from a 5.1 or higher repository database to 6.1	401
	After upgrading from 5.0.x and before migrating SFDB	404
	Recovering VVR if automatic upgrade fails	404
	Post-upgrade tasks when VCS agents for VVR are configured	405
	Unfreezing the service groups	405
	Restoring the original configuration when VCS agents are configured	406
	Upgrading disk layout versions	408
	Upgrading VxVM disk group versions	409
	Updating variables	410
	Setting the default disk group	410
	Upgrading the Array Support Library	410
	Adding JBOD support for storage arrays for which there is not an ASL available	410
	Unsuppressing DMP for EMC PowerPath disks	411
	Converting from QuickLog to Multi-Volume support	420
	About enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode	421
	Enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode	423
	Verifying the Storage Foundation and High Availability upgrade	428

Section 9	Post-installation tasks	429
Chapter 25	Performing post-installation tasks	430
	Changing root user into root role	430
	Switching on Quotas	431
Chapter 26	Verifying the SFHA installation	432
	Upgrading the disk group version	432
	Performing a postcheck on a node	433
	Verifying that the products were installed	434
	Installation log files	434
	Using the installation log file	434
	Using the summary file	434
	Starting and stopping processes for the Symantec products	435
	Checking Veritas Volume Manager processes	435
	Checking Veritas File System installation	436
	Verifying Veritas File System kernel installation	436
	Verifying command installation	436
	Verifying the LLT, GAB, and VCS configuration files	437
	Verifying LLT, GAB, and cluster operation	437
	Verifying LLT	438
	Verifying the cluster	440
	Verifying the cluster nodes	441
Section 10	Uninstallation of SFHA	444
Chapter 27	Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability	445
	About removing Storage Foundation and High Availability	446
	Preparing to uninstall	446
	Preparing to remove Veritas Volume Manager	446
	Preparing to remove Veritas File System	454
	Disabling VCS agents for VVR the agents on a system	455
	Removing the Replicated Data Set	456
	Uninstalling SFHA packages using the script-based installer	457
	Uninstalling SFHA with the web-based installer	459
	Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability using the <code>pkgrm</code>	
	or <code>pkg uninstall</code> command	460
	Uninstalling the language packages using the <code>pkgrm</code>	
	command	461

	Manually uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability packages on non-global zones on Solaris 11	462
	Removing the CP server configuration using the installer program	462
	Removing the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after removing the product	464
Chapter 28	Uninstalling SFHA using response files	466
	Uninstalling SFHA using response files	466
	Response file variables to uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability	467
	Sample response file for SFHA uninstallation	468
Section 11	Adding and removing nodes	469
Chapter 29	Adding a node to SFHA clusters	470
	About adding a node to a cluster	470
	Before adding a node to a cluster	471
	Adding a node to a cluster using the SFHA installer	473
	Adding a node using the web-based installer	476
	Adding the node to a cluster manually	477
	Starting Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) on the new node	477
	Configuring cluster processes on the new node	478
	Setting up the node to run in secure mode	480
	Starting fencing on the new node	480
	Configuring the ClusterService group for the new node	481
	Adding a node using response files	482
	Response file variables to add a node to a SFHA cluster	482
	Sample response file for adding a node to a SFHA cluster	483
	Configuring server-based fencing on the new node	483
	Adding the new node to the vxfen service group	485
	After adding the new node	485
	Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after adding a node	485
Chapter 30	Removing a node from SFHA clusters	487
	Removing a node from a SFHA cluster	487
	Verifying the status of nodes and service groups	488
	Deleting the departing node from SFHA configuration	489
	Modifying configuration files on each remaining node	492
	Removing the node configuration from the CP server	493

	Removing security credentials from the leaving node	494
	Unloading LLT and GAB and removing VCS on the departing node	495
	Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after removing a node	497
Section 12	Installation reference	498
Appendix A	SFHA services and ports	499
	About SFHA services and ports	499
Appendix B	Installation scripts	502
	Installation script options	502
	About using the postcheck option	508
Appendix C	Tunable files for installation	511
	About setting tunable parameters using the installer or a response file	511
	Setting tunables for an installation, configuration, or upgrade	512
	Setting tunables with no other installer-related operations	513
	Setting tunables with an un-integrated response file	514
	Preparing the tunables file	515
	Setting parameters for the tunables file	515
	Tunables value parameter definitions	516
Appendix D	Configuration files	524
	About the LLT and GAB configuration files	524
	About the AMF configuration files	527
	About the VCS configuration files	528
	Sample main.cf file for VCS clusters	529
	Sample main.cf file for global clusters	531
	About I/O fencing configuration files	532
	Sample configuration files for CP server	535
	Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a single node that runs VCS	536
	Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a two-node SFHA cluster	538
	Sample CP server configuration (/etc/vxcps.conf) file output	541
	Packaging related SMF services on Solaris 11	542

Appendix E	Configuring the secure shell or the remote shell for communications	543
	About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products	543
	Manually configuring and passwordless ssh	544
	Restarting the ssh session	548
	Enabling and disabling rsh for Solaris	549
Appendix F	Storage Foundation and High Availability components	551
	Storage Foundation and High Availability installation packages	551
	Symantec Cluster Server installation packages	554
	Chinese language packages	555
	Japanese language packages	555
	Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized installation packages	556
Appendix G	Troubleshooting installation issues	560
	Restarting the installer after a failed connection	560
	What to do if you see a licensing reminder	560
	Incorrect permissions for root on remote system	561
	Inaccessible system	562
	Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools from 5.0.x to 6.1 (2184482)	562
	Workaround	563
	Troubleshooting the webinstaller	563
Appendix H	Troubleshooting cluster installation	564
	Unmount failures	564
	Command failures	564
	Installer cannot create UUID for the cluster	565
	The vxfststhdw utility fails when SCSI TEST UNIT READY command fails	565
	Troubleshooting CP server	566
	Troubleshooting issues related to the CP server service group	567
	Checking the connectivity of CP server	567
	Troubleshooting server-based fencing on the SFHA cluster nodes	567

	Issues during fencing startup on SF HA cluster nodes set up for server-based fencing	568
	Issues during online migration of coordination points	568
	Vxfsen service group activity after issuing the vxfsenwap command	569
Appendix I	Sample SF HA cluster setup diagrams for CP server-based I/O fencing	570
	Configuration diagrams for setting up server-based I/O fencing	570
	Two unique client clusters served by 3 CP servers	570
	Client cluster served by highly available CPS and 2 SCSI-3 disks	571
	Two node campus cluster served by remote CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks	572
	Multiple client clusters served by highly available CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks	574
Appendix J	Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks	575
	Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks	575
	Checking major and minor numbers for disk partitions	576
	Checking the major and minor number for VxVM volumes	579
Appendix K	Configuring LLT over UDP	582
	Using the UDP layer for LLT	582
	When to use LLT over UDP	582
	Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv4	582
	Broadcast address in the /etc/lfttab file	583
	The link command in the /etc/lfttab file	584
	The set-addr command in the /etc/lfttab file	584
	Selecting UDP ports	585
	Configuring the netmask for LLT	586
	Configuring the broadcast address for LLT	586
	Sample configuration: direct-attached links	587
	Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers	589
	Using the UDP layer of IPv6 for LLT	591
	When to use LLT over UDP	592
	Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv6	592
	Sample configuration: direct-attached links	592
	Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers	594

Appendix L	Compatibility issues when installing Storage Foundation High Availability with other products	597
	Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when other Symantec products are present	597
	Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when VOM is already present	598
	Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when NetBackup is already present	598
Index		599

Installation overview and planning

- [Chapter 1. Introducing Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Chapter 2. System requirements](#)
- [Chapter 3. Planning to install SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 4. Licensing SFHA](#)

Introducing Storage Foundation and High Availability

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Storage Foundation High Availability](#)
- [About Veritas Operations Manager](#)
- [About Storage Foundation and High Availability features](#)
- [About Symantec Operations Readiness Tools \(SORT\)](#)
- [About configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity](#)

About Storage Foundation High Availability

Symantec Storage Foundation High Availability by Symantec (SFHA) includes the following:

Symantec Storage Foundation

Symantec Storage Foundation includes the following:

- Veritas File System by Symantec (VxFS). Veritas File System is a high-performance journaling file system that provides easy management and quick-recovery for applications. Veritas File System delivers scalable performance, continuous availability, increased I/O throughput, and structural integrity.
- Veritas Volume Manager by Symantec (VxVM). Veritas Volume Manager removes the physical limitations of disk storage. You can configure, share, manage, and optimize storage I/O performance online without interrupting data availability. Veritas Volume Manager also provides easy-to-use, online storage management tools to reduce downtime.

VxFS and VxVM are a part of all Symantec Storage Foundation products. Do not install or update VxFS or VxVM as individual components.

Symantec Cluster Server (VCS)

Symantec Cluster Server by Symantec is a clustering solution that provides the following benefits:

- Reduces application downtime
- Facilitates the consolidation and the failover of servers
- Manages a range of applications in heterogeneous environments

Veritas agents

Veritas agents provide high availability for specific resources and applications. Each agent manages resources of a particular type. For example, the Oracle agent manages Oracle databases. Agents typically start, stop, and monitor resources and report state changes.

Storage Foundation Basic supports all Storage Foundation Standard features, however, there are deployment and technical support limitations.

About Symantec Replicator Option

Symantec Replicator Option is an optional, separately-licensable feature.

Volume Replicator replicates data to remote locations over any standard IP network to provide continuous data availability.

About Veritas Operations Manager

Veritas Operations Manager provides a centralized management console for Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability products. You can use Veritas Operations Manager to monitor, visualize, and manage storage resources and generate reports.

Symantec recommends using Veritas Operations Manager (VOM) to manage Storage Foundation and Cluster Server environments.

You can download Veritas Operations Manager at no charge at <http://go.symantec.com/vom>.

Refer to the Veritas Operations Manager documentation for installation, upgrade, and configuration instructions.

The Veritas Enterprise Administrator (VEA) console is no longer packaged with Storage Foundation products. If you want to continue using VEA, a software version is available for download from

<http://www.symantec.com/operations-manager/support>. Symantec Storage Foundation Management Server is deprecated.

If you want to manage a single cluster using Cluster Manager (Java Console), a version is available for download from

<http://www.symantec.com/operations-manager/support>. You cannot manage the new features of this release using the Java Console. Symantec Cluster Server Management Console is deprecated.

About Storage Foundation and High Availability features

The following section describes different features in the Storage Foundation and High Availability product.

About LLT and GAB

VCS uses two components, LLT and GAB, to share data over private networks among systems. These components provide the performance and reliability that VCS requires.

LLT (Low Latency Transport) provides fast kernel-to-kernel communications, and monitors network connections.

GAB (Group Membership and Atomic Broadcast) provides globally ordered message that is required to maintain a synchronized state among the nodes.

About I/O fencing

I/O fencing protects the data on shared disks when nodes in a cluster detect a change in the cluster membership that indicates a split-brain condition.

The fencing operation determines the following:

- The nodes that must retain access to the shared storage
- The nodes that must be ejected from the cluster

This decision prevents possible data corruption. The installer installs the I/O fencing driver, VRTSvxfen package, when you install SFHA. To protect data on shared disks, you must configure I/O fencing after you install and configure SFHA.

I/O fencing technology uses coordination points for arbitration in the event of a network partition.

I/O fencing coordination points can be coordinator disks or coordination point servers (CP servers) or both. You can configure disk-based or server-based I/O fencing:

Disk-based I/O fencing	<p>I/O fencing that uses coordinator disks is referred to as disk-based I/O fencing.</p> <p>Disk-based I/O fencing ensures data integrity in a single cluster.</p>
Server-based I/O fencing	<p>I/O fencing that uses at least one CP server system is referred to as server-based I/O fencing. Server-based fencing can include only CP servers, or a mix of CP servers and coordinator disks.</p> <p>Server-based I/O fencing ensures data integrity in clusters.</p> <p>In virtualized environments that do not support SCSI-3 PR, SFHA supports non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing.</p>

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

Note: Symantec recommends that you use I/O fencing to protect your cluster against split-brain situations.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

About global clusters

Global clusters provide the ability to fail over applications between geographically distributed clusters when disaster occurs. You require a separate license to configure global clusters. You must add this license during the installation. The installer only asks about configuring global clusters if you have used the global cluster license.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

About Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT)

[Symantec Operations Readiness Tools \(SORT\)](#) is a website that automates and simplifies some of the most time-consuming administrative tasks. It helps you identify risks in your datacenters and improve operational efficiency, enabling you to manage the complexity that is associated with datacenter architectures and scale

[Table 1-1](#) lists three major datacenter tasks and the SORT tools that can help you accomplish them.

Table 1-1 Datacenter tasks and the SORT tools

Task	SORT tools
Prepare for installations and upgrades	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Installation and Upgrade checklists Display system requirements including memory, disk space, and architecture. ■ Installation and Upgrade custom reports Create reports that determine if you're ready to install or upgrade a Symantec enterprise product. ■ Array-specific Module Finder List the latest Array Support Libraries (ASLs) and Array Policy Modules (APMs) for UNIX servers, and Device Driver Installers (DDIs) and Device Discovery Layers (DDLs) for Windows servers. ■ High Availability Agents table Find and download the agents for applications, databases, replication, and Symantec partners.

Table 1-1 Datacenter tasks and the SORT tools (*continued*)

Task	SORT tools
Identify risks and get server-specific recommendations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Patch notifications Receive automatic email notifications about patch updates. (Sign in required.) ■ Risk Assessment check lists Display configuration recommendations based on your Symantec product and platform. ■ Risk Assessment custom reports Create reports that analyze your system and give you recommendations about system availability, storage use, performance, and best practices. ■ Error code descriptions and solutions Display detailed information on thousands of Symantec error codes.
Improve efficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Patch Finder List and download patches for your Symantec enterprise products. ■ License/Deployment custom reports Create custom reports that list your installed Symantec products and license keys. Display licenses by product, platform, server tier, and system. ■ Symantec Performance Value Unit (SPVU) Calculator Use the calculator to assist you with the pricing meter transition. ■ Documentation List and download Symantec product documentation, including manual pages, product guides, and support articles. ■ Related links Display links to Symantec product support, forums, customer care, and vendor information on a single page.

SORT is available at no additional charge.

To access SORT, go to:

<https://sort.symantec.com>

About configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity

When a node fails, SFHA takes corrective action and configures its components to reflect the altered membership. If an actual node failure did not occur and if the symptoms were identical to those of a failed node, then such corrective action would cause a split-brain situation.

Some example scenarios that can cause such split-brain situations are as follows:

- Broken set of private networks
If a system in a two-node cluster fails, the system stops sending heartbeats over the private interconnects. The remaining node then takes corrective action. The failure of the private interconnects, instead of the actual nodes, presents identical symptoms and causes each node to determine its peer has departed. This situation typically results in data corruption because both nodes try to take control of data storage in an uncoordinated manner.
- System that appears to have a system-hang
If a system is so busy that it appears to stop responding, the other nodes could declare it as dead. This declaration may also occur for the nodes that use the hardware that supports a "break" and "resume" function. When a node drops to PROM level with a break and subsequently resumes operations, the other nodes may declare the system dead. They can declare it dead even if the system later returns and begins write operations.

I/O fencing is a feature that prevents data corruption in the event of a communication breakdown in a cluster. SFHA uses I/O fencing to remove the risk that is associated with split-brain. I/O fencing allows write access for members of the active cluster. It blocks access to storage from non-members so that even a node that is alive is unable to cause damage.

After you install and configure SFHA, you must configure I/O fencing in SFHA to ensure data integrity.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

About I/O fencing for SFHA in virtual machines that do not support SCSI-3 PR

In a traditional I/O fencing implementation, where the coordination points are coordination point servers (CP servers) or coordinator disks, Clustered Volume Manager (CVM) and Veritas I/O fencing modules provide SCSI-3 persistent reservation (SCSI-3 PR) based protection on the data disks. This SCSI-3 PR protection ensures that the I/O operations from the losing node cannot reach a disk that the surviving sub-cluster has already taken over.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information on how I/O fencing works.

In virtualized environments that do not support SCSI-3 PR, SFHA attempts to provide reasonable safety for the data disks. SFHA requires you to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in such environments. Non-SCSI-3 fencing uses CP servers as coordination points with some additional configuration changes to support I/O fencing in such environments.

See [“Setting up non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in virtual environments using installsfha”](#) on page 163.

See [“Setting up non-SCSI-3 fencing in virtual environments manually”](#) on page 260.

About I/O fencing components

The shared storage for SFHA must support SCSI-3 persistent reservations to enable I/O fencing. SFHA involves two types of shared storage:

- Data disks—Store shared data
See [“About data disks”](#) on page 31.
- Coordination points—Act as a global lock during membership changes
See [“About coordination points”](#) on page 31.

About data disks

Data disks are standard disk devices for data storage and are either physical disks or RAID Logical Units (LUNs).

These disks must support SCSI-3 PR and must be part of standard VxVM disk groups. VxVM is responsible for fencing data disks on a disk group basis. Disks that are added to a disk group and new paths that are discovered for a device are automatically fenced.

About coordination points

Coordination points provide a lock mechanism to determine which nodes get to fence off data drives from other nodes. A node must eject a peer from the coordination points before it can fence the peer from the data drives. SFHA prevents split-brain when vxfen races for control of the coordination points and the winner partition fences the ejected nodes from accessing the data disks.

Note: Typically, a fencing configuration for a cluster must have three coordination points. Symantec also supports server-based fencing with a single CP server as its only coordination point with a caveat that this CP server becomes a single point of failure.

The coordination points can either be disks or servers or both.

- Coordinator disks

Disks that act as coordination points are called coordinator disks. Coordinator disks are three standard disks or LUNs set aside for I/O fencing during cluster reconfiguration. Coordinator disks do not serve any other storage purpose in the SFHA configuration.

You can configure coordinator disks to use Veritas Volume Manager's Dynamic Multi-pathing (DMP) feature. Dynamic Multi-pathing (DMP) allows coordinator disks to take advantage of the path failover and the dynamic adding and removal capabilities of DMP. So, you can configure I/O fencing to use either DMP devices or the underlying raw character devices. I/O fencing uses SCSI-3 disk policy that is either raw or dmp based on the disk device that you use. The disk policy is dmp by default.

Note: The raw disk policy supports I/O fencing only when a single hardware path from the node to the coordinator disks is available. If there are multiple hardware paths from the node to the coordinator disks then we support dmp disk policy. If few coordinator disks have multiple hardware paths and few have a single hardware path, then we support only the dmp disk policy. For new installations, Symantec recommends IO fencing with dmp disk policy even for a single hardware path.

See the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

- Coordination point servers

The coordination point server (CP server) is a software solution which runs on a remote system or cluster. CP server provides arbitration functionality by allowing the SF HA cluster nodes to perform the following tasks:

- Self-register to become a member of an active SFHA cluster (registered with CP server) with access to the data drives
- Check which other nodes are registered as members of this active SFHA cluster
- Self-unregister from this active SFHA cluster
- Forcefully unregister other nodes (preempt) as members of this active SFHA cluster

In short, the CP server functions as another arbitration mechanism that integrates within the existing I/O fencing module.

Note: With the CP server, the fencing arbitration logic still remains on the SFHA cluster.

Multiple SF HA clusters running different operating systems can simultaneously access the CP server. TCP/IP based communication is used between the CP server and the SF HA clusters.

About preferred fencing

The I/O fencing driver uses coordination points to prevent split-brain in a VCS cluster. By default, the fencing driver favors the subcluster with maximum number of nodes during the race for coordination points. With the preferred fencing feature, you can specify how the fencing driver must determine the surviving subcluster.

You can configure the preferred fencing policy using the cluster-level attribute PreferredFencingPolicy for the following:

- Enable system-based preferred fencing policy to give preference to high capacity systems.
- Enable group-based preferred fencing policy to give preference to service groups for high priority applications.
- Enable site-based preferred fencing policy to give preference to sites with higher priority.
- Disable preferred fencing policy to use the default node count-based race policy.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more details.

See [“Enabling or disabling the preferred fencing policy”](#) on page 165.

System requirements

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Release notes](#)
- [Important preinstallation information for SFHA](#)
- [Supported operating systems](#)
- [Veritas File System requirements](#)
- [Disk space requirements](#)
- [Checking installed product versions and downloading maintenance releases and hot fixes](#)
- [Obtaining installer hot fixes](#)
- [Disabling external network connection attempts](#)
- [Database requirements](#)
- [I/O fencing requirements](#)
- [Number of nodes supported](#)

Release notes

The *Release Notes* for each Symantec product contains last-minute news and important details for each product, including updates to system requirements and supported software. Review the *Release notes* for the latest information before you start installing the product.

The product documentation is available on the web at the following location:

<https://sort.symantec.com/documents>

Important preinstallation information for SFHA

Before you install SFHA, make sure that you have reviewed the following information:

- Preinstallation checklist for your configuration. Go to [the SORT installation checklist tool](#). From the drop-down lists, select the information for the Symantec product you want to install, and click **Generate Checklist**.
- Hardware compatibility list for information about supported hardware: <http://www.symantec.com/docs/TECH211575>
- For important updates regarding this release, review the Late-Breaking News Technote on the Symantec Technical Support website: <http://www.symantec.com/docs/TECH211540>

Supported operating systems

For information on supported operating systems, see the *Storage Foundation and High Availability Release Notes*.

Veritas File System requirements

Veritas File System requires that the values of the Solaris variables `lwp_default_stksize` and `svc_default_stksize` are at least 0x6000 (for Solaris 10) and 0x8000 (for Solaris 11). When you install the Veritas File System package, `VRTSvxfs`, the `VRTSvxfs` packaging scripts check the values of these variables in the kernel. If the values are less than the required values, `VRTSvxfs` increases the values and modifies the `/etc/system` file with the required values. If the `VRTSvxfs` scripts increase the values, the installation proceeds as usual except that you must reboot and restart the installation program. A message displays if a reboot is required.

To avoid an unexpected need for a reboot, verify the values of the variables before installing Veritas File System. Use the following commands to check the values of the variables:

```
For Solaris 10: # echo "lwp_default_stksize/X" | mdb -k
                lwp_default_stksize:
                lwp_default_stksize:          6000

                # echo "svc_default_stksize/X" | mdb -k
                svc_default_stksize:
                svc_default_stksize:          6000
```

```
For Solaris 11: # echo "lwp_default_stksize/X" | mdb -k
                lwp_default_stksize:
                lwp_default_stksize:          8000

                # echo "svc_default_stksize/X" | mdb -k
                svc_default_stksize:
                svc_default_stksize:          8000
```

If the values shown are less than 6000 (for Solaris 10) and less than 8000 (for Solaris 11), you can expect a reboot after installation.

Note: The default value of the `svc_default_stksize` variable is 0 (zero), which indicates that the value is set to the value of the `lwp_default_stksize` variable. In this case, no reboot is required, unless the value of the `lwp_default_stksize` variable is too small.

To avoid a reboot after installation, you can modify the `/etc/system` file with the appropriate values. Reboot the system prior to installing the packages. Add the following lines to the `/etc/system` file:

```
For Solaris 10: set lwp_default_stksize=0x6000
                set rpcmod:svc_default_stksize=0x6000
```

```
For Solaris 11: set lwp_default_stksize=0x8000
                set rpcmod:svc_default_stksize=0x8000
```

Disk space requirements

Before installing your products, confirm that your system has enough free disk space.

Use the **Perform a Preinstallation Check (P)** menu for the web-based installer to determine whether there is sufficient space.

Or, go to the installation directory and run the installer with the `-precheck` option.

```
# ./installer -precheck
```

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Checking installed product versions and downloading maintenance releases and hot fixes

Symantec provides a means to check the Symantec packages you have installed, and download any needed maintenance releases and hot fixes.

Use the `installer` command with the `-version` option to determine what is installed on your system, and download any needed maintenance releases or hot fixes. After you have installed the current version of the product, you can use the `showversion` script in the `/opt/VRTS/install` directory to find product information.

The `version` option or the `showversion` script checks the specified systems and discovers the following:

- Storage Foundation and High Availability product versions that are installed on the system
- All the required packages and the optional Symantec packages installed on the system
- Any required or optional packages (if applicable) that are not present
- Installed hot fixes
- Available base releases (major or minor)
- Available maintenance releases
- Available hot fix releases

To check your systems and download maintenance releases and hot fixes

- 1 Mount the media, or navigate to the installation directory.
- 2 Start the installer with the `-version` option.

```
# ./installer -version sys1 sys2
```

For each system, the installer lists all of the installed base releases, maintenance releases, and hot fixes, followed by the lists of available downloads.

- 3 If you have Internet access, follow the prompts to download the available maintenance releases and hot fixes to the local system.
- 4 If you do not have Internet access, you can download any needed maintenance releases and hot fixes from the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) Patch Finder page at:

<https://sort.symantec.com/patch/finder>

You can obtain installer hot fixes automatically or manually.

See “[Obtaining installer hot fixes](#)” on page 38.

Downloading maintenance releases and hot fixes requires the installer to make outbound networking calls. You can also disable external network connection attempts.

See “[Disabling external network connection attempts](#)” on page 39.

Obtaining installer hot fixes

Symantec occasionally finds issues with the Storage Foundation and High Availability installer, and posts public installer hot fixes on the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) website's Patch Finder page at:

<https://sort.symantec.com/patch/finder>

You can access installer hot fixes automatically or manually.

To download installer hot fixes automatically

- ◆ Starting with Storage Foundation and High Availability version 6.1, installer hot fixes are downloaded automatically. No action is needed on your part.

If you are running Storage Foundation and High Availability version 6.1 or later, and your system has Internet access, the installer automatically imports any needed installer hot fix, and begins using it.

Automatically downloading installer hot fixes requires the installer to make outbound networking calls. You can also disable external network connection attempts.

See “[Disabling external network connection attempts](#)” on page 39.

If your system does not have Internet access, you can download installer hot fixes manually.

To download installer hot fixes manually

- 1 Go to the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) website's Patch Finder page, and save the most current Symantec patch on your local system.
- 2 Navigate to the directory where you want to unzip the file you downloaded in step 1.
- 3 Unzip the patch tar file. For example, run the following command:

```
# gunzip cpi-6.1P2-patches.tar.gz
```

- 4 Untar the file. For example, enter the following:

```
# tar -xvf cpi-6.1P2-patches.tar
patches/
patches/CPI61P2.pl
README
```

- 5 Navigate to the installation media or to the installation directory.
- 6 To start using the patch, run the `installer` command with the `-require` option. For example, enter the following:

```
# ./installer -require /target_directory/patches/CPI61P2.pl
```

Disabling external network connection attempts

When you execute the `installer` command, the installer attempts to make an outbound networking call to get information about release updates and installer hot fixes. If you know your systems are behind a firewall, or do not want the installer to make outbound networking calls, you can disable external network connection attempts by the installer.

To disable external network connection attempts

- ◆ Disable inter-process communication (IPC).

To do this, run the installer with the `-noipc` option.

For example, to disable IPC for system1 (sys1) and system2 (sys2) enter the following:

```
# ./installer -noipc sys1 sys2
```

Database requirements

The following TechNote identifies the most current information on supported database and operating system combinations:

<http://www.symantec.com/docs/DOC4039>

Note: SFHA supports running Oracle and Sybase on VxFS and VxVM.

SFHA does not support running SFDB tools with Sybase.

I/O fencing requirements

Depending on whether you plan to configure disk-based fencing or server-based fencing, make sure that you meet the requirements for coordination points:

- Coordinator disks
See “[Coordinator disk requirements for I/O fencing](#)” on page 40.
- CP servers
See “[CP server requirements](#)” on page 41.

If you have installed SFHA in a virtual environment that is not SCSI-3 PR compliant, review the requirements to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based fencing.

See “[Non-SCSI-3 I/O fencing requirements](#)” on page 44.

Coordinator disk requirements for I/O fencing

Make sure that the I/O fencing coordinator disks meet the following requirements:

- For disk-based I/O fencing, you must have at least three coordinator disks or there must be odd number of coordinator disks.
- The coordinator disks can be raw devices, DMP devices, or iSCSI devices.
- Each of the coordinator disks must use a physically separate disk or LUN. Symantec recommends using the smallest possible LUNs for coordinator disks.
- Each of the coordinator disks should exist on a different disk array, if possible.
- The coordinator disks must support SCSI-3 persistent reservations.
- Symantec recommends using hardware-based mirroring for coordinator disks.
- Coordinator disks must not be used to store data or must not be included in disk groups that store user data.

- Coordinator disks cannot be the special devices that array vendors use. For example, you cannot use EMC gatekeeper devices as coordinator disks.
- The coordinator disk size must be at least 128 MB.

CP server requirements

SFHA 6.1 clusters (application clusters) support coordination point servers (CP servers) which are hosted on the following VCS and SFHA versions:

- VCS 6.1 single-node cluster
Single-node VCS clusters that hosts CP server requires you to configure LLT and GAB.
- SFHA 6.1 cluster

Warning: If you want to upgrade application clusters that use CP server based fencing to 6.1, make sure that you first upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. However, note that the CP server upgraded to 6.1 can support application clusters on 6.1 (HTTPS-based communication) and application clusters prior to 6.1 (IPM-based communication). When you configure the CP server, the installer asks the VIPs for HTTPS-based communication (if the clients are on release version 6.1) or VIPs for IPM-based communication (if the clients are on a release version prior to 6.1).

Make sure that you meet the basic hardware requirements for the VCS/SFHA cluster to host the CP server.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Installation Guide*.

Note: While Symantec recommends at least three coordination points for fencing, a single CP server as coordination point is a supported server-based fencing configuration. Such single CP server fencing configuration requires that the coordination point be a highly available CP server that is hosted on an SFHA cluster.

Make sure you meet the following additional CP server requirements which are covered in this section before you install and configure CP server:

- Hardware requirements
- Operating system requirements
- Networking requirements (and recommendations)
- Security requirements

Table 2-1 lists additional requirements for hosting the CP server.

Table 2-1 CP server hardware requirements

Hardware required	Description
Disk space	To host the CP server on a VCS cluster or SFHA cluster, each host requires the following file system space: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 550 MB in the /opt directory (additionally, the language pack requires another 15 MB) ■ 300 MB in /usr ■ 20 MB in /var ■ 10 MB in /etc (for the CP server database) See " Disk space requirements " on page 36.
Storage	When CP server is hosted on an SFHA cluster, there must be shared storage between the nodes of this SFHA cluster.
RAM	Each CP server requires at least 512 MB.
Network	Network hardware capable of providing TCP/IP connection between CP servers and SFHA clusters (application clusters).

Table 2-2 displays the CP server supported operating systems and versions. An application cluster can use a CP server that runs any of the following supported operating systems.

Table 2-2 CP server supported operating systems and versions

CP server	Operating system and version
CP server hosted on a VCS single-node cluster or on an SFHA cluster	CP server supports any of the following operating systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ AIX 6.1 and 7.1 ■ Linux: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ RHEL 5 ■ RHEL 6 ■ SLES 11 ■ Oracle Solaris 10 ■ Oracle Solaris 11 Review other details such as supported operating system levels and architecture for the supported operating systems. See the <i>Symantec Cluster Server Release Notes</i> or the <i>Symantec Storage Foundation High Availability Release Notes</i> for that platform.

Following are the CP server networking requirements and recommendations:

- Symantec recommends that network access from the application clusters to the CP servers should be made highly-available and redundant. The network connections require either a secure LAN or VPN.
- The CP server uses the TCP/IP protocol to connect to and communicate with the application clusters by these network paths. The CP server listens for messages from the application clusters using TCP port 443 if the communication happens over the HTTPS protocol. TCP port 443 is the default port that can be changed while you configure the CP server. The CP server listens for messages from the application clusters over the IPM-based protocol using the TCP port 14250. Unlike HTTPS protocol, which is a standard protocol, IPM (Inter Process Messaging) is a VCS-specific communication protocol.
Symantec recommends that you configure multiple network paths to access a CP server. If a network path fails, CP server does not require a restart and continues to listen on all the other available virtual IP addresses.
- The CP server supports either Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4 addresses) when communicating with the application clusters over the IPM-based protocol. The CP server only supports Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) when communicating with the application clusters over the HTTPS protocol.
- When placing the CP servers within a specific network configuration, you must take into consideration the number of hops from the different application cluster nodes to the CP servers. As a best practice, Symantec recommends that the number of hops and network latency from the different application cluster nodes to the CP servers should be equal. This ensures that if an event occurs that results in an I/O fencing scenario, there is no bias in the race due to difference in number of hops or network latency between the CPS and various nodes.

For communication between the SFHA cluster (application cluster) and CP server, review the following support matrix:

Table 2-3 Supported communication modes between SFHA cluster (application cluster) and CP server

Communication mode	CP server (HTTPS-based communication)	CP server (IPM-based secure communication)	CP server (IPM-based non-secure communication)
SFHA cluster (release version 6.1)	Yes	No	No
SFHA cluster (release version prior to 6.1)	No	Yes	Yes

Table 2-3 Supported communication modes between SFHA cluster (application cluster) and CP server (*continued*)

Communication mode	CP server (HTTPS-based communication)	CP server (IPM-based secure communication)	CP server (IPM-based non-secure communication)
SFHA cluster in non-secure mode (release version prior to 6.1)	No	No	Yes

For secure communications between the SFHA and CP server over the IPM-based protocol, consider the following requirements and suggestions:

- In a secure communication environment, all CP servers that are used by the application cluster must be configured with security enabled. A configuration where the application cluster uses some CP servers running with security enabled and other CP servers running with security disabled is not supported.
- For non-secure communication between CP server and application clusters, there is no need to configure Symantec Product Authentication Service. In non-secure mode, authorization is still provided by CP server for the application cluster users. The authorization that is performed only ensures that authorized users can perform appropriate actions as per their user privileges on the CP server.

For information about establishing secure communications between the application cluster and CP server, see the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Non-SCSI-3 I/O fencing requirements

Supported virtual environment for non-SCSI-3 fencing:

- Oracle Solaris 11 SRU 11.1.x.y.z, and Oracle Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, and 11
Oracle VM Server for SPARC 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, and 3.0
Guest operating system: Oracle Solaris 10, Oracle Solaris 11

Make sure that you also meet the following requirements to configure fencing in the virtual environments that do not support SCSI-3 PR:

- SFHA must be configured with Cluster attribute UseFence set to SCSI3
- All coordination points must be CP servers

Number of nodes supported

SFHA supports cluster configurations with up to 64 nodes.

Planning to install SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About installation and configuration methods](#)
- [Downloading the Storage Foundation and High Availability software](#)
- [About the VRTSspt package troubleshooting tools](#)

About installation and configuration methods

You can install and configure SFHA using Symantec installation programs or using native operating system methods.

[Table 3-1](#) shows the installation and configuration methods that SFHA supports.

Table 3-1 Installation and configuration methods

Method	Description
The script-based installer	<p>Using the script-based installer, you can install Symantec products (version 6.1 and later) from a driver system running a supported platform to target computers running any supported platform.</p> <p>To install your Symantec product using the installer, choose one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The general product installer: <code>installer</code> The general product installer script provides a menu that simplifies the selection of installation and configuration options. Use the general product installer if you want to install multiple products from a disc. ■ Product-specific installation scripts: <code>installsfha</code> The product-specific installation scripts provide command-line interface options. Installing and configuring with the <code>installsfha</code> script is identical to running the general product installer and specifying SFHA from the list of products to install. Use the product-specific installation scripts to install or configure individual products you download electronically. <p>See "About the script-based installer" on page 75.</p>
The web-based installer	<p>Using the web-based installer, you can install Symantec products (version 6.1 and later) from a driver system running a supported platform to target computers running any supported platform</p> <p>The web-based installer provides an interface to manage the installation and configuration from a remote site using a standard web browser.</p> <p><code>webinstaller</code></p>
Deployment Server	<p>Using the Deployment Server, you can store multiple release images in one central location and deploy them to systems of any supported platform.</p> <p>See "About the Deployment Server" on page 269.</p>

Table 3-1 Installation and configuration methods (*continued*)

Method	Description
Silent installation using response files	<p>Response files automate installation and configuration by using the information that is stored in a specified file instead of prompting you for information.</p> <p>You can use any of the above options to generate a response file. You can then customize the response file for another system. Run the product installation script with the response file option to install silently on one or more systems.</p>
Install Bundles	<p>Beginning with version 6.1, you can easily install or upgrade your systems directly to a base, maintenance, or hot fix level in one step using Install Bundles.</p> <p>The installer installs both releases as if they were combined in the same release image. The various scripts, packages, and patch components are merged, and multiple releases are installed together as if they are one combined release.</p> <p>See “Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes” on page 310.</p>
JumpStart (For Solaris 10 systems)	<p>You can use the product installer of the product-specific installation script to generate a JumpStart script file. Use the generated script to install Symantec packages from your JumpStart server.</p>
Flash Archive (For Solaris 10 systems)	<p>You can use the product installer to clone the system and install the Symantec products on the master system.</p> <p>See “Using a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system” on page 230.</p>
Manual installation and configuration	<p>Manual installation uses the Solaris commands to install SFHA. To retrieve a list of all packages and patches required for all products in the correct installation order, enter:</p> <pre># installer -allpkgs</pre> <p>Use the Solaris commands to install SFHA. Then manually or interactively configure SFHA.</p> <p>See “Manually installing SFHA using the system command” on page 232.</p>

Table 3-1 Installation and configuration methods (*continued*)

Method	Description
Automated Installer (For Solaris 11 systems)	<p>You can use the Oracle Solaris Automated Installer (AI) to install the Solaris 11 operating system and Symantec packages on multiple client systems in a network. AI performs a hands-free installation (automated installation without manual interactions) of SPARC systems.</p> <p>See "Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using Automated Installer" on page 221.</p>

About response files

The installer script or product installation script generates a response file during any installation, configuration, upgrade, or uninstall procedure. The response file contains the configuration information that you entered during the procedure. When the procedure completes, the installation script displays the location of the response files.

You can use the response file for future installation procedures by invoking an installation script with the `-responsefile` option. The response file passes arguments to the script to automate the installation of that product. You can edit the file to automate installation and configuration of additional systems.

You can generate a response file using the `-makeresponsefile` option.

See ["Installation script options"](#) on page 502.

Syntax in the response file

The syntax of the Perl statements that is included in the response file variables varies. It can depend on whether the variables require scalar or list values.

For example, in the case of a string value:

```
$CFG{Scalar_variable}="value";
```

or, in the case of an integer value:

```
$CFG{Scalar_variable}=123;
```

or, in the case of a list:

```
$CFG{List_variable}=["value 1 ", "value 2 ", "value 3 "];
```

Downloading the Storage Foundation and High Availability software

One method of obtaining the Storage Foundation and High Availability software is to download it to your local system from the Symantec website.

For a Trialware download, perform the following. Contact your Symantec representative for more information.

To download the trialware version of the software

- 1 Open the following link in your browser:
<http://www.symantec.com/index.jsp>
- 2 In Products and Solutions section, click the **Trialware** link.
- 3 On the next page near the bottom of the page, click **Business Continuity**.
- 4 Under Cluster Server, click **Download**.
- 5 In the new window, click **Download Now**.
- 6 Review the terms and conditions, and click **I agree**.
- 7 You can use existing credentials to log in or create new credentials.
- 8 Find the product that you want to download and select it. Continue with the installation.

If you download a standalone Symantec product, the single product download files do not contain the product installer. Use the installation script for the specific product to install the product.

Note: Trialware is the full product version. The enabled licensing places the product in a demo or a trial state.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

To download the software

- 1 Verify that you have enough space on your filesystem to store the downloaded software.

The estimated space for download, gunzip, and tar extract is 2 GB for SPARC.

If you plan to install the software on the same system, make sure that you also have enough space for the installed software.

See [“Disk space requirements”](#) on page 36.

- 2 To see the space available, you can use the `df` command with the name of the local file system where you intend to download the software.

```
# /usr/bin/df -l filesystem
```

Caution: When you select a location to download files, do not select a directory that contains Symantec products from a previous release or maintenance pack. Make sure that different versions exist in different directories.

- 3 Download the software, specifying the file system with sufficient space for the file.

About the VRTSspt package troubleshooting tools

The VRTSspt package provides a group of tools for troubleshooting a system and collecting information on its configuration. If you install and use the VRTSspt package, it will be easier for Symantec Support to diagnose any issues you may have.

The tools can gather Veritas File System and Veritas Volume Manager metadata information and establish various benchmarks to measure file system and volume manager performance. Although the tools are not required for the operation of any Symantec product, Symantec recommends installing them should a support case be needed to be opened with Symantec Support. Use caution when you use the VRTSspt package, and always use it in concert with Symantec Support.

Licensing SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Symantec product licensing](#)
- [Setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing](#)
- [Installing Symantec product license keys](#)

About Symantec product licensing

You have the option to install Symantec products without a license key. Installation without a license does not eliminate the need to obtain a license. A software license is a legal instrument governing the usage or redistribution of copyright protected software. The administrator and company representatives must ensure that a server or cluster is entitled to the license level for the products installed. Symantec reserves the right to ensure entitlement and compliance through auditing.

If you encounter problems while licensing this product, visit the Symantec licensing Support website.

http://www.symantec.com/products-solutions/licensing/activating-software/detail.jsp?detail_id=licensing_portal

The product installer prompts you to select one of the following licensing methods:

- Install a license key for the product and features that you want to install.
When you purchase a Symantec product, you receive a License Key certificate. The certificate specifies the product keys and the number of product licenses purchased.
- Continue to install without a license key.
The installer prompts for the product modes and options that you want to install, and then sets the required product level.

Within 60 days of choosing this option, you must install a valid license key corresponding to the license level entitled. If you do not comply with the above terms, continuing to use the Symantec product is a violation of your End User License Agreement, and results in warning messages

For more information about keyless licensing, see the following URL:

<http://go.symantec.com/sfhakeyless>

If you upgrade to this release from a previous release of the Symantec software, the installer asks whether you want to upgrade the key to the new version. The existing license keys may not activate new features in this release.

If you upgrade with the product installer, or if you install or upgrade with a method other than the product installer, you must do one of the following to license the products:

- Run the `vxkeyless` command to set the product level for the products you have purchased. This option also requires that you manage the server or cluster with a management server.
See “Setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing” on page 53.
See the `vxkeyless(1m)` manual page.
- Use the `vxlicinst` command to install a valid product license key for the products you have purchased.
See “Installing Symantec product license keys” on page 55.
See the `vxlicinst(1m)` manual page.

You can also use the above options to change the product levels to another level that you are authorized to use. For example, you can add the replication option to the installed product. You must ensure that you have the appropriate license for the product level and options in use.

Note: To change from one product group to another, you may need to perform additional steps.

Setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing

The keyless licensing method uses product levels to determine the Symantec products and functionality that are licensed.

For more information to use keyless licensing and to download the management server, see the following URL:

<http://go.symantec.com/vom>

When you set the product license level for the first time, you enable keyless licensing for that system. If you install with the product installer and select the keyless option, you are prompted to select the product and feature level that you want to license.

When you upgrade from a previous release, the product installer prompts you to update the `vxkeyless` license product level to the current release level. If you update the `vxkeyless` license product level during the upgrade process, no further action is required. If you do not update the `vxkeyless` license product level, the output you see when you run the `vxkeyless display` command includes the previous release's `vxkeyless` license product level. Each `vxkeyless` license product level name includes the suffix `_previous_release_version`. For example, `DMP_6.0`, or `SFENT_VR_5.1SP1`, or `VCS_GCO_5.1`. If there is no suffix, it is the current release version.

You would see the suffix `_previous_release_version` if you did not update the `vxkeyless` product level when prompted by the product installer. Symantec highly recommends that you always use the current release version of the product levels. To do so, use the `vxkeyless set` command with the desired product levels. If you see `SFENT_60`, `VCS_60`, use the `vxkeyless set SFENT,VCS` command to update the product levels to the current release.

After you install or upgrade, you can change product license levels at any time to reflect the products and functionality that you want to license. When you set a product level, you agree that you have the license for that functionality.

To set or change the product level

- 1 Change your current working directory:

```
# export PATH=$PATH:/opt/VRTSvlic/bin
```

- 2 View the current setting for the product level.

```
# vxkeyless -v display
```

- 3 View the possible settings for the product level.

```
# vxkeyless displayall
```

- 4 Set the desired product level.

```
# vxkeyless set prod_levels
```

where `prod_levels` is a comma-separated list of keywords. The keywords are the product levels as shown by the output of step 3.

If you want to remove keyless licensing and enter a key, you must clear the keyless licenses. Use the NONE keyword to clear all keys from the system.

Warning: Clearing the keys disables the Symantec products until you install a new key or set a new product level.

See [“Installing Symantec product license keys”](#) on page 55.

To clear the product license level

- 1 View the current setting for the product license level.

```
# vxkeyless [-v] display
```

- 2 If there are keyless licenses installed, remove all keyless licenses:

```
# vxkeyless [-q] set NONE
```

For more details on using the `vxkeyless` utility, see the `vxkeyless(1m)` manual page.

Installing Symantec product license keys

The `VRTSvlic` package enables product licensing. After the `VRTSvlic` is installed, the following commands and their manual pages are available on the system:

<code>vxlicinst</code>	Installs a license key for a Symantec product
<code>vxlicrep</code>	Displays the currently installed licenses
<code>vxlictest</code>	Retrieves the features and their descriptions that are encoded in a license key

Even though other products are included on the enclosed software discs, you can only use the Symantec software products for which you have purchased a license.

To install or change a license

- 1 Run the following commands. In a cluster environment, run the commands on each node in the cluster:

```
# cd /opt/VRTS/bin  
  
# ./vxlicinst -k license key
```

- 2 Run the following Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) command to recognize the new license:

```
# vxdctl license init
```

See the `vxdctl(1M)` manual page.

If you have `vxkeyless` licensing, you can view or update the keyless product licensing levels.

See [“Setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing”](#) on page 53.

You can install SFHA if you install a pair of valid VCS and SF keys. Even if your VCS keys and SF keys do not show when you run the `vxkeyless display` command, you can still install and configure SFHA.

Preinstallation tasks

- [Chapter 5. Preparing to install Storage Foundation High Availability](#)

Preparing to install Storage Foundation High Availability

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Installation preparation overview](#)
- [About using ssh or rsh with the installer](#)
- [Setting up the private network](#)
- [Setting up shared storage](#)
- [Creating a root user](#)
- [Creating the /opt directory](#)
- [Setting environment variables](#)
- [Optimizing LLT media speed settings on private NICs](#)
- [Preparing zone environments](#)
- [Guidelines for setting the media speed of the LLT interconnects](#)
- [Mounting the product disc](#)
- [Assessing the system for installation readiness](#)
- [Making the IPS publisher accessible](#)

Installation preparation overview

[Table 5-1](#) provides an overview of an installation using the product installer.

Table 5-1 Installation overview

Installation task	Section
Obtain product licenses.	See “About Symantec product licensing” on page 52.
Download the software, or insert the product DVD.	See “Downloading the Storage Foundation and High Availability software” on page 50. See “Mounting the product disc” on page 70.
Set environment variables.	See “Setting environment variables” on page 68.
Create the <code>/opt</code> directory, if it does not exist.	See “Creating the /opt directory” on page 68.
Configure the Secure Shell (ssh) or Remote Shell (rsh) on all nodes.	See “About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products” on page 543.
Verify that hardware, software, and operating system requirements are met.	See “Release notes” on page 34.
Check that sufficient disk space is available.	See “Disk space requirements” on page 36.
Use the installer to install the products.	See “About the script-based installer” on page 75.

About using ssh or rsh with the installer

The installer uses passwordless Secure Shell (ssh) or Remote Shell (rsh) communications among systems. The installer uses the ssh daemon or rsh daemon that comes bundled with the operating system. During an installation, you choose the communication method that you want to use. Or, you can run the `installer -comsetup` command to set up ssh or rsh explicitly. You then provide the installer with the superuser passwords for the systems where you plan to install. The ssh communication or rsh communication among the systems is removed when the installation process completes, unless the installation abruptly terminates. If installation terminated abruptly, use the installation script's `-comcleanup` option to remove the ssh configuration or rsh configuration from the systems.

See [“Installation script options”](#) on page 502.

In most installation, configuration, upgrade (where necessary), and uninstallation scenarios, the installer can configure ssh or rsh on the target systems. In the following scenarios, you need to set up ssh or rsh manually, or use the `installer -comsetup` option to set up an ssh or rsh configuration from the systems.

- When you perform installer sessions using a response file.

See [“About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products”](#) on page 543.

Setting up the private network

VCS requires you to set up a private network between the systems that form a cluster. You can use either NICs or aggregated interfaces to set up private network.

You can use network switches instead of hubs. However, Oracle Solaris systems assign the same MAC address to all interfaces by default. Thus, connecting two or more interfaces to a network switch can cause problems.

For example, consider the following case where:

- The IP address is configured on one interface and LLT on another
- Both interfaces are connected to a switch (assume separate VLANs)

The duplicate MAC address on the two switch ports can cause the switch to incorrectly redirect IP traffic to the LLT interface and vice versa. To avoid this issue, configure the system to assign unique MAC addresses by setting the `eeprom(1M)` parameter `local-mac-address` to `true`.

The following products make extensive use of the private cluster interconnects for distributed locking:

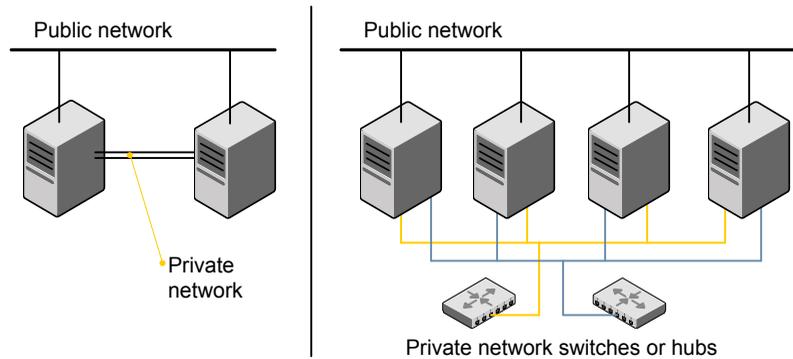
- Symantec Storage Foundation Cluster File System (SFCFS)
- Symantec Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC (SF Oracle RAC)

Symantec recommends network switches for the SFCFS and the SF Oracle RAC clusters due to their performance characteristics.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* to review VCS performance considerations.

[Figure 5-1](#) shows two private networks for use with VCS.

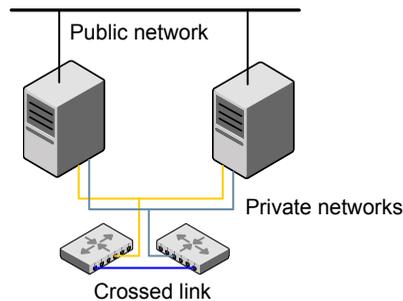
Figure 5-1 Private network setups: two-node and four-node clusters



You need to configure at least two independent networks between the cluster nodes with a network switch for each network. You can also interconnect multiple layer 2 switches for advanced failure protection. Such connections for LLT are called cross-links.

Figure 5-2 shows a private network configuration with crossed links between the network switches.

Figure 5-2 Private network setup with crossed links



Symantec recommends one of the following two configurations:

- Use at least two private interconnect links and one public link. The public link can be a low priority link for LLT. The private interconnect link is used to share cluster status across all the systems, which is important for membership arbitration and high availability. The public low priority link is used only for heartbeat communication between the systems.
- If your hardware environment allows use of only two links, use one private interconnect link and one public low priority link. If you decide to set up only two links (one private and one low priority link), then the cluster must be configured

to use I/O fencing, either disk-based or server-based fencing configuration. With only two links, if one system goes down, I/O fencing ensures that other system can take over the service groups and shared file systems from the failed node.

To set up the private network

- 1 Install the required network interface cards (NICs).
 Create aggregated interfaces if you want to use these to set up private network.
- 2 Connect the SFHA private Ethernet controllers on each system.
- 3 Use crossover Ethernet cables, switches, or independent hubs for each SFHA communication network. Note that the crossover Ethernet cables are supported only on two systems.

Ensure that you meet the following requirements:

- The power to the switches or hubs must come from separate sources.
- On each system, you must use two independent network cards to provide redundancy.
- If a network interface is part of an aggregated interface, you must not configure the network interface under LLT. However, you can configure the aggregated interface under LLT.
- When you configure Ethernet switches for LLT private interconnect, disable the spanning tree algorithm on the ports used for the interconnect.

During the process of setting up heartbeat connections, consider a case where a failure removes all communications between the systems.

Note that a chance for data corruption exists under the following conditions:

- The systems still run, and
- The systems can access the shared storage.

- 4 Configure the Ethernet devices that are used for the private network such that the autonegotiation protocol is not used. You can achieve a more stable configuration with crossover cables if the autonegotiation protocol is not used.

To achieve this stable configuration, do one of the following:

- Edit the `/etc/system` file to disable autonegotiation on all Ethernet devices system-wide.
- Create a `qfe.conf` or `bge.conf` file in the `/kernel/drv` directory to disable autonegotiation for the individual devices that are used for private network.

Refer to the Oracle Ethernet driver product documentation for information on these methods.

- 5 Test the network connections. Temporarily assign network addresses and use `telnet` or `ping` to verify communications.

LLT uses its own protocol, and does not use TCP/IP. So, you must ensure that the private network connections are used only for LLT communication and not for TCP/IP traffic. To verify this requirement, unplumb and unconfigure any temporary IP addresses that are configured on the network interfaces.

The installer configures the private network in the cluster during configuration.

You can also manually configure LLT.

Setting up shared storage

The following sections describe how to set up the SCSI and the Fibre Channel devices that the cluster systems share.

For I/O fencing, the data disks must support SCSI-3 persistent reservations. You need to configure a coordinator disk group that supports SCSI-3 PR and verify that it works.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

See also the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for a description of I/O fencing.

Setting up shared storage: SCSI disks

When SCSI devices are used for shared storage, the SCSI address or SCSI initiator ID of each node must be unique. Since each node typically has the default SCSI address of "7," the addresses of one or more nodes must be changed to avoid a conflict. In the following example, two nodes share SCSI devices. The SCSI address of one node is changed to "5" by using `nvedit` commands to edit the `nvrामrc` script.

If you have more than two systems that share the SCSI bus, do the following:

- Use the same procedure to set up shared storage.
- Make sure to meet the following requirements:
 - The storage devices have power before any of the systems
 - Only one node runs at one time until each node's address is set to a unique value

To set up shared storage

- 1 Install the required SCSI host adapters on each node that connects to the storage, and make cable connections to the storage.

Refer to the documentation that is shipped with the host adapters, the storage, and the systems.
- 2 With both nodes powered off, power on the storage devices.
- 3 Power on one system, but do not allow it to boot. If necessary, halt the system so that you can use the ok prompt.

Note that only one system must run at a time to avoid address conflicts.

- 4 Find the paths to the host adapters:

```
{0} ok show-disks
...b) /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000/sd
```

The example output shows the path to one host adapter. You must include the path information without the "/sd" directory, in the `nvrामrc` script. The path information varies from system to system.

- 5 Edit the `nvrामrc` script on to change the `scsi-initiator-id` to 5. (The *Solaris OpenBoot 3.x Command Reference Manual* contains a full list of `nvedit` commands and keystrokes.) For example:

```
{0} ok nvedit
```

As you edit the script, note the following points:

- Each line is numbered, 0:, 1:, 2:, and so on, as you enter the `nvedit` commands.
- On the line where the `scsi-initiator-id` is set, insert exactly one space after the first quotation mark and before `scsi-initiator-id`.

In this example, edit the `nvrामrc` script as follows:

```
0: probe-all
1: cd /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000
2: 5 " scsi-initiator-id" integer-property
3: device-end
4: install-console
5: banner
6: <CTRL-C>
```

- 6 Store the changes you make to the `nvrामrc` script. The changes you make are temporary until you store them.

```
{0} ok nvstore
```

If you are not sure of the changes you made, you can re-edit the script without risk before you store it. You can display the contents of the `nvrामrc` script by entering:

```
{0} ok printenv nvrामrc
```

You can re-edit the file to make corrections:

```
{0} ok nvedit
```

Or, discard the changes if necessary by entering:

```
{0} ok nvquit
```

- 7 Instruct the OpenBoot PROM Monitor to use the `nvrामrc` script on the node.

```
{0} ok setenv use-nvrामrc? true
```

- 8 Reboot the node. If necessary, halt the system so that you can use the `ok` prompt.

- 9 Verify that the `scsi-initiator-id` has changed. Go to the `ok` prompt. Use the output of the `show-disks` command to find the paths for the host adapters. Then, display the properties for the paths. For example:

```
{0} ok show-disks
...b) /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000/sd
{0} ok cd /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000
{0} ok .properties
scsi-initiator-id      00000005
```

Permit the system to continue booting.

- 10 Boot the second node. If necessary, halt the system to use the `ok` prompt. Verify that the `scsi-initiator-id` is 7. Use the output of the `show-disks` command to find the paths for the host adapters. Then, display the properties for that paths. For example:

```
{0} ok show-disks
...b) /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000/sd
{0} ok cd /sbus@6,0/QLGC,isp@2,10000
{0} ok .properties
scsi-initiator-id      00000007
```

Permit the system to continue booting.

Setting up shared storage: Fibre Channel

Perform the following steps to set up Fibre Channel.

To set up shared storage

- 1 Install the required FC-AL controllers.
- 2 Connect the FC-AL controllers and the shared storage devices to the same hub or switch.

All systems must see all the shared devices that are required to run the critical application. If you want to implement zoning for a fibre switch, make sure that no zoning prevents all systems from seeing all these shared devices.

- 3 Boot each system with the reconfigure devices option:

```
ok boot -r
```

- 4 After all systems have booted, use the `format(1m)` command to verify that each system can see all shared devices.

If Volume Manager is used, the same number of external disk devices must appear, but device names (`c##d##s#`) may differ.

If Volume Manager is not used, then you must meet the following requirements:

- The same number of external disk devices must appear.
- The device names must be identical for all devices on all systems.

Creating a root user

On Oracle Solaris 11, you need to change the root role into a user as you cannot directly log in as root user.

To change root role into a user

- 1 Log in as local user and assume the root role.

```
% su - root
```

- 2 Remove the root role from local users who have been assigned the role.

```
# roles admin

root

# usermod -R " " admin
```

- 3 Change the root role into a user.

```
# rolemod -K type=normal root
```

- 4 Verify the change.

```
■ # getent user_attr root

root:::auths=solaris.*;profiles=All;audit_flags=lo\
:no;lock_after_retries=no;min_label=admin_low;clearance=admin_high
```

If the `type` keyword is not present in the output or is equal to `normal`, the account is not a role.

```
■ # userattr type root
```

If the output is empty or lists `normal`, the account is not a role.

Note: For more information, see the Oracle documentation on Oracle Solaris 11 operating system.

Note: After installation, you may want to change root user into root role to allow local users to assume the root role.

See [“Changing root user into root role”](#) on page 430.

Creating the /opt directory

The directory `/opt` must exist, be writable, and must not be a symbolic link.

If you want to upgrade, you cannot have a symbolic link from `/opt` to an unconverted volume. If you have a symbolic link to an unconverted volume, the symbolic link does not function during the upgrade and items in `/opt` are not installed.

Setting environment variables

Most of the commands which are used in the installation are present in the `/sbin` or `/usr/sbin` directory. Add these directories to your `PATH` environment variable as necessary.

After installation, SFHA commands are in `/opt/VRTS/bin`. SFHA manual pages are stored in `/opt/VRTS/man`.

Add the following directories to your `PATH` and `MANPATH` environment variable:

- If you want to use Bourne or Korn shell (`sh` or `ksh`), enter the following:

```
$ PATH=$PATH:/usr/sbin:/opt/VRTS/bin
$ MANPATH=/usr/share/man:/opt/VRTS/man:$MANPATH
$ export PATH MANPATH
```

- If you want to use a C shell (`csh` or `tcsh`), enter the following:

```
% set path = ( $path /usr/sbin /opt/VRTS/bin )
% setenv MANPATH /usr/share/man:/opt/VRTS/man:$MANPATH
```

Optimizing LLT media speed settings on private NICs

For optimal LLT communication among the cluster nodes, the interface cards on each node must use the same media speed settings. Also, the settings for the switches or the hubs that are used for the LLT interconnections must match that of

the interface cards. Incorrect settings can cause poor network performance or even network failure.

If you use different media speed for the private NICs, Symantec recommends that you configure the NICs with lesser speed as low-priority links to enhance LLT performance.

Preparing zone environments

You need to keep the following items in mind when you install or upgrade VCS in a zone environment on an Oracle Solaris 10 operating system.

- When you install or upgrade SFHA using the `installer` program, all zones are upgraded (both global and non-global) unless they are detached and unmounted.
- Make sure that all non-global zones are booted and in the running state before you install or upgrade the SFHA packages in the global zone. If the non-global zones are not mounted and running at the time of upgrade, you must attach the zone with `-U` option to install or upgrade the SFHA packages inside the non-global zone.
- If you install SFHA on Solaris 10 systems that run non-global zones, you need to make sure that non-global zones do not inherit the `/opt` directory. Run the following command to make sure that the `/opt` directory is not in the `inherit-pkg-dir` clause:

```
# zonecfg -z zone_name info
zonepath: /export/home/zone1
autoboot: false
pool: yourpool
inherit-pkg-dir:
dir: /lib
inherit-pkg-dir:
dir: /platform
inherit-pkg-dir:
dir: /sbin
inherit-pkg-dir:
dir: /usr
```

If the `/opt` directory appears in the output, remove the `/opt` directory from the zone's configuration and reinstall the zone.

After installing packages in the global zone, you need to install the required packages in the non-global zone for Oracle Solaris 11. On Oracle Solaris 11.1, if the non-global zone has an older version of SFHA packages already installed then during the

upgrade of the SFHA packages in global zone, packages inside non-global zone are automatically upgraded provided zone is running.

Guidelines for setting the media speed of the LLT interconnects

Review the following guidelines for setting the media speed of the LLT interconnects:

- Symantec recommends that you manually set the same media speed setting on each Ethernet card on each node.
 If you use different media speed for the private NICs, Symantec recommends that you configure the NICs with lesser speed as low-priority links to enhance LLT performance.
- If you have hubs or switches for LLT interconnects, then set the hub or switch port to the same setting as used on the cards on each node.
- If you use directly connected Ethernet links (using crossover cables), Symantec recommends that you set the media speed to the highest value common to both cards, typically 1000_Full_Duplex.

Details for setting the media speeds for specific devices are outside of the scope of this manual. Consult the device's documentation or the operating system manual for more information.

Mounting the product disc

You must have superuser (root) privileges to load the SFHA software.

To mount the product disc

- 1 Log in as superuser on a system where you want to install SFHA.
 The system from which you install SFHA does not need to be part of the cluster. The systems must be in the same subnet.
- 2 Insert the product disc into a DVD drive that is connected to your system.
- 3 If Solaris volume management software is running on your system, the software disc automatically mounts as /cdrom/cdrom0.
- 4 If Solaris volume management software is not available to mount the DVD, you must mount it manually. After you insert the software disc, enter:

```
# mount -F hsfs -o ro /dev/dsk/c0t6d0s2 /cdrom
```

Where c0t6d0s2 is the default address for the disc drive.

Assessing the system for installation readiness

Symantec provides the following tools for assessing your system, to ensure that the system meets the requirements for installing Storage Foundation 6.1.

Symantec Operations Readiness Tools	<p>Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) is a web-based application that is designed to support Symantec enterprise products.</p> <p>See “About Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT)” on page 28.</p>
Prechecking your systems using the installer	<p>Performs a preinstallation check on the specified systems. The product installer reports whether the specified systems meet the minimum requirements for installing Storage Foundation 6.1.</p> <p>See “Prechecking your systems using the installer” on page 71.</p>

Prechecking your systems using the installer

The script-based and web-based installer's precheck option checks for the following:

- Recommended swap space for installation
- Recommended memory sizes on target systems for Symantec programs for best performance
- Required operating system versions

To use the precheck option

1 Start the script-based or web-based installer.

See [“Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer”](#) on page 77.

See [“Installing SFHA with the web-based installer”](#) on page 174.

2 Select the precheck option:

- From the web-based installer, select the **Perform a Pre-Installation Check** from the Task pull-down menu.
- In the script-based installer, from root on the system where you want to perform the check, start the installer.

```
# ./installer
```

In the Task Menu, press the p key to start the precheck.

- 3 Enter the system name or the IP address of the system that you want to check.
- 4 Review the output and make the changes that the installer recommends.

Making the IPS publisher accessible

The installation of SFHA 6.1 fails on Solaris 11 if the Image Packaging System (IPS) publisher is inaccessible. The following error message is displayed:

CPI ERROR V-9-20-1273 Unable to contact configured publishers on <node_name>.

Solaris 11 introduces the new Image Packaging System (IPS) and sets a default publisher (solaris) during Solaris installation. When additional packages are being installed, the set publisher must be accessible for the installation to succeed. If the publisher is inaccessible, as in the case of a private network, then package installation will fail. The following commands can be used to display the set publishers:

```
# pkg publisher
```

Example:

```
root@sol11-03:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER      TYPE      STATUS    URI
solaris        origin   online    http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/
root@sol11-03:~# pkg publisher solaris
Publisher: solaris
      Alias:
      Origin URI: http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/
      SSL Key: None
      SSL Cert: None
      Client UUID: 00000000-3f24-fe2e-0000-000068120608
      Catalog Updated: October 09:53:00 PM
      Enabled: Yes
      Signature Policy: verify
```

To make the IPS publisher accessible

- 1 Enter the following to disable the publisher (in this case, solaris):

```
# pkg set-publisher --disable solaris
```

- 2 Repeat the installation of SFHA 6.1.

- 3 Re-enable the original publisher. If the publisher is still inaccessible (private network), then the `no-refresh` option can be used to re-enable it.

```
# pkg set-publisher --enable solaris
```

or

```
# pkg set-publisher --enable --no-refresh solaris
```

Note: Unsetting the publisher will have a similar effect, except that the publisher can only be re-set if it is accessible. See `pkg(1)` for further information on the `pkg` utility.

Installation using the script-based installer

- [Chapter 6. Installing SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 7. Preparing to configure SFHA clusters for data integrity](#)
- [Chapter 8. Configuring SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 9. Manually configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity](#)

Installing SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the script-based installer](#)
- [Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer](#)
- [Installing language packages](#)

About the script-based installer

You can use the script-based installer to install Symantec products (version 6.1 and later) from a driver system that runs any supported platform to a target system that runs different supported platforms.

To install your Symantec product, use one of the following methods:

- The general product installer (`installer`). The general product installer script provides a menu that simplifies the selection of installation and configuration options. Use the general product installer if you want to install multiple products from a disc.
See [“Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer”](#) on page 77.
- Product-specific installation scripts (`installsfha`). The product-specific installation scripts provide command-line interface options. Installing and configuring with the `installsfha` script is identical to running the general product installer and specifying SFHA from the list of products to install. Use the product-specific installation scripts to install or configure individual products you download electronically. You can find these scripts at the root of the product media. These scripts are also installed with the product.

[Table 6-1](#) lists all the SFHA Solutions product installation scripts. The list of product-specific installation scripts that you find on your system depends on the product that you install on your system.

Table 6-1 Product installation scripts

Symantec product name	Script name in the media	Script name after an installation
For all SFHA Solutions products	<code>installer</code>	N/A
Symantec ApplicationHA	<code>installapplicationha</code>	<code>installapplicationha<version></code>
Symantec Cluster Server (VCS)	<code>installvcs</code>	<code>installvcs<version></code>
Symantec Storage Foundation (SF)	<code>installsf</code>	<code>installsf<version></code>
Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability (SFHA)	<code>installsfha</code>	<code>installsfha<version></code>
Symantec Storage Foundation Cluster File System High Availability (SFCFSHA)	<code>installsfcfsha</code>	<code>installsfcfsha<version></code>
Symantec Storage Foundation for Oracle RAC (SF Oracle RAC)	<code>installsfrac</code>	<code>installsfrac<version></code>
Symantec Dynamic Multi-pathing (DMP)	<code>installdmp</code>	<code>installdmp<version></code>

When you install from the installation media, the script name does not include a product version.

When you configure the product after an installation, the installation scripts include the product version in the script name.

For example, for the 6.1 version:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha61 -configure
```

Note: The general product installer (`installer`) script does not include the product version.

At most points during the installation you can type the following characters for different actions:

- Use `b` (back) to return to a previous section of the installation procedure. The back feature of the installation scripts is context-sensitive, so it returns to the beginning of a grouped section of questions.
- Use `Control+c` to stop and exit the program if an installation procedure hangs. After a short delay, the script exits.
- Use `q` to quit the installer.
- Use `?` to display help information.
- Use the Enter button to accept a default response.

See [“Installation script options”](#) on page 502.

Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer

The product installer is the recommended method to license and install Storage Foundation and High Availability.

The following sample procedure is based on the installation of Storage Foundation on a single system.

To install Storage Foundation and High Availability

- 1 Set up the systems so that the commands execute on remote machines without prompting for passwords or confirmations with remote shell or secure shell communication utilities.

See [“About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products”](#) on page 543.

- 2 Load and mount the software disc. If you downloaded the software, navigate to the top level of the download directory and skip the next step.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

- 3 Move to the top-level directory on the disc.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0
```

- 4 From this directory, type the following command to start the installation on the local system. Use this command to install on remote systems if secure shell or remote shell communication modes are configured:

```
# ./installer
```

- 5 Enter `i` to install and press Return.

Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer

- 6 When the list of available products is displayed, select Storage Foundation and High Availability, enter the corresponding number, and press Return.
- 7 At the prompt, specify whether you accept the terms of the End User License Agreement (EULA).

```
Do you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement
as specified in the storage_foundation_high_availability/EULA/
lang/EULA_SFHA_Ux_version.pdf file present on the media? [y,n,q,?] y
```

- 8 Select from one of the following installation options:

- Minimal packages: installs only the basic functionality for the selected product.
- Recommended packages: installs the full feature set without optional packages.
- All packages: installs all available packages.

Each option displays the disk space that is required for installation. Select which option you want to install and press Return.

- 9 You are prompted to enter the system names where you want to install the software. Enter the system name or names and then press Enter.

```
Enter the system names separated by spaces:
[q,?] sys1
```

- 10 After the system checks complete, the installer displays a list of the packages to be installed. Press Enter to continue with the installation.
- 11 You need to synchronize the system clocks of your application servers or have them point to an NTP server. After the system check, if the nodes have time difference, the installer prompts:

```
Do you want to synchronize system clock with NTP server(s)?
[y,n,q] (y)
Enter the NTP server names separated by spaces: [b] megami.veritas.com
```

```
Synchronizing system clock on sys1 ..... Done
Synchronizing system clock on sys2..... Done
```

```
System clock synchronized on systems
```

Installing Storage Foundation and High Availability using the script-based installer

- 12 The installer can configure remote shell or secure shell communications for you among systems, however each system needs to have RSH or SSH servers installed. You also need to provide the superuser passwords for the systems. Note that for security reasons, the installation program neither stores nor caches these passwords.
- 13 The installer may prompt to restore previous Veritas Volume Manager configurations.
- 14 Choose the licensing method. Answer the licensing questions and follow the prompts.

Note: The keyless license option enables you to install without entering a key. However, you still need a valid license to install and use Symantec products. Keyless licensing requires that you manage the systems with a Management Server.

- 15 You are prompted to enter the Standard or Enterprise product mode.

- 1) SF Standard HA
- 2) SF Enterprise HA
- b) Back to previous menu

Select product mode to license: [1-2,b,q,?] (2) **1**

- 16 When prompted, decide to enable replication or not:

Would you like to enable the Volume Replicator?
[y,n,q] (n)

When prompted, decide to enable the Global Cluster option or not:

Would you like to enable the Global Cluster Option?
[y,n,q] (n) **n**

- 17 At the prompt, specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.

```
Installation procedures and diagnostic information were saved in the
log files under directory /var/tmp/installer-<platform>-<uuid>.
Analyzing this information helps Symantec discover and
fix failed operations performed by the installer.
Would you like to send the information about this installation to
Symantec to help improve installation in the future? [y,n,q,?] (y) y
```

- 18 Check the log file, if needed, to confirm the installation and configuration.

Installing language packages

To install SFHA in a language other than English, install the required language packages after installing the English packages.

To install the language packages on the server

- 1 Insert the "Language" disc into the DVD-ROM or CD-ROM drive. With Solaris volume management software, the disc is automatically mounted as `/cdrom/cdrom0`.
- 2 Install the language packages using the `install_lp` command.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0
# ./install_lp
```

Preparing to configure SFHA clusters for data integrity

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About planning to configure I/O fencing](#)
- [Setting up the CP server](#)

About planning to configure I/O fencing

After you configure SFHA with the installer, you must configure I/O fencing in the cluster for data integrity. Application clusters on release version 6.1 (HTTPS-based communication) only support CP servers on release version 6.1 and later.

You can configure disk-based I/O fencing or server-based I/O fencing. If your enterprise setup has multiple clusters that use VCS for clustering, Symantec recommends you to configure server-based I/O fencing.

The coordination points in server-based fencing can include only CP servers or a mix of CP servers and coordinator disks.

Symantec also supports server-based fencing with a single coordination point which is a single highly available CP server that is hosted on an SFHA cluster.

Warning: For server-based fencing configurations that use a single coordination point (CP server), the coordination point becomes a single point of failure. In such configurations, the arbitration facility is not available during a failover of the CP server in the SFHA cluster. So, if a network partition occurs on any application cluster during the CP server failover, the application cluster is brought down. Symantec recommends the use of single CP server-based fencing only in test environments.

If you have installed SFHA in a virtual environment that is not SCSI-3 PR compliant, you can configure non-SCSI-3 server-based fencing.

See [Figure 7-2](#) on page 84.

[Figure 7-1](#) illustrates a high-level flowchart to configure I/O fencing for the SFHA cluster.

Figure 7-1 Workflow to configure I/O fencing

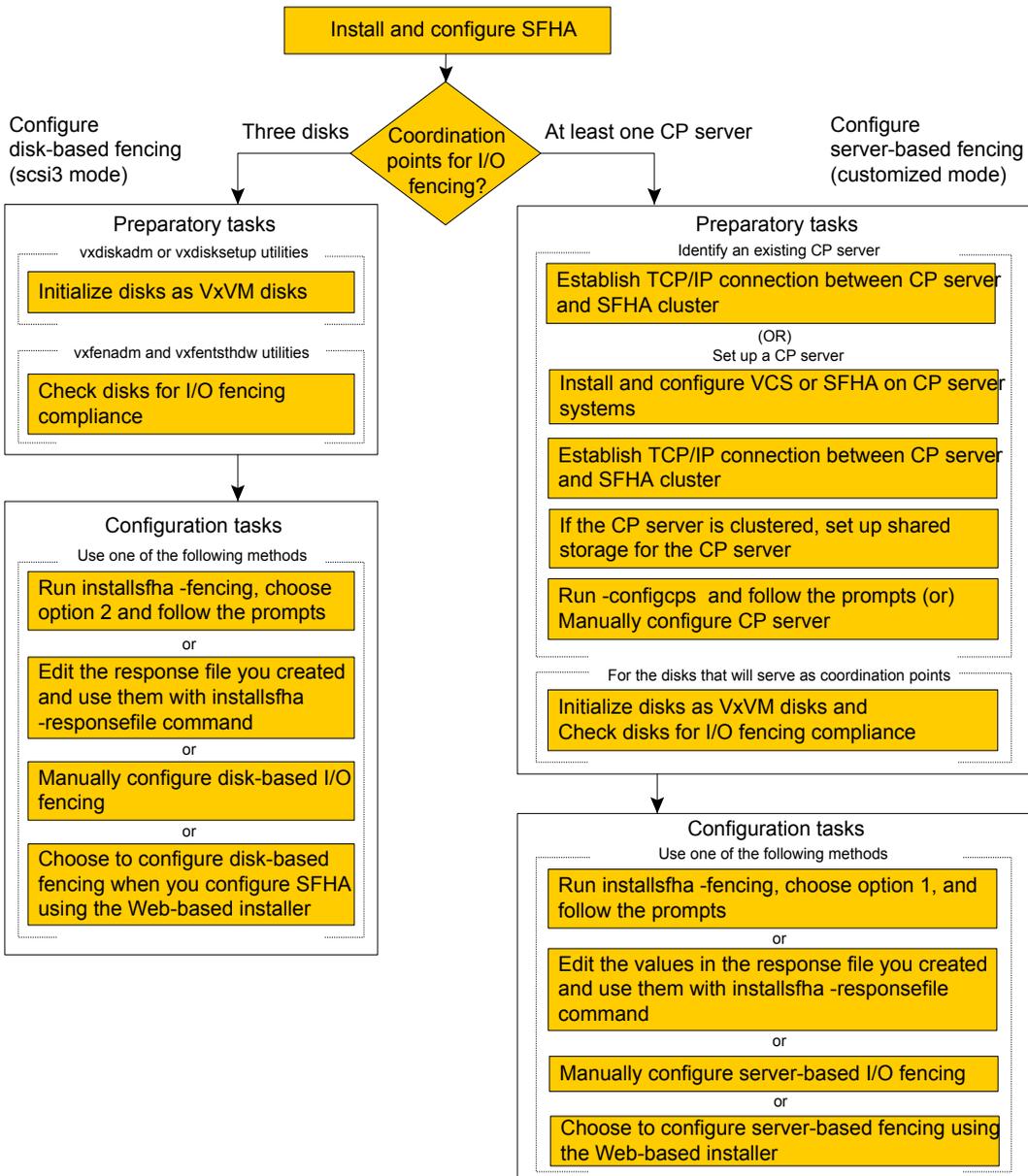
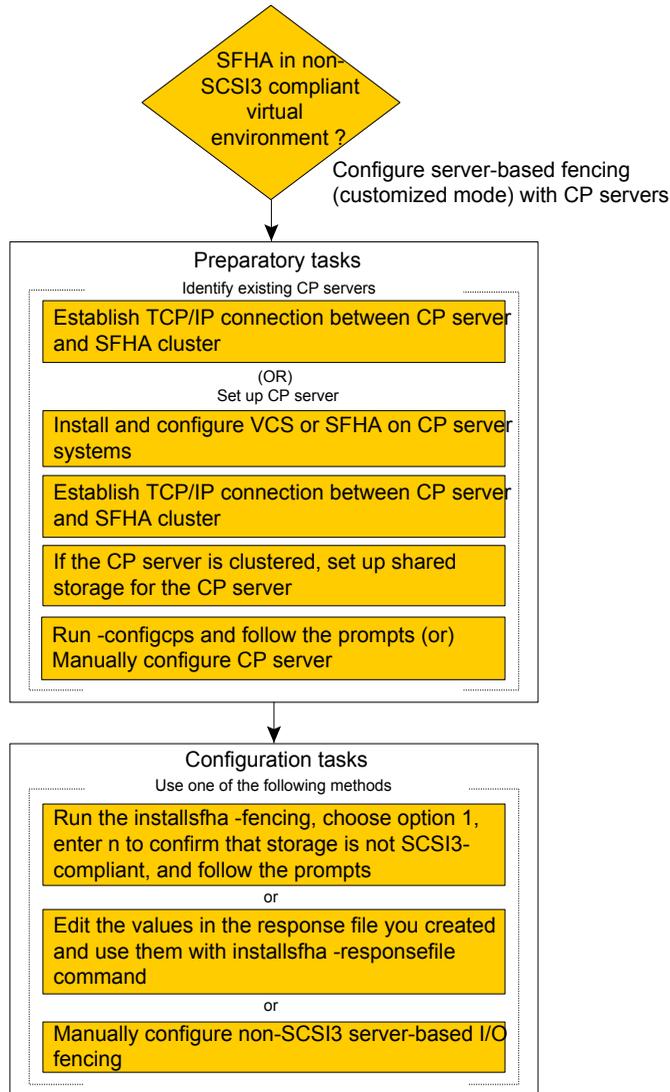


Figure 7-2 illustrates a high-level flowchart to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing for the SFHA cluster in virtual environments that do not support SCSI-3 PR.

Figure 7-2 Workflow to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing



After you perform the preparatory tasks, you can use any of the following methods to configure I/O fencing:

- Using the `installsfha`
 - See [“Setting up disk-based I/O fencing using `installsfha`”](#) on page 140.
 - See [“Setting up server-based I/O fencing using `installsfha`”](#) on page 150.
 - See [“Setting up non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in virtual environments using `installsfha`”](#) on page 163.
- Using the web-based installer
 - See [“Configuring SFHA for data integrity using the web-based installer”](#) on page 181.
- Using response files
 - See [“Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 211.
 - See [“Response file variables to configure server-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 215.
 - See [“Response file variables to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 217.
 - See [“Configuring I/O fencing using response files”](#) on page 210.
- Manually editing configuration files
 - See [“Setting up disk-based I/O fencing manually”](#) on page 239.
 - See [“Setting up server-based I/O fencing manually”](#) on page 245.
 - See [“Setting up non-SCSI-3 fencing in virtual environments manually”](#) on page 260.

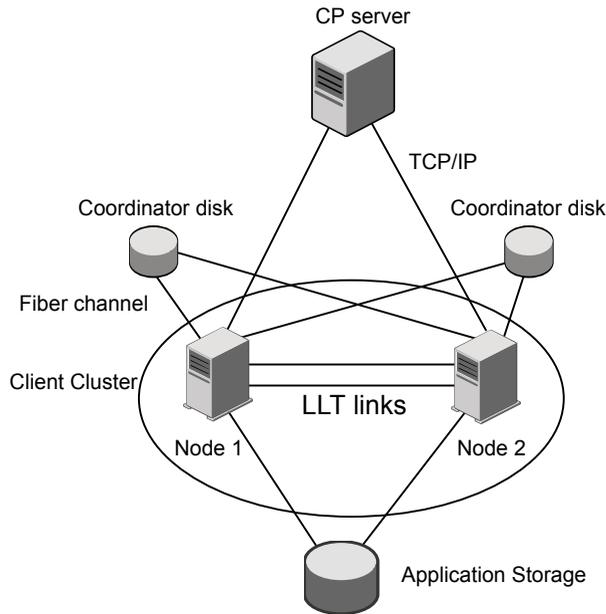
You can also migrate from one I/O fencing configuration to another.

See the *Symantec Storage foundation High Availability Administrator's Guide* for more details.

Typical SF HA cluster configuration with server-based I/O fencing

[Figure 7-3](#) displays a configuration using a SF HA cluster (with two nodes), a single CP server, and two coordinator disks. The nodes within the SF HA cluster are connected to and communicate with each other using LLT links.

Figure 7-3 CP server, SF HA cluster, and coordinator disks



Recommended CP server configurations

Following are the recommended CP server configurations:

- Multiple application clusters use three CP servers as their coordination points
 See [Figure 7-4](#) on page 87.
- Multiple application clusters use a single CP server and single or multiple pairs of coordinator disks (two) as their coordination points
 See [Figure 7-5](#) on page 88.
- Multiple application clusters use a single CP server as their coordination point
 This single coordination point fencing configuration must use a highly available CP server that is configured on an SFHA cluster as its coordination point.
 See [Figure 7-6](#) on page 88.

Warning: In a single CP server fencing configuration, arbitration facility is not available during a failover of the CP server in the SFHA cluster. So, if a network partition occurs on any application cluster during the CP server failover, the application cluster is brought down.

Although the recommended CP server configurations use three coordination points, you can use more than three coordination points for I/O fencing. Ensure that the total number of coordination points you use is an odd number. In a configuration where multiple application clusters share a common set of CP server coordination points, the application cluster as well as the CP server use a Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) to uniquely identify an application cluster.

Figure 7-4 displays a configuration using three CP servers that are connected to multiple application clusters.

Figure 7-4 Three CP servers connecting to multiple application clusters

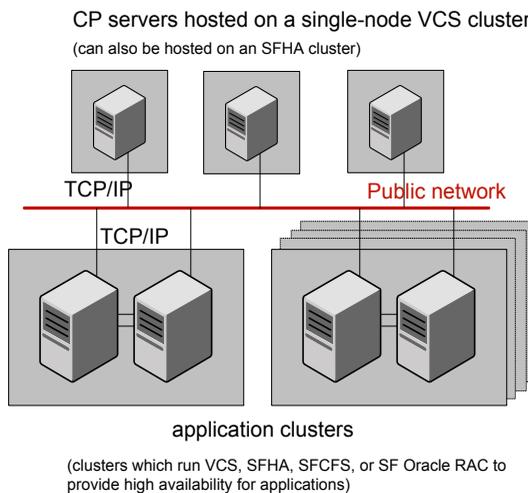


Figure 7-5 displays a configuration using a single CP server that is connected to multiple application clusters with each application cluster also using two coordinator disks.

Figure 7-5 Single CP server with two coordinator disks for each application cluster

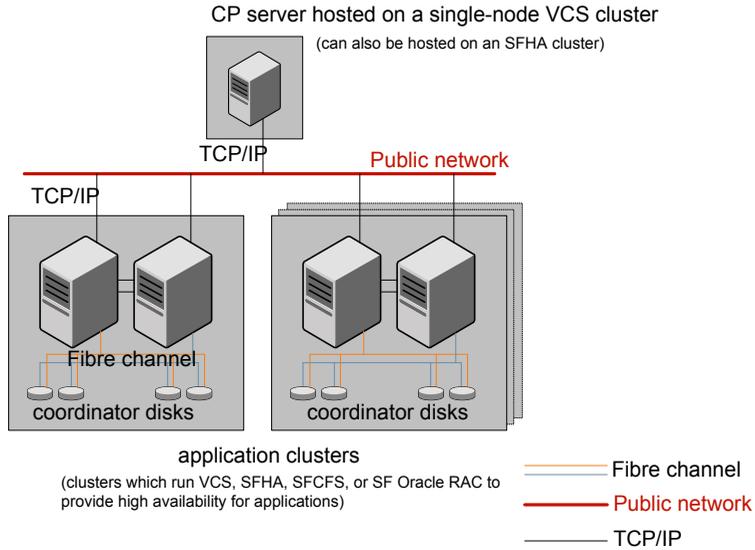
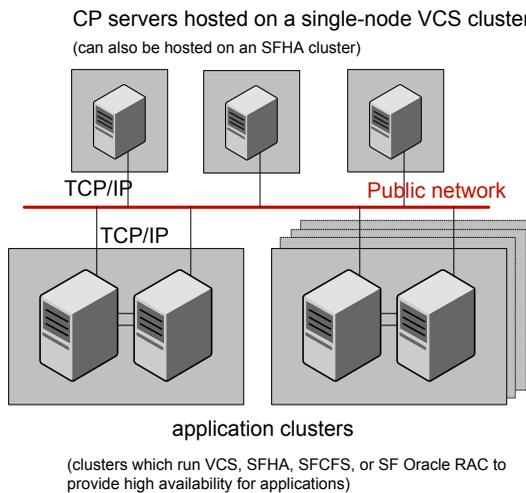


Figure 7-6 displays a configuration using a single CP server that is connected to multiple application clusters.

Figure 7-6 Single CP server connecting to multiple application clusters



See “Configuration diagrams for setting up server-based I/O fencing” on page 570.

Setting up the CP server

Table 7-1 lists the tasks to set up the CP server for server-based I/O fencing.

Table 7-1 Tasks to set up CP server for server-based I/O fencing

Task	Reference
Plan your CP server setup	See “Planning your CP server setup” on page 89.
Install the CP server	See “Installing the CP server using the installer” on page 91.
Configure the CP server cluster in secure mode	See “Configuring the CP server cluster in secure mode” on page 91.
Set up shared storage for the CP server database	See “Setting up shared storage for the CP server database” on page 92.
Configure the CP server	See “Configuring the CP server using the installer program” on page 93. See “Configuring the CP server using the web-based installer” on page 117. See “Configuring the CP server manually” on page 105. See “Configuring CP server using response files” on page 111.
Verify the CP server configuration	See “Verifying the CP server configuration” on page 116.

Planning your CP server setup

Follow the planning instructions to set up CP server for server-based I/O fencing.

To plan your CP server setup

- 1 Decide whether you want to host the CP server on a single-node VCS cluster, or on an SFHA cluster.

Symantec recommends hosting the CP server on an SFHA cluster to make the CP server highly available.
- 2 If you host the CP server on an SFHA cluster, review the following information. Make sure you make the decisions and meet these prerequisites when you set up the CP server:

- You must set up shared storage for the CP server database during your CP server setup.
 - Decide whether you want to configure server-based fencing for the SF HA cluster (application cluster) with a single CP server as coordination point or with at least three coordination points.
Symantec recommends using at least three coordination points.
- 3** Decide whether you want to configure the CP server cluster for IPM-based communication or HTTPS communication.
- For IPM-based communication, the CP server on release 6.1 supports clients prior to 6.1 release. When you configure the CP server, you are required to provide VIPs for IPM-based clients.
- For HTTPS-based communication, the CP server on release 6.1 only supports clients on release 6.1.
- 4** Decide whether you want to configure the CP server cluster in secure mode for IPM-based communication.
- Symantec recommends configuring the CP server cluster in secure mode for IPM-based secure communication between the CP server and its clients (SFHA clusters). Note that you use IPM-based communication if you want the CP server to support clients that are installed with a release version prior to 6.1 release.
- 5** Set up the hardware and network for your CP server.
See [“CP server requirements”](#) on page 41.
- 6** Have the following information handy for CP server configuration:
- Name for the CP server
The CP server name should not contain any special characters. CP server name can include alphanumeric characters, underscore, and hyphen.
 - Port number for the CP server
Allocate a TCP/IP port for use by the CP server.
Valid port range is between 49152 and 65535. The default port number for HTTPS-based communication is 443 and for IPM-based secure communication is 14250.
 - Virtual IP address, network interface, netmask, and networkhosts for the CP server
You can configure multiple virtual IP addresses for the CP server.

Installing the CP server using the installer

Perform the following procedure to install and configure VCS or SFHA on CP server systems.

To install and configure VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems

- ◆ Depending on whether your CP server uses a single system or multiple systems, perform the following tasks:

CP server setup uses a single system

Install and configure VCS to create a single-node VCS cluster.

During installation, make sure to select all packages for installation. The VRTScps package is installed only if you select to install all packages.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Installation Guide* for instructions on installing and configuring VCS.

Proceed to configure the CP server.

See “[Configuring the CP server using the installer program](#)” on page 93.

See “[Configuring the CP server manually](#)” on page 105.

CP server setup uses multiple systems

Install and configure SFHA to create an SFHA cluster. This makes the CP server highly available.

Meet the following requirements for CP server:

- During installation, make sure to select all packages for installation. The VRTScps package is installed only if you select to install all packages.

Proceed to set up shared storage for the CP server database.

Configuring the CP server cluster in secure mode

You must configure security on the CP server only if you want IPM-based (Symantec Product Authentication Service) secure communication between the CP server and the SFHA cluster (CP server clients). However, IPM-based communication enables the CP server to support application clusters prior to release 6.1.

This step secures the HAD communication on the CP server cluster.

Note: If you already configured the CP server cluster in secure mode during the VCS configuration, then skip this section.

To configure the CP server cluster in secure mode

- ◆ Run the installer as follows to configure the CP server cluster in secure mode.

If you have VCS installed on the CP server, run the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installvcs<version> -security
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

If you have SFHA installed on the CP server, run the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -security
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Setting up shared storage for the CP server database

If you configured SFHA on the CP server cluster, perform the following procedure to set up shared storage for the CP server database.

The installer can set up shared storage for the CP server database when you configure CP server for the SFHA cluster.

Symantec recommends that you create a mirrored volume for the CP server database and that you use the VxFS file system type.

To set up shared storage for the CP server database

- 1 Create a disk group containing the disks. You require two disks to create a mirrored volume.

For example:

```
# vxdg init cps_dg disk1 disk2
```

- 2 Create a mirrored volume over the disk group.

For example:

```
# vxassist -g cps_dg make cps_vol volume_size layout=mirror
```

- 3 Create a file system over the volume.

The CP server configuration utility only supports vxfs file system type. If you use an alternate file system, then you must configure CP server manually.

Depending on the operating system that your CP server runs, enter the following command:

```
AIX          # mkfs -V vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/cps_dg/cps_volume
```

```
Linux        # mkfs -t vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/cps_dg/cps_volume
```

```
Solaris      # mkfs -F vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/cps_dg/cps_volume
```

Configuring the CP server using the installer program

Use the `configcps` option available in the installer program to configure the CP server.

Perform one of the following procedures:

For CP servers on single-node VCS cluster: See [“To configure the CP server on a single-node VCS cluster”](#) on page 94.

For CP servers on an SFHA cluster: See [“To configure the CP server on an SFHA cluster”](#) on page 99.

To configure the CP server on a single-node VCS cluster

1 Verify that the `VRTScps` package is installed on the node.

2 Run the `installvcs<version>` program with the `configcps` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installvcs<version> -configcps
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

3 Installer checks the cluster information and prompts if you want to configure CP Server on the cluster.

Enter **y** to confirm.

4 Select an option based on how you want to configure Coordination Point server.

```
1) Configure Coordination Point Server on single node VCS system
2) Configure Coordination Point Server on SFHA cluster
3) Unconfigure Coordination Point Server
```

5 Enter the option: [1-3,q] **1**.

The installer then runs the following preconfiguration checks:

- Checks to see if a single-node VCS cluster is running with the supported platform.

The CP server requires VCS to be installed and configured before its configuration.

The installer automatically installs a license that is identified as a CP server-specific license. It is installed even if a VCS license exists on the node. CP server-specific key ensures that you do not need to use a VCS license on the single-node. It also ensures that Veritas Operations Manager (VOM) identifies the license on a single-node coordination point server as a CP server-specific license and not as a VCS license.

6 Restart the VCS engine if the single-node only has a CP server-specific license.

```
A single node coordination point server will be configured and
VCS will be started in one node mode, do you want to
continue? [y,n,q] (y)
```

- 7** Communication between the CP server and application clusters is secured by HTTPS from release 6.1.0 onwards. However, clusters on earlier release versions (prior to 6.1.0) that are using IPM-based communication are still supported.

Enter the name of the CP Server.

Enter the name of the CP Server: [b] **cps1**

- 8** Enter valid virtual IP addresses for the CP Server with HTTPS-based secure communication. A CP Server can be configured with more than one virtual IP address. For HTTPS-based communication, only IPv4 addresses are supported. For IPM-based communication, both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.

Enter Virtual IP(s) for the CP server for HTTPS,
 separated by a space: [b] **10.200.58.231 10.200.58.232
 10.200.58.233**

Note: Ensure that the virtual IP address of the CP server and the IP address of the NIC interface on the CP server belongs to the same subnet of the IP network. This is required for communication to happen between client nodes and CP server.

- 9** Enter the corresponding CP server port number for each virtual IP address or press **Enter** to accept the default value (443).

Enter the default port '443' to be used for all the
 virtual IP addresses for HTTPS communication or assign the
 corresponding port number in the range [49152, 65535] for
 each virtual IP address. Ensure that each port number is
 separated by a single
 space: [b] **(443) 54442 54443 54447**

- 10** Decide if you want to support clusters that are on releases prior to 6.1.0. These clusters use the Symantec Product Authentication Services (AT) (secure IPM-based protocol) to securely communicate with the CP servers.

Do you want to support older (prior to 6.1.0)
 clusters? [y,n,q,b] **(y)**

11 Enter virtual IPs for the CP Server for IPM-based secure communication.

Enter Virtual IP(s) for the CP server for IPM,
 separated by a space [b] **10.182.36.8 10.182.36.9**

Note that both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.

12 Enter corresponding port number for each Virtual IP address or accept the default port.

Enter the default port '14250' to be used for all the
 virtual IP addresses for IPM-based communication, or assign
 the corresponding port number in the range [49152, 65535]
 for each virtual IP address.

Ensure that each port number is separated by a single space:
 [b] **(14250) 54448 54449**

13 Decide if you want to enable secure communication between the CP server and application clusters.

Symantec recommends secure communication between
 the CP server and application clusters. Enabling security
 requires Symantec Product Authentication Service to be installed
 and configured on the cluster. Do you want to enable Security for
 the communications? [y,n,q,b] (y) **n**

14 Enter the absolute path of the CP server database or press **Enter** to accept the default value (/etc/VRTScps/db).

Enter absolute path of the database: [b] **(/etc/VRTScps/db)**

15 Verify and confirm the CP server configuration information.

```

CP Server configuration verification:
-----
CP Server Name: cps1
CP Server Virtual IP(s) for HTTPS: 10.200.58.231, 10.200.58.232,
10.200.58.233
CP Server Virtual IP(s) for IPM: 10.182.36.8, 10.182.36.9
CP Server Port(s) for HTTPS: 54442, 54443, 54447
CP Server Port(s) for IPM: 54448, 54449
CP Server Security for IPM: 0
CP Server Database Dir: /etc/VRTScps/db
-----

Is this information correct? [y,n,q,?] (y)

```

16 The installer proceeds with the configuration process, and creates a vxcps.conf configuration file.

```

Successfully generated the /etc/vxcps.conf configuration file
Successfully created directory /etc/VRTScps/db on node

```

17 Configure the CP Server Service Group (CPSSG) for this cluster.

```

Enter how many NIC resources you want to configure (1 to 2): 2

```

Answer the following questions for each NIC resource that you want to configure.

18 Enter a valid network interface for the virtual IP address for the CP server process.

```

Enter a valid network interface on sys1 for NIC resource - 1: e1000g0
Enter a valid network interface on sys1 for NIC resource - 2: e1000g1

```

19 Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP addresses.

```

Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP 10.200.58.231 (1 to 2): 1
Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP 10.200.58.232 (1 to 2): 2

```

20 Enter the networkhosts information for each NIC resource.

Symantec recommends configuring NetworkHosts attribute to ensure NIC resource to be always online

```
Do you want to add NetworkHosts attribute for the NIC device e1000g0
on system sys1? [y,n,q] y
```

```
Enter a valid IP address to configure NetworkHosts for NIC e1000g0
on system sys1: 10.200.56.22
```

```
Do you want to add another Network Host? [y,n,q] n
```

21 Enter the netmask for virtual IP addresses. If you entered an IPv6 address, enter the prefix details at the prompt.

Note that if you are using HTTPS-based communication, only IPv4 addresses are supported.

```
Enter the netmask for virtual IP for
HTTPS 192.169.0.220: (255.255.252.0)
```

```
Enter the netmask for virtual IP for
IPM 192.169.0.221: (255.255.252.0)
```

- 22** Installer displays the status of the Coordination Point Server configuration. After the configuration process has completed, a success message appears.

For example:

```
Updating main.cf with CPSSG service group.. Done
Successfully added the CPSSG service group to VCS configuration.
Trying to bring CPSSG service group
ONLINE and will wait for upto 120 seconds
```

```
The Symantec coordination point server is ONLINE
```

```
The Symantec coordination point server has
been configured on your system.
```

- 23** Run the `hagrp -state` command to ensure that the CPSSG service group has been added.

For example:

```
# hagrp -state CPSSG
#Group Attribute System Value
CPSSG State.... |ONLINE|
```

It also generates the configuration file for CP server (`/etc/vxcps.conf`). The `vxcpserv` process and other resources are added to the VCS configuration in the CP server service group (CPSSG).

For information about the CPSSG, refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

To configure the CP server on an SFHA cluster

- 1 Verify that the `VRTScps` package is installed on each node.
- 2 Ensure that you have configured passwordless `ssh` or `rsh` on the CP server cluster nodes.
- 3 Run the `installsfha<version>` program with the `configcps` option.

```
# ./installsfha<version> -configcps
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 4 Installer checks the cluster information and prompts if you want to configure CP Server on the cluster.

Enter `y` to confirm.

5 Select an option based on how you want to configure Coordination Point server.

- 1) Configure Coordination Point Server on single node VCS system
- 2) Configure Coordination Point Server on SFHA cluster
- 3) Unconfigure Coordination Point Server

6 Enter **2** at the prompt to configure CP server on an SFHA cluster.

The installer then runs the following preconfiguration checks:

- Checks to see if an SFHA cluster is running with the supported platform. The CP server requires SFHA to be installed and configured before its configuration.

7 Communication between the CP server and application clusters is secured by HTTPS from Release 6.1.0 onwards. However, clusters on earlier release versions (prior to 6.1.0) that are using IPM-based communication are still supported.

Enter the name of the CP server.

Enter the name of the CP Server: [b] **cps1**

8 Enter valid virtual IP addresses for the CP Server. A CP Server can be configured with more than one virtual IP address. For HTTPS-based communication, only IPv4 addresses are supported. For IPM-based communication, both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported

Enter Virtual IP(s) for the CP server for HTTPS,
 separated by a space: [b] **10.200.58.231 10.200.58.232 10.200.58.233**

9 Enter the corresponding CP server port number for each virtual IP address or press Enter to accept the default value (443).

Enter the default port '443' to be used for all the virtual IP addresses for HTTPS communication or assign the corresponding port number in the range [49152, 65535] for each virtual IP address. Ensure that each port number is separated by a single space: [b] **(443) 65535 65534 65537**

10 Decide if you want to support clusters that are on releases prior to 6.1.0. These clusters use the Symantec Product Authentication Services (AT) (secure IPM-based protocol) to securely communicate with the CP servers.

Do you want to support older (prior to 6.1.0) clusters? [y,n,q,b] (y)

- 11** Enter Virtual IPs for the CP Server for IPM-based secure communication. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.

Enter Virtual IP(s) for the CP server for IPM, separated by a space:
[b] **10.182.36.8 10.182.36.9**

- 12** Enter corresponding port number for each Virtual IP address or accept the default port.

Enter the default port '14250' to be used for all the virtual IP addresses for IPM-based communication, or assign the corresponding port number in the range [49152, 65535] for each virtual IP address.
Ensure that each port number is separated by a single space:
[b] **(14250) 54448 54449**

- 13** Decide if you want to enable secure communication between the CP server and application clusters.

Symantec recommends secure communication between the CP server and application clusters. Enabling security requires Symantec Product Authentication Service to be installed and configured on the cluster.
Do you want to enable Security for the communications? [y,n,q,b] **(y)**

- 14** Enter absolute path of the database.

CP Server uses an internal database to store the client information. As the CP Server is being configured on SFHA cluster, the database should reside on shared storage with vxfs file system. Please refer to documentation for information on setting up of shared storage for CP server database.
Enter absolute path of the database: [b] **/cpsdb**

15 Verify and confirm the CP server configuration information.

CP Server configuration verification:

```
CP Server Name: cps1
CP Server Virtual IP(s) for HTTPS: 10.200.58.231, 10.200.58.232,
10.200.58.233
CP Server Virtual IP(s) for IPM: 10.182.36.8, 10.182.36.9
CP Server Port(s) for HTTPS: 65535, 65534, 65537
CP Server Port(s) for IPM: 54448, 54449
CP Server Security for IPM: 1
CP Server Database Dir: /cpsdb
```

Is this information correct? [y,n,q,?] **(y)**

16 The installer proceeds with the configuration process, and creates a vxcps.conf configuration file.

```
Successfully generated the /etc/vxcps.conf configuration file
Copying configuration file /etc/vxcps.conf to sys0...Done
Creating mount point /cps_mount_data on sys0. ... Done
Copying configuration file /etc/vxcps.conf to sys0. ... Done
Press Enter to continue.
```

17 Configure CP Server Service Group (CPSSG) for this cluster.

Enter how many NIC resources you want to configure (1 to 2): **2**

Answer the following questions for each NIC resource that you want to configure.

18 Enter a valid network interface for the virtual IP address for the CP server process.

```
Enter a valid network interface on sys1 for NIC resource - 1: e1000g0
Enter a valid network interface on sys1 for NIC resource - 2: e1000g1
```

19 Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP addresses.

```
Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP 10.200.58.231 (1 to 2): 1
Enter the NIC resource you want to associate with the virtual IP 10.200.58.232 (1 to 2): 2
```

20 Enter the networkhosts information for each NIC resource.

Symantec recommends configuring NetworkHosts attribute to ensure NIC resource to be always online

```
Do you want to add NetworkHosts attribute for the NIC device e1000g0
on system sys1? [y,n,q] y
Enter a valid IP address to configure NetworkHosts for NIC e1000g0
on system sys1: 10.200.56.22
```

```
Do you want to add another Network Host? [y,n,q] n
Do you want to apply the same NetworkHosts for all systems? [y,n,q] (y)
```

21 Enter the netmask for virtual IP addresses. If you entered an IPv6 address, enter the prefix details at the prompt.

Note that if you are using HTTPS-based communication, only IPv4 addresses are supported.

```
Enter the netmask for virtual IP for
HTTPS 192.168.0.111: (255.255.252.0)
Enter the netmask for virtual IP for
IPM 192.168.0.112: (255.255.252.0)
```

22 Configure a disk group for CP server database. You can choose an existing disk group or create a new disk group.

Symantec recommends to use the disk group that has at least two disks on which mirrored volume can be created.
 Select one of the options below for CP Server database disk group:

- 1) Create a new disk group
- 2) Using an existing disk group

```
Enter the choice for a disk group: [1-2,q] 2
```

23 Select one disk group as the CP Server database disk group.

```
Select one disk group as CP Server database disk group: [1-3,q] 3
1) mycpsdg
2) cpsdg1
3) newcpsdg
```

24 Select the CP Server database volume.

You can choose to use an existing volume or create new volume for CP Server database. If you chose newly created disk group, you can only choose to create new volume for CP Server database.

Select one of the options below for CP Server database volume:

- 1) Create a new volume on disk group newcpsdg
- 2) Using an existing volume on disk group newcpsdg

25 Enter the choice for a volume: [1-2,q] **2**.

26 Select one volume as CP Server database volume [1-1,q] **1**

- 1) newcpsvol

27 After the VCS configuration files are updated, a success message appears.

For example:

```
Updating main.cf with CPSSG service group .... Done
Successfully added the CPSSG service group to VCS configuration.
```

28 If the cluster is secure, installer creates the softlink

`/var/VRTSvcs/vcsauth/data/CPSESERVER` to `/cpsdb/CPSESERVER` and check if credentials are already present at `/cpsdb/CPSESERVER`. If not, installer creates credentials in the directory, otherwise, installer asks if you want to reuse existing credentials.

```
Do you want to reuse these credentials? [y,n,q] (y)
```

29 After the configuration process has completed, a success message appears.

For example:

```
Trying to bring CPSSG service group ONLINE and will wait for upto 120 seconds
The Symantec Coordination Point Server is ONLINE
The Symantec Coordination Point Server has been configured on your system.
```

30 Run the `hagrps -state` command to ensure that the CPSSG service group has been added.

```
For example:
# hagrps -state CPSSG
#Group Attribute System Value
CPSSG State cps1 |ONLINE|
CPSSG State cps2 |OFFLINE|
```

It also generates the configuration file for CP server (`/etc/vxcps.conf`). The `vxcpserv` process and other resources are added to the VCS configuration in the CP server service group (CPSSG).

For information about the CPSSG, refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Configuring the CP server manually

Perform the following steps to manually configure the CP server.

The CP server supports both IPM-based secure communication and HTTPS-based secure communication. CP servers that are configured for IPM-based secure communication support client nodes that are running either 6.1 or previous versions of the product. However, CP servers that are configured for HTTP-based communication only support client nodes that are running the 6.1 version of the product. Client nodes with product versions prior to 6.1 are not supported for HTTPS-based communication.

You need to manually generate certificates for the CP server and its client nodes to configure the CP server for HTTPS-based communication.

Table 7-2 Tasks to configure the CP server manually

Task	Reference
Configure CP server manually for IPM-based secure communication	See “Configuring the CP server manually for IPM-based secure communication” on page 106.
Configure CP server manually for HTTPS-communication	See “Configuring the CP server manually for HTTPS-based communication” on page 107. See “Generating the key and certificates manually for the CP server” on page 108. See “Completing the CP server configuration” on page 111.

Configuring the CP server manually for IPM-based secure communication

Perform the following steps to manually configure the CP server in the Symantec Product Authentication Services (AT) (IPM-based) secure mode.

To manually configure the CP server

- 1 Stop VCS on each node in the CP server cluster using the following command:

```
# hstop -local
```

- 2 Edit the `main.cf` file to add the CPSSG service group on any node. Use the CPSSG service group in the sample `main.cf` as an example:

See [“Sample configuration files for CP server”](#) on page 535.

Customize the resources under the CPSSG service group as per your configuration.

- 3 Verify the `main.cf` file using the following command:

```
# hacf -verify /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config
```

If successfully verified, copy this `main.cf` to all other cluster nodes.

- 4 Create the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file using the sample configuration file provided at `/etc/vxcps/vxcps.conf.sample`.

Based on whether you configured the CP server using the Symantec Product Authentication Services (AT) protocol (IPM-based) in secure mode or not, do one of the following:

- For a CP server cluster which is configured in secure mode, edit the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file to set `security=1`.

- For a CP server cluster which is not configured in secure mode, edit the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file to set `security=0`.

5 Start VCS on all the cluster nodes.

```
# hstart
```

6 Verify that the CP server service group (CPSSG) is online.

```
# hagrps -state CPSSG
```

Output similar to the following appears:

```
# Group Attribute System Value
CPSSG State cps1.symantecexample.com |ONLINE|
```

Configuring the CP server manually for HTTPS-based communication

Perform the following steps to manually configure the CP server in the Symantec Product Authentication Services (AT) (IPM-based) secure mode.

To manually configure the CP server

1 Stop VCS on each node in the CP server cluster using the following command:

```
# hstop -local
```

2 Edit the `main.cf` file to add the CPSSG service group on any node. Use the CPSSG service group in the sample `main.cf` as an example:

See [“Sample configuration files for CP server”](#) on page 535.

Customize the resources under the CPSSG service group as per your configuration.

3 Verify the `main.cf` file using the following command:

```
# hacf -verify /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config
```

If successfully verified, copy this `main.cf` to all other cluster nodes.

4 Create the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file using the sample configuration file provided at `/etc/vxcps/vxcps.conf.sample`.

Symantec recommends enabling security for communication between CP server and the application clusters.

If you configured the CP server in HTTPS mode, do the following:

- Edit the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file to set `vip_https` with the virtual IP addresses required for HTTPS communication.
 - Edit the `/etc/vxcps.conf` file to set `port_https` with the ports used for HTTPS communication.
- 5 Manually generate keys and certificates for the CP server.
- See [“Generating the key and certificates manually for the CP server”](#) on page 108.

Generating the key and certificates manually for the CP server

CP server uses the HTTPS protocol to establish secure communication with client nodes. HTTPS is a secure means of communication, which happens over a secure communication channel that is established using the SSL/TLS protocol.

HTTPS uses x509 standard certificates and the constructs from a Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) to establish secure communication between the CP server and client. Similar to a PKI, the CP server, and its clients have their own set of certificates signed by a Certification Authority (CA). The server and its clients trust the certificate.

Every CP server acts as a certification authority for itself and for all its client nodes. The CP server has its own CA key and CA certificate and a server certificate generated, which is generated from a server private key. The server certificate is issued to the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) of the CP server. All the IP addresses or domain names that the CP server listens on are mentioned in the Subject Alternative Name section of the CP server’s server certificate

The OpenSSL library must be installed on the CP server to create the keys or certificates.. If OpenSSL is not installed, then you cannot create keys or certificates. The `vxcps.conf` file points to the configuration file that determines which keys or certificates are used by the CP server when SSL is initialized. The configuration value is stored in the `ssl_conf_file` and the default value is `/etc/vxcps_ssl.properties`.

To manually generate keys and certificates for the CP server:

- 1 Create directories for the security files on the CP server.

```
# mkdir -p /var/VRTScps/security/keys /var/VRTScps/security/certs
```

- 2 Generate an OpenSSL config file, which includes the VIPs.

The CP server listens to requests from client nodes on these VIPs. The server certificate includes VIPs, FQDNs, and host name of the CP server. Clients can reach the CP server by using any of these values. However, Symantec

recommends that client nodes use the IP address to communicate to the CP server.

The sample configuration uses the following values:

- Config file name: *https_ssl_cert.conf*
- VIP: *192.168.1.201*
- FQDN: *cpsone.company.com*
- Host name: *cpsone*

Note the IP address, VIP, and FQDN values used in the [alt_names] section of the configuration file are sample values. Replace the sample values with your configuration values. Do not change the rest of the values in the configuration file.

```
[req]
distinguished_name = req_distinguished_name
req_extensions = v3_req

[req_distinguished_name]
countryName = Country Name (2 letter code)
countryName_default = US
localityName = Locality Name (eg, city)
organizationalUnitName = Organizational Unit Name (eg, section)
commonName = Common Name (eg, YOUR name)
commonName_max = 64
emailAddress = Email Address
emailAddress_max = 40

[v3_req]
keyUsage = keyEncipherment, dataEncipherment
extendedKeyUsage = serverAuth
subjectAltName = @alt_names

[alt_names]
DNS.1 = cpsone.company.com
DNS.2 = cpsone
DNS.3 = 192.168.1.201
```

3 Generate a 4096-bit CA key that is used to create the CA certificate.

The key must be stored at `/var/VRTScps/security/keys/ca.key`. Ensure that only root users can access the CA key, as the key can be misused to create fake certificates and compromise security.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out /var/VRTScps/security/keys/ca.key
4096
```

4 Generate a self-signed CA certificate.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl req -new -x509 -days days -key
/var/VRTScps/security/keys/ca.key -subj \
'/C=countryname/L=localityname/OU=COMPANY/CN=CACERT' -out
/var/VRTScps/security/certs/ca.crt
```

Where, *days* is the days you want the certificate to remain valid, *countryname* is the name of the country, *localityname* is the city, *CACERT* is the certificate name.

5 Generate a 2048-bit private key for CP server.

The key must be stored at `/var/VRTScps/security/keys/server_private.key`.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out
/var/VRTScps/security/keys/server_private.key 2048
```

6 Generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) for the server certificate.

The Certified Name (CN) in the certificate is the UUID of the CP server.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out
/var/VRTScps/security/keys/server_private.key 2048
```

7 Generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) for the server certificate.

The Certified Name (CN) in the certificate is the UUID of the CP server.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl req -new -key
/var/VRTScps/security/keys/server_private.key \
-config https_ssl_cert.conf -subj
'/C=CountryName/L=LocalityName/OU=COMPANY/CN=UUID' \
-out /var/VRTScps/security/certs/server.csr
```

Where, *countryname* is the name of the country, *localityname* is the city, *UUID* is the certificate name.

- 8 Generate the server certificate by using the key certificate of the CA.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl x509 -req -days days -in
/var/VRTScps/security/certs/server.csr \
-CA /var/VRTScps/security/certs/ca.crt -CAkey
/var/VRTScps/security/keys/ca.key \
-set_serial 01 -extensions v3_req -extfile https_ssl_cert.conf \
-out /var/VRTScps/security/certs/server.crt
```

Where, *days* is the days you want the certificate to remain valid, *https_ssl_cert.conf* is the configuration file name.

You successfully created the key and certificate required for the CP server.

- 9 Ensure that no other user except the root user can read the keys and certificates.
- 10 Complete the CP server configuration.

See [“Completing the CP server configuration”](#) on page 111.

Completing the CP server configuration

To verify the service groups and start VCS perform the following steps:

- 1 Start VCS on all the cluster nodes.

```
# hastart
```

- 2 Verify that the CP server service group (CPSSG) is online.

```
# hagrp -state CPSSG
```

Output similar to the following appears:

```
# Group Attribute System Value
CPSSG State cps1.symantecexample.com |ONLINE|
```

Configuring CP server using response files

You can configure a CP server using a generated responsefile.

On a single node VCS cluster:

- ◆ Run the `installvcs<version>` command with the `responsefile` option to configure the CP server on a single node VCS cluster.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installvcs<version> -responsefile
'/tmp/sample1.res'
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

On a SFHA cluster:

- ◆ Run the `installsfha<version>` command with the `responsefile` option to configure the CP server on a SFHA cluster.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -responsefile
'/tmp/sample1.res'
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Response file variables to configure CP server

[Table 7-3](#) describes the response file variables to configure CP server.

Table 7-3 describes response file variables to configure CP server

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{opt}{configcps}	Scalar	This variable performs CP server configuration task
CFG{cps_singlenode_config}	Scalar	This variable describes if the CP server will be configured on a singlenode VCS cluster
CFG{cps_sfha_config}	Scalar	This variable describes if the CP server will be configured on a SFHA cluster
CFG{cps_unconfig}	Scalar	This variable describes if the CP server will be unconfigured
CFG{cpsname}	Scalar	This variable describes the name of the CP server
CFG{cps_db_dir}	Scalar	This variable describes the absolute path of CP server database

Table 7-3 describes response file variables to configure CP server
(continued)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{cps_security}	Scalar	This variable describes if security is configured for the CP server
CFG{cps_reuse_cred}	Scalar	This variable describes if reusing the existing credentials for the CP server
CFG{cps_https_vips}	List	This variable describes the virtual IP addresses for the CP server configured for HTTPS-based communication
CFG{cps_ipm_vips}	List	This variable describes the virtual IP addresses for the CP server configured for IPM-based communication
CFG{cps_https_ports}	List	This variable describes the port number for the virtual IP addresses for the CP server configured for HTTPS-based communication
CFG{cps_ipm_ports}	List	This variable describes the port number for the virtual IP addresses for the CP server configured for IPM-based communication
CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip<n>}	List	This variable describes the NICs of the systems for the virtual IP address
CFG{cps_netmasks}	List	This variable describes the netmasks for the virtual IP addresses
CFG{cps_prefix_length}	List	This variable describes the prefix length for the virtual IP addresses
CFG{cps_network_hosts}{cpsnic<n>}	List	This variable describes the network hosts for the NIC resource
CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{<vip>}	Scalar	This variable describes the NIC resource to associate with the virtual IP address
CFG{cps_diskgroup}	Scalar	This variable describes the disk group for the CP server database
CFG{cps_volume}	Scalar	This variable describes the volume for the CP server database

Table 7-3 describes response file variables to configure CP server
(continued)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{cps_newdg_disks}	List	This variable describes the disks to be used to create a new disk group for the CP server database
CFG{cps_newvol_volsize}	Scalar	This variable describes the volume size to create a new volume for the CP server database
CFG{cps_delete_database}	Scalar	This variable describes if deleting the database of the CP server during the unconfiguration
CFG{cps_delete_config_log}	Scalar	This variable describes if deleting the config files and log files of the CP server during the unconfiguration
CFG{cps_reconfig}	Scalar	This variable defines if the CP server will be reconfigured

Sample response file for configuring the CP server on single node VCS cluster

Review the response file variables and their definitions.

See [Table 7-3](#) on page 112.

```
#
# Configuration Values:
#
our %CFG;

$CFG{cps_db_dir}="/etc/VRTScps/db";
$CFG{cps_https_ports}=[ qw(443) ];
$CFG{cps_https_vips}=[ qw(192.169.0.220) ];
$CFG{cps_ipm_ports}=[ qw(14250) ];
$CFG{cps_ipm_vips}=[ qw(192.169.0.221) ];
$CFG{cps_netmasks}=[ qw(255.255.252.0 255.255.252.0) ];
$CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip1}=[ qw(e1000g0) ];
$CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip2}=[ qw(e1000g0) ];
$CFG{cps_security}="0";
```

```

$CFG{cps_singlenode_config}=1;
$CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{"192.169.0.220"}=1;
$CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{"192.169.0.221"}=1;
$CFG{cpsname}="cps1";
$CFG{opt}{configcps}=1;
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{prod}="VCS61";
$CFG{systems}=[ qw(cps1) ];
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=64505;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="single";

1;
    
```

Sample response file for configuring the CP server on SFHA cluster

Review the response file variables and their definitions.

See [Table 7-3](#) on page 112.

```

#
# Configuration Values:
#
our %CFG;

$CFG{cps_db_dir}="/cpsdb";
$CFG{cps_diskgroup}="cps_dg1";
$CFG{cps_https_ports}=[ qw(50006 50007) ];
$CFG{cps_https_vips}=[ qw(10.198.90.6 10.198.90.7) ];
$CFG{cps_ipm_ports}=[ qw(14250) ];
$CFG{cps_ipm_vips}=[ qw(10.198.90.8) ];
$CFG{cps_netmasks}=[ qw(255.255.248.0 255.255.248.0 255.255.248.0) ];
$CFG{cps_network_hosts}{cpsnic1}=[ qw(10.198.88.18) ];
$CFG{cps_network_hosts}{cpsnic2}=[ qw(10.198.88.18) ];
$CFG{cps_newdg_disks}=[ qw(emc_clariion0_249) ];
$CFG{cps_newvol_volsize}=10;
$CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip1}=[ qw(e1000g0 e1000g0) ];
$CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip2}=[ qw(e1000g0 e1000g0) ];
$CFG{cps_nic_list}{cpsvip3}=[ qw(e1000g0 e1000g0) ];
$CFG{cps_security}="0";
$CFG{cps_sfha_config}=1;
$CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{"10.198.90.6"}=1;
    
```

```
$CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{ "10.198.90.7" }=1;  
$CFG{cps_vip2nicres_map}{ "10.198.90.8" }=1;  
$CFG{cps_volume}="volcps";  
$CFG{cpsname}="cps1";  
$CFG{opt}{configcps}=1;  
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;  
$CFG{opt}{noipc}=1;  
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";  
$CFG{systems}=[ qw(cps1 cps2) ];  
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=49604;  
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="sfha2233";  
  
1;
```

Verifying the CP server configuration

Perform the following steps to verify the CP server configuration.

To verify the CP server configuration

- 1 Verify that the following configuration files are updated with the information you provided during the CP server configuration process:
 - `/etc/vxcps.conf` (CP server configuration file)
 - `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf` (VCS configuration file)
 - `/etc/VRTScps/db` (default location for CP server database for a single-node cluster)
 - `/cps_db` (default location for CP server database for a multi-node cluster)
- 2 Run the `cpsadm` command to check if the `vxcpserv` process is listening on the configured Virtual IP.

If the application cluster is configured for HTTPS-based communication, no need to provide the port number assigned for HTTP communication.

```
# cpsadm -s cp_server -a ping_cps
```

For IPM-based communication, you need to specify 14250 as the port number.

```
# cpsadm -s cp_server -p 14250 -a ping_cps
```

where `cp_server` is the virtual IP address or the virtual hostname of the CP server.

Configuring the CP server using the web-based installer

Perform the following steps to configure the CP server using the web-based installer.

To configure SFHA on a cluster

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	Configure CP server
Product	Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 On the Select Cluster page, enter the system names where you want to configure SFHA and click **Next**.
- 4 In the Confirmation dialog box, verify cluster information is correct and choose whether or not to configure CP server.
 - To configure CP server, click **Yes**.
 - To configure CP server later, click **No**.
- 5 On the Select Option page, select Configure CP Server on a single-node VCS system or SFHA cluster and click **Next**.
- 6 On the Configure CP Server page, provide CP server information, such as, name, virtual IPs, port numbers, and absolute path of the database to store the configuration details.

Click **Next**.
- 7 Configure the CP Server Service Group (CPSSG), select the number of NIC resources, and associate NIC resources to virtual IPs that are going to be used to configure the CP Server.

Click **Next**.
- 8 Configure network hosts for the CP server.

Click **Next**.
- 9 Configure disk group for the CP server.

Click **Next**.

Note: This step is not applicable for a single node cluster.

- 10** Configure volume for the disk group associated to the CP server.

Click **Next**.

Note: This step is not applicable for a single node cluster.

- 11** Click **Finish** to complete configuring the CP server.

Configuring SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Configuring Storage Foundation High Availability using the installer](#)
- [Configuring the SFDB repository database after installation](#)

Configuring Storage Foundation High Availability using the installer

Storage Foundation HA configuration requires configuring the HA (VCS) cluster. Perform the following tasks to configure the cluster.

Overview of tasks to configure SFHA using the script-based installer

[Table 8-1](#) lists the tasks that are involved in configuring SFHA using the script-based installer.

Table 8-1 Tasks to configure SFHA using the script-based installer

Task	Reference
Start the software configuration	See “Starting the software configuration” on page 121.
Specify the systems where you want to configure SFHA	See “Specifying systems for configuration” on page 122.
Configure the basic cluster	See “Configuring the cluster name” on page 123. See “Configuring private heartbeat links” on page 123.

Table 8-1 Tasks to configure SFHA using the script-based installer
(continued)

Task	Reference
Configure virtual IP address of the cluster (optional)	See “Configuring the virtual IP of the cluster” on page 126.
Configure the cluster in secure mode (optional)	See “Configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability in secure mode” on page 127.
Add VCS users (required if you did not configure the cluster in secure mode)	See “Adding VCS users” on page 131.
Configure SMTP email notification (optional)	See “Configuring SMTP email notification” on page 132.
Configure SNMP email notification (optional)	See “Configuring SNMP trap notification” on page 133.
Configure global clusters (optional) Note: You must have enabled global clustering when you installed SFHA.	See “Configuring global clusters” on page 135.
Complete the software configuration	See “Completing the SFHA configuration” on page 136.

Required information for configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions

To configure Storage Foundation High Availability, the following information is required:

See also the *Symantec Cluster Server Installation Guide*.

- A unique Cluster name
- A unique Cluster ID number between 0-65535
- Two or more NIC cards per system used for heartbeat links
One or more heartbeat links are configured as private links and one heartbeat link may be configured as a low priority link.

You can configure Storage Foundation High Availability in secure mode.

Running SFHA in Secure Mode guarantees that all inter-system communication is encrypted and that users are verified with security credentials. When running in Secure Mode, NIS and system usernames and passwords are used to verify identity.

SFHA usernames and passwords are no longer used when a cluster is running in Secure Mode.

The following information is required to configure SMTP notification:

- The domain-based hostname of the SMTP server
- The email address of each SMTP recipient
- A minimum severity level of messages to be sent to each recipient

The following information is required to configure SNMP notification:

- System names of SNMP consoles to receive VCS trap messages
- SNMP trap daemon port numbers for each console
- A minimum severity level of messages to be sent to each console

Starting the software configuration

You can configure SFHA using the Symantec product installer or the `installsfha` command.

Note: If you want to reconfigure SFHA, before you start the installer you must stop all the resources that are under VCS control using the `hastop` command or the `hagrp -offline` command.

To configure SFHA using the product installer

- 1 Confirm that you are logged in as the superuser and that you have mounted the product disc.
- 2 Start the installer.

```
# ./installer
```

The installer starts the product installation program with a copyright message and specifies the directory where the logs are created.

- 3 From the opening Selection Menu, choose: `c` for "Configure an Installed Product."
- 4 From the displayed list of products to configure, choose the corresponding number for your product:

Storage Foundation and High Availability

To configure SFHA using the `installsfha` program

- 1 Confirm that you are logged in as the superuser.
- 2 Start the `installsfha` program.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -configure
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installer begins with a copyright message and specifies the directory where the logs are created.

Specifying systems for configuration

The installer prompts for the system names on which you want to configure SFHA. The installer performs an initial check on the systems that you specify.

To specify system names for configuration

- 1 Enter the names of the systems where you want to configure SFHA.

```
Enter the operating_system system names separated  
by spaces: [q,?] (sys1) sys1 sys2
```

- 2 Review the output as the installer verifies the systems you specify.

The installer does the following tasks:

- Checks that the local node running the installer can communicate with remote nodes
If the installer finds ssh binaries, it confirms that ssh can operate without requests for passwords or passphrases. If ssh binaries cannot communicate with remote nodes, the installer tries rsh binaries. And if both ssh and rsh binaries fail, the installer prompts to help the user to setup ssh or rsh binaries.
- Makes sure that the systems are running with the supported operating system
- Makes sure the installer started from the global zone
- Checks whether SFHA is installed

- Exits if SFHA 6.1 is not installed
- 3 Review the installer output about the I/O fencing configuration and confirm whether you want to configure fencing in enabled mode.

```
Do you want to configure I/O Fencing in enabled mode? [y,n,q,?] (y)
```

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

Configuring the cluster name

Enter the cluster information when the installer prompts you.

To configure the cluster

- 1 Review the configuration instructions that the installer presents.
- 2 Enter a unique cluster name.

```
Enter the unique cluster name: [q,?] clus1
```

Configuring private heartbeat links

You now configure the private heartbeat links that LLT uses.

See [“Setting up the private network”](#) on page 60.

VCS provides the option to use LLT over Ethernet or LLT over UDP (User Datagram Protocol). Symantec recommends that you configure heartbeat links that use LLT over Ethernet for high performance, unless hardware requirements force you to use LLT over UDP. If you want to configure LLT over UDP, make sure you meet the prerequisites.

You must not configure LLT heartbeat using the links that are part of aggregated links. For example, link1, link2 can be aggregated to create an aggregated link, aggr1. You can use aggr1 as a heartbeat link, but you must not use either link1 or link2 as heartbeat links.

See [“Using the UDP layer for LLT”](#) on page 582.

The following procedure helps you configure LLT heartbeat links.

To configure private heartbeat links

- 1 Choose one of the following options at the installer prompt based on whether you want to configure LLT over Ethernet or LLT over UDP.
 - Option 1: Configure the heartbeat links using LLT over Ethernet (answer installer questions)

Enter the heartbeat link details at the installer prompt to configure LLT over Ethernet.

Skip to step 2.

- Option 2: Configure the heartbeat links using LLT over UDP (answer installer questions)

Make sure that each NIC you want to use as heartbeat link has an IP address configured. Enter the heartbeat link details at the installer prompt to configure LLT over UDP. If you had not already configured IP addresses to the NICs, the installer provides you an option to detect the IP address for a given NIC.

Skip to step 3.

- Option 3: Automatically detect configuration for LLT over Ethernet
Allow the installer to automatically detect the heartbeat link details to configure LLT over Ethernet. The installer tries to detect all connected links between all systems.

Skip to step 5.

Note: Option 3 is not available when the configuration is a single node configuration.

- 2 If you chose option 1, enter the network interface card details for the private heartbeat links.

The installer discovers and lists the network interface cards.

Answer the installer prompts. The following example shows different NICs based on architecture:

- For Solaris SPARC:
You must not enter the network interface card that is used for the public network (typically bge0.)

```

Enter the NIC for the first private heartbeat link on sys1:
[b, q, ?] bge0
Would you like to configure a second private heartbeat link?
[y, n, q, b, ?] (y)
Enter the NIC for the second private heartbeat link on sys1:
[b, q, ?] bge1
Would you like to configure a third private heartbeat link?
[y, n, q, b, ?] (n)

Do you want to configure an additional low priority heartbeat
link? [y, n, q, b, ?] (n)
    
```

- 3** If you chose option 2, enter the NIC details for the private heartbeat links. This step uses examples such as *private_NIC1* or *private_NIC2* to refer to the available names of the NICs.

```

Enter the NIC for the first private heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] private_NIC1
Do you want to use address 192.168.0.1 for the
first private heartbeat link on sys1: [y,n,q,b,?] (y)
Enter the UDP port for the first private heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] (50000)
Would you like to configure a second private
heartbeat link? [y,n,q,b,?] (y)
Enter the NIC for the second private heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] private_NIC2
Do you want to use address 192.168.1.1 for the
second private heartbeat link on sys1: [y,n,q,b,?] (y)
Enter the UDP port for the second private heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] (50001)
Do you want to configure an additional low priority
heartbeat link? [y,n,q,b,?] (n) y
Enter the NIC for the low priority heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] (private_NIC0)
Do you want to use address 192.168.3.1 for
the low priority heartbeat link on sys1: [y,n,q,b,?] (y)
Enter the UDP port for the low priority heartbeat
link on sys1: [b,q,?] (50004)

```

- 4** Choose whether to use the same NIC details to configure private heartbeat links on other systems.

```

Are you using the same NICs for private heartbeat links on all
systems? [y,n,q,b,?] (y)

```

If you want to use the NIC details that you entered for sys1, make sure the same NICs are available on each system. Then, enter **y** at the prompt.

For LLT over UDP, if you want to use the same NICs on other systems, you still must enter unique IP addresses on each NIC for other systems.

If the NIC device names are different on some of the systems, enter **n**. Provide the NIC details for each system as the program prompts.

- 5** If you chose option 3, the installer detects NICs on each system and network links, and sets link priority.

If the installer fails to detect heartbeat links or fails to find any high-priority links, then choose option 1 or option 2 to manually configure the heartbeat links.

See step 2 for option 1, or step 3 for option 2 or step 5 for option 3.

- 6** Enter a unique cluster ID:

```
Enter a unique cluster ID number between 0-65535: [b,q,?] (60842)
```

The cluster cannot be configured if the cluster ID 60842 is in use by another cluster. Installer performs a check to determine if the cluster ID is duplicate. The check takes less than a minute to complete.

```
Would you like to check if the cluster ID is in use by another
cluster? [y,n,q] (y)
```

- 7** Verify and confirm the information that the installer summarizes.

Configuring the virtual IP of the cluster

You can configure the virtual IP of the cluster to use to connect from the Cluster Manager (Java Console), Veritas Operations Manager (VOM), or to specify in the RemoteGroup resource.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for information on the Cluster Manager.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Bundled Agents Reference Guide* for information on the RemoteGroup agent.

To configure the virtual IP of the cluster

- 1** Review the required information to configure the virtual IP of the cluster.
- 2** When the system prompts whether you want to configure the virtual IP, enter `y`.
- 3** Confirm whether you want to use the discovered public NIC on the first system. Do one of the following:
 - If the discovered NIC is the one to use, press `Enter`.
 - If you want to use a different NIC, type the name of a NIC to use and press `Enter`.

```
Active NIC devices discovered on sys1: bge0
Enter the NIC for Virtual IP of the Cluster to use on sys1:
[b, q, ?] (bge0)
```

4 Confirm whether you want to use the same public NIC on all nodes.

Do one of the following:

- If all nodes use the same public NIC, enter `y`.
- If unique NICs are used, enter `n` and enter a NIC for each node.

```
Is bge0 to be the public NIC used by all systems
[y, n, q, b, ?] (y)
```

If you want to set up trust relationships for your secure cluster, refer to the following topics:

See [“Configuring a secure cluster node by node”](#) on page 127.

Configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability in secure mode

Configuring SFHA in secure mode ensures that all the communication between the systems is encrypted and users are verified against security credentials. SFHA user names and passwords are not used when a cluster is running in secure mode.

To configure SFHA in secure mode

- 1** To install SFHA in secure mode, run the command:

```
# installsfcfsha -security
```

- 2** To verify the cluster is in secure mode after configuration, run the command:

```
# haclus -value SecureClus
```

The command returns 1 if cluster is in secure mode, else returns 0.

Configuring a secure cluster node by node

For environments that do not support passwordless ssh or passwordless rsh, you cannot use the `-security` option to enable secure mode for your cluster. Instead, you can use the `-securityonnode` option to configure a secure cluster node by node. Moreover, to enable security in fips mode, use the `-fips` option together with `-securityonnode`.

[Table 8-2](#) lists the tasks that you must perform to configure a secure cluster.

Table 8-2 Configuring a secure cluster node by node

Task	Reference
Configure security on one node	See “Configuring the first node” on page 128.
Configure security on the remaining nodes	See “Configuring the remaining nodes” on page 129.
Complete the manual configuration steps	See “Completing the secure cluster configuration” on page 129.

Configuring the first node

Perform the following steps on one node in your cluster.

To configure security on the first node

- 1 Ensure that you are logged in as superuser.
- 2 Enter the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -securityonnode
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installer lists information about the cluster, nodes, and service groups. If VCS is not configured or if VCS is not running on all nodes of the cluster, the installer prompts whether you want to continue configuring security. It then prompts you for the node that you want to configure.

```
VCS is not running on all systems in this cluster. All VCS systems
must be in RUNNING state. Do you want to continue? [y,n,q] (n) y
```

```
1) Perform security configuration on first node and export
security configuration files.
```

```
2) Perform security configuration on remaining nodes with
security configuration files.
```

```
Select the option you would like to perform [1-2,q.?] 1
```

Warning: All VCS configurations about cluster users are deleted when you configure the first node. You can use the `/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hauser` command to create cluster users manually.

- 3 The installer completes the secure configuration on the node. It specifies the location of the security configuration files and prompts you to copy these files to the other nodes in the cluster. The installer also specifies the location of log files, summary file, and response file.
- 4 Copy the security configuration files from the location specified by the installer to temporary directories on the other nodes in the cluster.

Configuring the remaining nodes

On each of the remaining nodes in the cluster, perform the following steps.

To configure security on each remaining node

- 1 Ensure that you are logged in as superuser.
- 2 Enter the following command:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -securityonnode
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installer lists information about the cluster, nodes, and service groups. If VCS is not configured or if VCS is not running on all nodes of the cluster, the installer prompts whether you want to continue configuring security. It then prompts you for the node that you want to configure. Enter **2**.

```
VCS is not running on all systems in this cluster. All VCS systems
must be in RUNNING state. Do you want to continue? [y,n,q] (n) y
```

```
1) Perform security configuration on first node and export
security configuration files.
```

```
2) Perform security configuration on remaining nodes with
security configuration files.
```

```
Select the option you would like to perform [1-2,q,?] 2
```

The installer completes the secure configuration on the node. It specifies the location of log files, summary file, and response file.

Completing the secure cluster configuration

Perform the following manual steps to complete the configuration.

To complete the secure cluster configuration

- 1** On the first node, freeze all service groups except the ClusterService service group.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/haconf -makerw
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -list Frozen=0
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -freeze groupname -persistent
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/haconf -dump -makero
```

- 2** On the first node, stop the VCS engine.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hastop -all -force
```

- 3** On all nodes, stop the CmdServer.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/CmdServer -stop
```

- 4** On the first node, edit the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf` file to resemble the following:

```
cluster clus1 (
SecureClus = 1
)
```

- 5** Modify `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf` file on the first node, and add `-secure` to the WAC applicaton definition if GCO is configured.

For example:

```
Application wac (
    StartProgram = "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wacstart -secure"
    StopProgram = "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wacstop"
    MonitorProcesses = {" /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wac -secure"}
    RestartLimit = 3
)
```

- 6** On all nodes, create the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/.secure` file.

```
# touch /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/.secure
```

- 7 On the first node, start VCS. Then start VCS on the remaining nodes.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hastart
```

- 8 On all nodes, start CmdServer.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/CmdServer
```

- 9 On the first node, unfreeze the service groups.

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/haconf -makerw
```

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -list Frozen=1
```

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -unfreeze groupname -persistent
```

```
# /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/haconf -dump -makero
```

Adding VCS users

If you have enabled a secure VCS cluster, you do not need to add VCS users now. Otherwise, on systems operating under an English locale, you can add VCS users at this time.

To add VCS users

- 1 Review the required information to add VCS users.
- 2 Reset the password for the Admin user, if necessary.

```
Do you wish to accept the default cluster credentials of
'admin/password'? [y,n,q] (y) n
Enter the user name: [b,q,?] (admin)
Enter the password:
Enter again:
```

- 3 To add a user, enter **y** at the prompt.

```
Do you want to add another user to the cluster? [y,n,q] (y)
```

- 4 Enter the user's name, password, and level of privileges.

```
Enter the user name: [b,q,?] smith
```

```
Enter New Password:*****
```

```
Enter Again:*****
```

```
Enter the privilege for user smith (A=Administrator, O=Operator,  
G=Guest): [b,q,?] a
```

- 5 Enter **n** at the prompt if you have finished adding users.

```
Would you like to add another user? [y,n,q] (n)
```

- 6 Review the summary of the newly added users and confirm the information.

Configuring SMTP email notification

You can choose to configure VCS to send event notifications to SMTP email services. You need to provide the SMTP server name and email addresses of people to be notified. Note that you can also configure the notification after installation.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

To configure SMTP email notification

- 1 Review the required information to configure the SMTP email notification.

- 2 Specify whether you want to configure the SMTP notification.

If you do not want to configure the SMTP notification, you can skip to the next configuration option.

See [“Configuring SNMP trap notification”](#) on page 133.

- 3 Provide information to configure SMTP notification.

Provide the following information:

- Enter the SMTP server's host name.

```
Enter the domain-based hostname of the SMTP server  
(example: smtp.yourcompany.com): [b,q,?] smtp.example.com
```

- Enter the email address of each recipient.

```
Enter the full email address of the SMTP recipient  
(example: user@yourcompany.com): [b,q,?] ozzie@example.com
```

- Enter the minimum security level of messages to be sent to each recipient.

```
Enter the minimum severity of events for which mail should be
sent to ozzie@example.com [I=Information, W=Warning,
E=Error, S=SevereError]: [b,q,?] w
```

4 Add more SMTP recipients, if necessary.

- If you want to add another SMTP recipient, enter `y` and provide the required information at the prompt.

```
Would you like to add another SMTP recipient? [y,n,q,b] (n) y
```

```
Enter the full email address of the SMTP recipient
(example: user@yourcompany.com): [b,q,?] harriet@example.com
```

```
Enter the minimum severity of events for which mail should be
sent to harriet@example.com [I=Information, W=Warning,
E=Error, S=SevereError]: [b,q,?] E
```

- If you do not want to add, answer `n`.

```
Would you like to add another SMTP recipient? [y,n,q,b] (n)
```

5 Verify and confirm the SMTP notification information.

```
SMTP Address: smtp.example.com
Recipient: ozzie@example.com receives email for Warning or
higher events
Recipient: harriet@example.com receives email for Error or
higher events
```

```
Is this information correct? [y,n,q] (y)
```

Configuring SNMP trap notification

You can choose to configure VCS to send event notifications to SNMP management consoles. You need to provide the SNMP management console name to be notified and message severity levels.

Note that you can also configure the notification after installation.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

To configure the SNMP trap notification

- 1 Review the required information to configure the SNMP notification feature of VCS.

- 2 Specify whether you want to configure the SNMP notification.

If you skip this option and if you had installed a valid HA/DR license, the installer presents you with an option to configure this cluster as global cluster. If you did not install an HA/DR license, the installer proceeds to configure SFHA based on the configuration details you provided.

See [“Configuring global clusters”](#) on page 135.

- 3 Provide information to configure SNMP trap notification.

Provide the following information:

- Enter the SNMP trap daemon port.

```
Enter the SNMP trap daemon port: [b,q,?] (162)
```

- Enter the SNMP console system name.

```
Enter the SNMP console system name: [b,q,?] sys5
```

- Enter the minimum security level of messages to be sent to each console.

```
Enter the minimum severity of events for which SNMP traps
should be sent to sys5 [I=Information, W=Warning, E=Error,
S=SevereError]: [b,q,?] E
```

- 4 Add more SNMP consoles, if necessary.

- If you want to add another SNMP console, enter `y` and provide the required information at the prompt.

```
Would you like to add another SNMP console? [y,n,q,b] (n) y
Enter the SNMP console system name: [b,q,?] sys4
Enter the minimum severity of events for which SNMP traps
should be sent to sys4 [I=Information, W=Warning,
E=Error, S=SevereError]: [b,q,?] S
```

- If you do not want to add, answer `n`.

Would you like to add another SNMP console? [y,n,q,b] (n)

5 Verify and confirm the SNMP notification information.

```
SNMP Port: 162
Console: sys5 receives SNMP traps for Error or
higher events
Console: sys4 receives SNMP traps for SevereError or
higher events
```

Is this information correct? [y,n,q] (y)

Configuring global clusters

If you had installed a valid HA/DR license, the installer provides you an option to configure this cluster as global cluster. If not, the installer proceeds to configure SFHA based on the configuration details you provided. You can also run the gcoconfig utility in each cluster later to update the VCS configuration file for global cluster.

You can configure global clusters to link clusters at separate locations and enable wide-area failover and disaster recovery. The installer adds basic global cluster information to the VCS configuration file. You must perform additional configuration tasks to set up a global cluster.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions to set up SFHA global clusters.

Note: If you installed a HA/DR license to set up replicated data cluster or campus cluster, skip this installer option.

To configure the global cluster option

1 Review the required information to configure the global cluster option.

2 Specify whether you want to configure the global cluster option.

If you skip this option, the installer proceeds to configure VCS based on the configuration details you provided.

3 Provide information to configure this cluster as global cluster.

The installer prompts you for a NIC, a virtual IP address, and value for the netmask.

You can also enter an IPv6 address as a virtual IP address.

Completing the SFHA configuration

After you enter the SFHA configuration information, the installer prompts to stop the SFHA processes to complete the configuration process. The installer continues to create configuration files and copies them to each system. The installer also configures a cluster UUID value for the cluster at the end of the configuration. After the installer successfully configures SFHA, it restarts SFHA and its related processes.

To complete the SFHA configuration

- 1 If prompted, press Enter at the following prompt.

```
Do you want to stop SFHA processes now? [y,n,q,?] (y)
```

- 2 Review the output as the installer stops various processes and performs the configuration. The installer then restarts SFHA and its related processes.

- 3 Enter y at the prompt to send the installation information to Symantec.

```
Would you like to send the information about this installation
to Symantec to help improve installation in the future?
[y,n,q,?] (y) y
```

- 4 After the installer configures SFHA successfully, note the location of summary, log, and response files that installer creates.

The files provide the useful information that can assist you with the configuration and can also assist future configurations.

summary file	Describes the cluster and its configured resources.
log file	Details the entire configuration.
response file	Contains the configuration information that can be used to perform secure or unattended installations on other systems.

See [“Configuring SFHA using response files”](#) on page 199.

Verifying and updating licenses on the system

After you install SFHA, you can verify the licensing information using the vxlicrep program. You can replace the demo licenses with a permanent license.

See [“Checking licensing information on the system”](#) on page 137.

See [“Updating product licenses”](#) on page 137.

Checking licensing information on the system

You can use the `vxlicrep` program to display information about the licenses on a system.

To check licensing information

- 1 Navigate to the folder containing the `vxlicrep` program and enter:

```
# vxlicrep
```

- 2 Review the following output to determine the following information:

- The license key
- The type of license
- The product for which it applies
- Its expiration date, if any. Demo keys have expiration dates. Permanent keys and site keys do not have expiration dates.

```
License Key           = xxx-xxx-xxx-xxx-xxx
Product Name         = Storage Foundation and High Availability
Serial Number        = xxxxxx
License Type         = PERMANENT
OEM ID               = xxxxxx

Features :=
Platform             = Solaris
Version              = 6.0
Tier                 = 0
Reserved             = 0
Mode                 = VCS
```

Updating product licenses

You can use the `./installer -license` command or the `vxlicinst -k` to add the SFHA license key on each node. If you have SFHA already installed and configured and you use a demo license, you can replace the demo license.

See [“Replacing a SFHA demo license with a permanent license”](#) on page 138.

To update product licenses using the installer command

- 1 On each node, enter the license key using the command:

```
# ./installer -license
```

- 2 At the prompt, enter your license number.

To update product licenses using the vxlicinst command

- ◆ On each node, enter the license key using the command:

```
# vxlicinst -k license key
```

Replacing a SFHA demo license with a permanent license

When a SFHA demo key license expires, you can replace it with a permanent license using the `vxlicinst(1)` program.

To replace a demo key

- 1 Make sure you have permissions to log in as root on each of the nodes in the cluster.

- 2 Shut down SFHA on all nodes in the cluster:

```
# hstop -all -force
```

This command does not shut down any running applications.

- 3 Enter the permanent license key using the following command on each node:

```
# vxlicinst -k license key
```

- 4 Make sure demo licenses are replaced on all cluster nodes before starting SFHA.

```
# vxlicrep
```

- 5 Start SFHA on each node:

```
# hstart
```

Configuring the SFDB repository database after installation

If you want to use the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools, you must set up the SFDB repository after installing and configuring SFHA and Oracle. For SFDB repository set up procedures:

See *Symantec Storage Foundation: Storage and Availability Management for Oracle Databases*

Manually configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Setting up disk-based I/O fencing using `installsfha`](#)
- [Setting up server-based I/O fencing using `installsfha`](#)
- [Setting up non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in virtual environments using `installsfha`](#)
- [Enabling or disabling the preferred fencing policy](#)

Setting up disk-based I/O fencing using `installsfha`

You can configure I/O fencing using the `-fencing` option of the `installsfha`.

Initializing disks as VxVM disks

Perform the following procedure to initialize disks as VxVM disks.

To initialize disks as VxVM disks

- 1 List the new external disks or the LUNs as recognized by the operating system.
On each node, enter:

```
# vxdisk list
```

- 2 To initialize the disks as VxVM disks, use one of the following methods:

- Use the interactive `vxdiskadm` utility to initialize the disks as VxVM disks. For more information, see the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.
- Use the `vxdisksetup` command to initialize a disk as a VxVM disk.

```
# vxdisksetup -i device_name
```

The example specifies the CDS format:

```
# vxdisksetup -i c2t13d0
```

Repeat this command for each disk you intend to use as a coordinator disk.

Checking shared disks for I/O fencing

Make sure that the shared storage you set up while preparing to configure SFHA meets the I/O fencing requirements. You can test the shared disks using the `vxfststhdw` utility. The two nodes must have `ssh` (default) or `rsh` communication. To confirm whether a disk (or LUN) supports SCSI-3 persistent reservations, two nodes must simultaneously have access to the same disks. Because a shared disk is likely to have a different name on each node, check the serial number to verify the identity of the disk. Use the `vxfenadm` command with the `-i` option. This command option verifies that the same serial number for the LUN is returned on all paths to the LUN.

Make sure to test the disks that serve as coordinator disks.

The `vxfststhdw` utility has additional options suitable for testing many disks. Review the options for testing the disk groups (`-g`) and the disks that are listed in a file (`-f`). You can also test disks without destroying data using the `-r` option.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Checking that disks support SCSI-3 involves the following tasks:

- Verifying the Array Support Library (ASL)
See [“Verifying Array Support Library \(ASL\)”](#) on page 141.
- Verifying that nodes have access to the same disk
See [“Verifying that the nodes have access to the same disk”](#) on page 142.
- Testing the shared disks for SCSI-3
See [“Testing the disks using vxfststhdw utility”](#) on page 143.

Verifying Array Support Library (ASL)

Make sure that the Array Support Library (ASL) for the array that you add is installed.

To verify Array Support Library (ASL)

- 1 If the Array Support Library (ASL) for the array that you add is not installed, obtain and install it on each node before proceeding.

The ASL for the supported storage device that you add is available from the disk array vendor or Symantec technical support.

- 2 Verify that the ASL for the disk array is installed on each of the nodes. Run the following command on each node and examine the output to verify the installation of ASL.

The following output is a sample:

```
# vxddladm listsupport all
```

LIBNAME	VID	PID
libvx3par.so	3PARdata	VV
libvxCLARiiON.so	DGC	All
libvxFJTSYe6k.so	FUJITSU	E6000
libvxFJTSYe8k.so	FUJITSU	All
libvxap.so	Oracle	All
libvxatf.so	VERITAS	ATFNODES
libvxcompellent.so	COMPELNT	Compellent Vol
libvxcopan.so	COPANSYS	8814, 8818

- 3 Scan all disk drives and their attributes, update the VxVM device list, and reconfigure DMP with the new devices. Type:

```
# vxdisk scandisks
```

See the Veritas Volume Manager documentation for details on how to add and configure disks.

Verifying that the nodes have access to the same disk

Before you test the disks that you plan to use as shared data storage or as coordinator disks using the vxfcntl utility, you must verify that the systems see the same disk.

To verify that the nodes have access to the same disk

- 1 Verify the connection of the shared storage for data to two of the nodes on which you installed SFHA.
- 2 Ensure that both nodes are connected to the same disk during the testing. Use the vxfenadm command to verify the disk serial number.

```
# vxfenadm -i diskpath
```

Refer to the `vxfenadm` (1M) manual page.

For example, an EMC disk is accessible by the `/dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2` path on node A and the `/dev/rdisk/c2t1d0s2` path on node B.

From node A, enter:

```
# vxfenadm -i /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2
```

```
Vendor id : EMC  
Product id : SYMMETRIX  
Revision : 5567  
Serial Number : 42031000a
```

The same serial number information should appear when you enter the equivalent command on node B using the `/dev/rdisk/c2t1d0s2` path.

On a disk from another manufacturer, Hitachi Data Systems, the output is different and may resemble:

```
Vendor id      : HITACHI  
Product id    : OPEN-3          -Oracle  
Revision      : 0117  
Serial Number : 0401EB6F0002
```

Testing the disks using `vxfcntlsthdw` utility

This procedure uses the `/dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2` disk in the steps.

If the utility does not show a message that states a disk is ready, the verification has failed. Failure of verification can be the result of an improperly configured disk array. The failure can also be due to a bad disk.

If the failure is due to a bad disk, remove and replace it. The `vxfcntlsthdw` utility indicates a disk can be used for I/O fencing with a message resembling:

```
The disk /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2 is ready to be configured for I/O Fencing on  
node sys1
```

For more information on how to replace coordinator disks, refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

To test the disks using `vxfcntlsthdw` utility

- 1 Make sure system-to-system communication functions properly.
- 2 From one node, start the utility.

- 3 The script warns that the tests overwrite data on the disks. After you review the overview and the warning, confirm to continue the process and enter the node names.

Warning: The tests overwrite and destroy data on the disks unless you use the `-r` option.

```
***** WARNING!!!!!!!!!! *****
THIS UTILITY WILL DESTROY THE DATA ON THE DISK!!

Do you still want to continue : [y/n] (default: n) y
Enter the first node of the cluster: sys1
Enter the second node of the cluster: sys2
```

- 4 Review the output as the utility performs the checks and reports its activities.
- 5 If a disk is ready for I/O fencing on each node, the utility reports success for each node. For example, the utility displays the following message for the node `sys1`.

```
The disk is now ready to be configured for I/O Fencing on node
sys1

ALL tests on the disk /dev/rdisk/ctl1d0s2 have PASSED
The disk is now ready to be configured for I/O fencing on node
sys1
```

- 6 Run the `vxfsentsthdw` utility for each disk you intend to verify.

Configuring disk-based I/O fencing using installsfha

Note: The installer stops and starts SFHA to complete I/O fencing configuration. Make sure to unfreeze any frozen VCS service groups in the cluster for the installer to successfully stop SFHA.

To set up disk-based I/O fencing using the installsfha

- 1 Start the installsfha with `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installsfha starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

Note the location of log files which you can access in the event of any problem with the configuration process.

- 2 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 3 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **2** to configure disk-based I/O fencing.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,b,q] 2
```

- 4 Review the output as the configuration program checks whether VxVM is already started and is running.

- If the check fails, configure and enable VxVM before you repeat this procedure.
- If the check passes, then the program prompts you for the coordinator disk group information.

- 5 Choose whether to use an existing disk group or create a new disk group to configure as the coordinator disk group.

The program lists the available disk group names and provides an option to create a new disk group. Perform one of the following:

- To use an existing disk group, enter the number corresponding to the disk group at the prompt.
The program verifies whether the disk group you chose has an odd number of disks and that the disk group has a minimum of three disks.
- To create a new disk group, perform the following steps:
 - Enter the number corresponding to the **Create a new disk group** option.

The program lists the available disks that are in the CDS disk format in the cluster and asks you to choose an odd number of disks with at least three disks to be used as coordinator disks.

Symantec recommends that you use three disks as coordination points for disk-based I/O fencing.

- If the available VxVM CDS disks are less than the required, installer asks whether you want to initialize more disks as VxVM disks. Choose the disks you want to initialize as VxVM disks and then use them to create new disk group.

If no VxVM CDS disks are available and some free exported disks exist, installer displays the following message.

```
Installer could not detect any disk that satisfies
the requirements for coordinator disks. It might happen that
if 'vxdisk -o alldisks export' was executed before
invoking the installer, in which case no disk would be listed
because exported devices cannot be used as coordinator disks.
If there are disks that have direct connectivity with all the
cluster nodes and you do not want to mark them as exported devices,
then unexport them with the command 'vxdisk unexport <disk list>'
in a separate console, and refresh the list of disks in the
installer console to continue.
```

- Decide if you want to unexport any free exported disks to be used as a VxVM disk.

```
Do you want to unexport any disk(s)?
It should be done in a separate console.
```

Choose **Y** and run the `vxdisk unexport disk list` command in a separate console, then continue.

Choose **N** if you do not want to unexport any free exported disk.

- Enter the numbers corresponding to the disks that you want to use as coordinator disks.
- Enter the disk group name.

6 Verify that the coordinator disks you chose meet the I/O fencing requirements.

You must verify that the disks are SCSI-3 PR compatible using the `vxfsentsthdw` utility and then return to this configuration program.

See [“Checking shared disks for I/O fencing”](#) on page 141.

7 After you confirm the requirements, the program creates the coordinator disk group with the information you provided.

8 Enter the I/O fencing disk policy that you chose to use. For example:

```
Enter disk policy for the disk(s) (raw/dmp): [b,q,?] dmp
```

The program also does the following:

- Populates the `/etc/vxfendg` file with this disk group information
- Populates the `/etc/vxfenmode` file on each cluster node with the I/O fencing mode information and with the SCSI-3 disk policy information

9 Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information that the installer summarizes.

10 Review the output as the configuration program does the following:

- Stops VCS and I/O fencing on each node.
- Configures disk-based I/O fencing and starts the I/O fencing process.
- Updates the VCS configuration file `main.cf` if necessary.
- Copies the `/etc/vxfenmode` file to a date and time suffixed file `/etc/vxfenmode-date-time`. This backup file is useful if any future fencing configuration fails.
- Updates the I/O fencing configuration file `/etc/vxfenmode`.
- Starts VCS on each node to make sure that the SFHA is cleanly configured to use the I/O fencing feature.

11 Review the output as the configuration program displays the location of the log files, the summary files, and the response files.

12 Configure the Coordination Point Agent.

```
Do you want to configure Coordination Point Agent on  
the client cluster? [y,n,q] (y)
```

13 Enter a name for the service group for the Coordination Point Agent.

```
Enter a non-existing name for the service group for  
Coordination Point Agent: [b] (vxfen) vxfen
```

14 Set the level two monitor frequency.

```
Do you want to set LevelTwoMonitorFreq? [y,n,q] (y)
```

15 Decide the value of the level two monitor frequency.

```
Enter the value of the LevelTwoMonitorFreq attribute: [b,q,?] (5)
```

Installer adds Coordination Point Agent and updates the main configuration file.

See [“Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points”](#) on page 258.

Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points for disk-based fencing using the installsfha

You must refresh registrations on the coordination points in the following scenarios:

- When the CoordPoint agent notifies VCS about the loss of registration on any of the existing coordination points.
- A planned refresh of registrations on coordination points when the cluster is online without having an application downtime on the cluster.

Registration loss may happen because of an accidental array restart, corruption of keys, or some other reason. If the coordination points lose the registrations of the cluster nodes, the cluster may panic when a network partition occurs.

Warning: Refreshing keys might cause the cluster to panic if a node leaves membership before the coordination points refresh is complete.

To refresh registrations on existing coordination points for disk-based I/O fencing using the installsfha

- 1 Start the installsfha with the `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

where, `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installsfha starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

Note down the location of log files that you can access if there is a problem with the configuration process.

- 2 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with the remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 3 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **5** to refresh registrations or keys on the existing coordination points.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,q] 5
```

- 4 Ensure that the disk group constitution that is used by the fencing module contains the same disks that are currently used as coordination disks.
- 5 Verify the coordination points.

```
For example,
Disk Group: fendg
Fencing disk policy: dmp
Fencing disks:
  emc_clariion0_62
  emc_clariion0_65
  emc_clariion0_66
```

Is this information correct? [y,n,q] **(y)**.

```
Successfully completed the vxfenswap operation
```

The keys on the coordination disks are refreshed.

- 6 Do you want to send the information about this installation to Symantec to help improve installation in the future? [y,n,q,?] (y).
- 7 Do you want to view the summary file? [y,n,q] (n).

Setting up server-based I/O fencing using installsfha

You can configure server-based I/O fencing for the SFHA cluster using the `installsfha`.

With server-based fencing, you can have the coordination points in your configuration as follows:

- Combination of CP servers and SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks
 - CP servers only
- Symantec also supports server-based fencing with a single highly available CP server that acts as a single coordination point.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

See [“Recommended CP server configurations”](#) on page 86.

This section covers the following example procedures:

Mix of CP servers and coordinator disks	See “To configure server-based fencing for the SFHA cluster (one CP server and two coordinator disks)” on page 150.
Single CP server	See “To configure server-based fencing for the SFHA cluster (single CP server)” on page 155.

To configure server-based fencing for the SFHA cluster (one CP server and two coordinator disks)

- 1 Depending on the server-based configuration model in your setup, make sure of the following:
 - CP servers are configured and are reachable from the SFHA cluster. The SFHA cluster is also referred to as the application cluster or the client cluster. See [“Setting up the CP server”](#) on page 89.
 - The coordination disks are verified for SCSI3-PR compliance.

See [“Checking shared disks for I/O fencing”](#) on page 141.

- 2 Start the `installsfha` with the `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version. The `installsfha` starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Note the location of log files which you can access in the event of any problem with the configuration process.

- 3 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 4 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type `1` to configure server-based I/O fencing.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,b,q] 1
```

- 5 Make sure that the storage supports SCSI3-PR, and answer `y` at the following prompt.

```
Does your storage environment support SCSI3 PR? [y,n,q] (y)
```

- 6 Provide the following details about the coordination points at the installer prompt:

- Enter the total number of coordination points including both servers and disks. This number should be at least 3.

```
Enter the total number of co-ordination points including both
Coordination Point servers and disks: [b] (3)
```

- Enter the total number of coordinator disks among the coordination points.

```
Enter the total number of disks among these:
[b] (0) 2
```

- 7 Provide the following CP server details at the installer prompt:

- Enter the total number of virtual IP addresses or the total number of fully qualified host names for each of the CP servers.

How many IP addresses would you like to use to communicate to Coordination Point Server #1?: [b,q,?] (1) **1**

- Enter the virtual IP addresses or the fully qualified host name for each of the CP servers. The installer assumes these values to be identical as viewed from all the application cluster nodes.

Enter the Virtual IP address or fully qualified host name #1 for the HTTPS Coordination Point Server #1:
 [b] 10.209.80.197

The installer prompts for this information for the number of virtual IP addresses you want to configure for each CP server.

- Enter the port that the CP server would be listening on.

Enter the port that the coordination point server 10.198.90.178 would be listening on or simply accept the default port suggested: [b] (443)

8 Provide the following coordinator disks-related details at the installer prompt:

- Enter the I/O fencing disk policy for the coordinator disks.

Enter disk policy for the disk(s) (raw/dmp):
 [b,q,?] **raw**

- Choose the coordinator disks from the list of available disks that the installer displays. Ensure that the disk you choose is available from all the SFHA (application cluster) nodes.

The number of times that the installer asks you to choose the disks depends on the information that you provided in step 6. For example, if you had chosen to configure two coordinator disks, the installer asks you to choose the first disk and then the second disk:

Select disk number 1 for co-ordination point

- 1) c1t1d0s2
- 2) c2t1d0s2
- 3) c3t1d0s2

Please enter a valid disk which is available from all the cluster nodes for co-ordination point [1-3,q] 1

- If you have not already checked the disks for SCSI-3 PR compliance in step 1, check the disks now.
 The installer displays a message that recommends you to verify the disks in another window and then return to this configuration procedure.
 Press Enter to continue, and confirm your disk selection at the installer prompt.
- Enter a disk group name for the coordinator disks or accept the default.

```
Enter the disk group name for coordinating disk(s):
[b] (vxfencoorddg)
```

9 Verify and confirm the coordination points information for the fencing configuration.

For example:

```
Total number of coordination points being used: 3
Coordination Point Server ([VIP or FQHN]:Port):
  1. 10.209.80.197 ([10.209.80.197]:443)
SCSI-3 disks:
  1. c1t1d0s2
  2. c2t1d0s2
Disk Group name for the disks in customized fencing: vxfencoorddg
Disk policy used for customized fencing: raw
```

The installer initializes the disks and the disk group and depots the disk group on the SFHA (application cluster) node.

10 If the CP server is configured for security, the installer sets up secure communication between the CP server and the SFHA (application cluster).

After the installer establishes trust between the authentication brokers of the CP servers and the application cluster nodes, press Enter to continue.

11 Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information.

```
CPS Admin utility location: /opt/VRTScps/bin/cpsadm
Cluster ID: 2122
Cluster Name: clus1
UUID for the above cluster: {ae5e589a-1dd1-11b2-dd44-00144f79240c}
```

- 12** Review the output as the installer updates the application cluster information on each of the CP servers to ensure connectivity between them. The installer then populates the `/etc/vxfenmode` file with the appropriate details in each of the application cluster nodes.

```
Updating client cluster information on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197
Adding the client cluster to the Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 ..... Done
Registering client node sys1 with Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197..... Done
Adding CPClient user for communicating to Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .... Done
Adding cluster clus1 to the CPClient user on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .. Done
Registering client node sys2 with Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 ..... Done
Adding CPClient user for communicating to Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .... Done
Adding cluster clus1 to the CPClient user on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 ..Done
Updating /etc/vxfenmode file on sys1 ..... Done
Updating /etc/vxfenmode file on sys2 ..... Done
```

See [“About I/O fencing configuration files”](#) on page 532.

- 13** Review the output as the installer stops and restarts the VCS and the fencing processes on each application cluster node, and completes the I/O fencing configuration.
- 14** Configure the CP agent on the SFHA (application cluster). The Coordination Point Agent monitors the registrations on the coordination points.

```
Do you want to configure Coordination Point Agent on
the client cluster? [y,n,q] (y)
```

```
Enter a non-existing name for the service group for
Coordination Point Agent: [b] (vxfen)
```

- 15** Additionally the coordination point agent can also monitor changes to the Coordinator Disk Group constitution such as a disk being accidentally deleted from the Coordinator Disk Group. The frequency of this detailed monitoring can be tuned with the `LevelTwoMonitorFreq` attribute. For example, if you set this attribute to 5, the agent will monitor the Coordinator Disk Group constitution every five monitor cycles.

Note that for the `LevelTwoMonitorFreq` attribute to be applicable there must be disks as part of the Coordinator Disk Group.

```
Enter the value of the LevelTwoMonitorFreq attribute: (5)
```

```
Adding Coordination Point Agent via sys1 .... Done
```

- 16** Note the location of the configuration log files, summary files, and response files that the installer displays for later use.
- 17** Verify the fencing configuration using:

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

- 18** Verify the list of coordination points.

```
# vxfenconfig -l
```

To configure server-based fencing for the SFHA cluster (single CP server)

- 1** Make sure that the CP server is configured and is reachable from the SFHA cluster. The SFHA cluster is also referred to as the application cluster or the client cluster.
- 2** See [“Setting up the CP server”](#) on page 89.
- 3** Start the `installsfha` with `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version. The `installsfha` starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Note the location of log files which you can access in the event of any problem with the configuration process.

- 4** Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 5 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **1** to configure server-based I/O fencing.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,q] 1
```

- 6 Make sure that the storage supports SCSI3-PR, and answer **y** at the following prompt.

```
Does your storage environment support SCSI3 PR? [y,n,q] (y)
```

- 7 Enter the total number of coordination points as **1**.

```
Enter the total number of co-ordination points including both
Coordination Point servers and disks: [b] (3) 1
```

Read the installer warning carefully before you proceed with the configuration.

- 8 Provide the following CP server details at the installer prompt:
 - Enter the total number of virtual IP addresses or the total number of fully qualified host names for each of the CP servers.

```
How many IP addresses would you like to use to communicate
to Coordination Point Server #1? [b,q,?] (1) 1
```

- Enter the virtual IP address or the fully qualified host name for the CP server. The installer assumes these values to be identical as viewed from all the application cluster nodes.

```
Enter the Virtual IP address or fully qualified host name
#1 for the Coordination Point Server #1:
[b] 10.209.80.197
```

The installer prompts for this information for the number of virtual IP addresses you want to configure for each CP server.

- Enter the port that the CP server would be listening on.

```
Enter the port in the range [49152, 65535] which the
Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197
would be listening on or simply accept the default
port suggested: [b] (443)
```

- 9** Verify and confirm the coordination points information for the fencing configuration.

For example:

```
Total number of coordination points being used: 1
Coordination Point Server ([VIP or FQHN]:Port):
    1. 10.209.80.197 ([10.209.80.197]:443)
```

- 10** If the CP server is configured for security, the installer sets up secure communication between the CP server and the SFHA (application cluster).
 After the installer establishes trust between the authentication brokers of the CP servers and the application cluster nodes, press Enter to continue.

- 11** Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information.

```
CPS Admin utility location: /opt/VRTScps/bin/cpsadm
Cluster ID: 2122
Cluster Name: clus1
UUID for the above cluster: {ae5e589a-1dd1-11b2-dd44-00144f79240c}
```

- 12** Review the output as the installer updates the application cluster information on each of the CP servers to ensure connectivity between them. The installer then populates the `/etc/vxfenmode` file with the appropriate details in each of the application cluster nodes.

The installer also populates the `/etc/vxfenmode` file with the entry `single_cp=1` for such single CP server fencing configuration.

```
Updating client cluster information on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197

Adding the client cluster to the Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 ..... Done

Registering client node sys1 with Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197..... Done
Adding CPClient user for communicating to Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .... Done
Adding cluster clus1 to the CPClient user on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .. Done

Registering client node sys2 with Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 ..... Done
Adding CPClient user for communicating to Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .... Done
Adding cluster clus1 to the CPClient user on Coordination Point Server 10.209.80.197 .. Done

Updating /etc/vxfenmode file on sys1 ..... Done
Updating /etc/vxfenmode file on sys2 ..... Done
```

See [“About I/O fencing configuration files”](#) on page 532.

- 13 Review the output as the installer stops and restarts the VCS and the fencing processes on each application cluster node, and completes the I/O fencing configuration.

- 14 Configure the CP agent on the SFHA (application cluster).

```
Do you want to configure Coordination Point Agent on the
client cluster? [y,n,q] (y)
```

```
Enter a non-existing name for the service group for
Coordination Point Agent: [b] (vxfen)
```

```
Adding Coordination Point Agent via systemctl ... Done
```

- 15 Note the location of the configuration log files, summary files, and response files that the installer displays for later use.

Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points for server-based fencing using the installsfha

You must refresh registrations on the coordination points in the following scenarios:

- When the CoordPoint agent notifies VCS about the loss of registration on any of the existing coordination points.
- A planned refresh of registrations on coordination points when the cluster is online without having an application downtime on the cluster.

Registration loss might occur because of an accidental array restart, corruption of keys, or some other reason. If the coordination points lose registrations of the cluster nodes, the cluster might panic when a network partition occurs.

Warning: Refreshing keys might cause the cluster to panic if a node leaves membership before the coordination points refresh is complete.

To refresh registrations on existing coordination points for server-based I/O fencing using the installsfha

- 1 Start the installsfha with the `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installsfha starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

Note the location of log files that you can access if there is a problem with the configuration process.

- 2 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with the remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 3 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **5** to refresh registrations or keys on the existing coordination points.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,q] 5
```

- 4 Ensure that the `/etc/vxfentab` file contains the same coordination point servers that are currently used by the fencing module.

Also, ensure that the disk group mentioned in the `/etc/vxfendg` file contains the same disks that are currently used by the fencing module as coordination disks.

- 5 Verify the coordination points.

For example,

```
Total number of coordination points being used: 3
```

```
Coordination Point Server ([VIP or FQHN]:Port):
```

```
1. 10.198.94.146 ([10.198.94.146]:443)
```

```
2. 10.198.94.144 ([10.198.94.144]:443)
```

```
SCSI-3 disks:
```

```
1. emc_clariion0_61
```

```
Disk Group name for the disks in customized fencing: vxencoorddg
```

```
Disk policy used for customized fencing: dmp
```

6 Is this information correct? [y,n,q] **(y)**

```
Updating client cluster information on Coordination Point Server
  IPaddress
```

```
Successfully completed the vxfenswap operation
```

The keys on the coordination disks are refreshed.

7 Do you want to send the information about this installation to Symantec to help improve installation in the future? [y,n,q,?] **(y)**.

8 Do you want to view the summary file? [y,n,q] **(n)**.

Setting the order of existing coordination points for server-based fencing using the installsfha

This section describes the reasons, benefits, considerations, and the procedure to set the order of the existing coordination points for server-based fencing.

About deciding the order of existing coordination points

You can decide the order in which coordination points can participate in a race during a network partition. In a network partition scenario, I/O fencing attempts to contact coordination points for membership arbitration based on the order that is set in the `vxfcntl` file.

When I/O fencing is not able to connect to the first coordination point in the sequence it goes to the second coordination point and so on. To avoid a cluster panic, the surviving subcluster must win majority of the coordination points. So, the order must begin with the coordination point that has the best chance to win the race and must end with the coordination point that has the least chance to win the race.

For fencing configurations that use a mix of coordination point servers and coordination disks, you can specify either coordination point servers before coordination disks or disks before servers.

Note: Disk-based fencing does not support setting the order of existing coordination points.

Considerations to decide the order of coordination points

- Choose the coordination points based on their chances to gain membership on the cluster during the race and hence gain control over a network partition. In effect, you have the ability to save a partition.

- First in the order must be the coordination point that has the best chance to win the race. The next coordination point you list in the order must have relatively lesser chance to win the race. Complete the order such that the last coordination point has the least chance to win the race.

Setting the order of existing coordination points using the installsfha

To set the order of existing coordination points

- 1 Start the installsfha with `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installsfha starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

Note the location of log files that you can access if there is a problem with the configuration process.

- 2 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 3 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **6** to set the order of existing coordination points.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster [1-6,q] 6
```

```
Installer will ask the new order of existing coordination points.
Then it will call vxfsnwap utility to commit the
coordination points change.
```

Warning: The cluster might panic if a node leaves membership before the coordination points change is complete.

4 Review the current order of coordination points.

Current coordination points order:

(Coordination disks/Coordination Point Server)

Example,

- 1) /dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_65,/dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_66,
/dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_62
 - 2) [10.198.94.144]:443
 - 3) [10.198.94.146]:443
- b) Back to previous menu

5 Enter the new order of the coordination points by the numbers and separate the order by space [1-3,b,q] **3 1 2**.

New coordination points order:

(Coordination disks/Coordination Point Server)

Example,

- 1) [10.198.94.146]:443
- 2) /dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_65,/dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_66,
/dev/vx/rdmp/emc_clariion0_62
- 3) [10.198.94.144]:443

6 Is this information correct? [y,n,q] **(y)**.

Preparing vxfenmode.test file on all systems...

Running vxfenswap...

Successfully completed the vxfenswap operation

7 Do you want to send the information about this installation to Symantec to help improve installation in the future? [y,n,q,?] **(y)**.

8 Do you want to view the summary file? [y,n,q] **(n)**.

- 9** Verify that the value of `vxfen_honor_cp_order` specified in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file is set to **1**.

```
For example,
vxfen_mode=customized
vxfen_mechanism=cps
port=443
scsi3_disk_policy=dmp
cps1=[10.198.94.146]
vxfendg=vxfencoorddg
cps2=[10.198.94.144]
vxfen_honor_cp_order=1
```

- 10** Verify that the coordination point order is updated in the output of the `vxfenconfig -l` command.

```
For example,
I/O Fencing Configuration Information:
=====

single_cp=0
[10.198.94.146]:443 {e7823b24-1dd1-11b2-8814-2299557f1dc0}
/dev/vx/rmp/emc_clariion0_65 60060160A38B1600386FD87CA8FDDD11
/dev/vx/rmp/emc_clariion0_66 60060160A38B1600396FD87CA8FDDD11
/dev/vx/rmp/emc_clariion0_62 60060160A38B16005AA00372A8FDDD11
[10.198.94.144]:443 {01f18460-1dd2-11b2-b818-659cbc6eb360}
```

Setting up non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing in virtual environments using installsfha

If you have installed VCS in virtual environments that do not support SCSI-3 PR-compliant storage, you can configure non-SCSI-3 fencing.

To configure I/O fencing using the installsfha in a non-SCSI-3 PR-compliant setup

- 1 Start the installsfha with `-fencing` option.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -fencing
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installsfha starts with a copyright message and verifies the cluster information.

- 2 Confirm that you want to proceed with the I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

The program checks that the local node running the script can communicate with remote nodes and checks whether SFHA 6.1 is configured properly.

- 3 Review the I/O fencing configuration options that the program presents. Type **1** to configure server-based I/O fencing.

```
Select the fencing mechanism to be configured in this
Application Cluster
[1-6,q] 1
```

- 4 Enter **n** to confirm that your storage environment does not support SCSI-3 PR.

```
Does your storage environment support SCSI3 PR?
[y,n,q] (y) n
```

- 5 Confirm that you want to proceed with the non-SCSI-3 I/O fencing configuration at the prompt.

- 6 Enter the number of CP server coordination points you want to use in your setup.

- 7 Enter the following details for each CP server:

- Enter the virtual IP address or the fully qualified host name.
- Enter the port address on which the CP server listens for connections. The default value is 443. You can enter a different port address. Valid values are between 49152 and 65535.

The installer assumes that these values are identical from the view of the SF HA cluster nodes that host the applications for high availability.

- 8 Verify and confirm the CP server information that you provided.

- 9 Verify and confirm the SF HA cluster configuration information.
 Review the output as the installer performs the following tasks:
 - Updates the CP server configuration files on each CP server with the following details:
 - Registers each node of the SF HA cluster with the CP server.
 - Adds CP server user to the CP server.
 - Adds SF HA cluster to the CP server user.
 - Updates the following configuration files on each node of the SF HA cluster
 - `/etc/vxfenmode` file
 - `/etc/default/vxfen` file
 - `/etc/vxenviron` file
 - `/etc/llttab` file
 - `/etc/vxfentab`
- 10 Review the output as the installer stops SFHA on each node, starts I/O fencing on each node, updates the VCS configuration file `main.cf`, and restarts SFHA with non-SCSI-3 server-based fencing.
 Confirm to configure the CP agent on the SF HA cluster.
- 11 Confirm whether you want to send the installation information to Symantec.
- 12 After the installer configures I/O fencing successfully, note the location of summary, log, and response files that installer creates.
 The files provide useful information which can assist you with the configuration, and can also assist future configurations.

Enabling or disabling the preferred fencing policy

You can enable or disable the preferred fencing feature for your I/O fencing configuration.

You can enable preferred fencing to use system-based race policy or group-based race policy. If you disable preferred fencing, the I/O fencing configuration uses the default count-based race policy.

See [“About preferred fencing”](#) on page 33.

To enable preferred fencing for the I/O fencing configuration

- 1 Make sure that the cluster is running with I/O fencing set up.

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

- 2 Make sure that the cluster-level attribute UseFence has the value set to SCSI3.

```
# haclus -value UseFence
```

- 3 To enable system-based race policy, perform the following steps:

- Make the VCS configuration writable.

```
# haconf -makerw
```

- Set the value of the cluster-level attribute PreferredFencingPolicy as System.

```
# haclus -modify PreferredFencingPolicy System
```

- Set the value of the system-level attribute FencingWeight for each node in the cluster.

For example, in a two-node cluster, where you want to assign sys1 five times more weight compared to sys2, run the following commands:

```
# hasys -modify sys1 FencingWeight 50
# hasys -modify sys2 FencingWeight 10
```

- Save the VCS configuration.

```
# haconf -dump -makerw
```

- Verify fencing node weights using:

```
# vxfenconfig -a
```

- 4 To enable group-based race policy, perform the following steps:

- Make the VCS configuration writable.

```
# haconf -makerw
```

- Set the value of the cluster-level attribute PreferredFencingPolicy as Group.

```
# haclus -modify PreferredFencingPolicy Group
```

- Set the value of the group-level attribute Priority for each service group.

For example, run the following command:

```
# hagrps -modify service_group Priority 1
```

Make sure that you assign a parent service group an equal or lower priority than its child service group. In case the parent and the child service groups are hosted in different subclusters, then the subcluster that hosts the child service group gets higher preference.

- Save the VCS configuration.

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

5 To enable site-based race policy, perform the following steps:

- Make the VCS configuration writable.

```
# haconf -makerw
```

- Set the value of the cluster-level attribute PreferredFencingPolicy as Site.

```
# haclus -modify PreferredFencingPolicy Site
```

- Set the value of the site-level attribute Preference for each site.

For example,

```
# hasite -modify Pune Preference 2
```

- Save the VCS configuration.

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

6 To view the fencing node weights that are currently set in the fencing driver, run the following command:

```
# vxfenconfig -a
```

To disable preferred fencing for the I/O fencing configuration

- 1 Make sure that the cluster is running with I/O fencing set up.

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

- 2 Make sure that the cluster-level attribute UseFence has the value set to SCSI3.

```
# haclus -value UseFence
```

- 3 To disable preferred fencing and use the default race policy, set the value of the cluster-level attribute PreferredFencingPolicy as Disabled.

```
# haconf -makerw
```

```
# haclus -modify PreferredFencingPolicy Disabled
```

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

Installation using the web-based installer

- [Chapter 10. Installing SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 11. Configuring SFHA](#)

Installing SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the web-based installer](#)
- [Before using the web-based installer](#)
- [Starting the web-based installer](#)
- [Obtaining a security exception on Mozilla Firefox](#)
- [Performing a preinstallation check with the web-based installer](#)
- [Setting installer options with the web-based installer](#)
- [Installing SFHA with the web-based installer](#)

About the web-based installer

Use the web-based installer interface to install Symantec products. The web-based installer can perform most of the tasks that the script-based installer performs.

You use the `webinstaller` script to start and stop the Veritas XPortal Server `xprt1wid` process. The `webinstaller` script can also be used to check the status of the XPortal Server.

When the `webinstaller` script starts the `xprt1wid` process, the script displays a URL. Use this URL to access the web-based installer from a web browser such as Internet Explorer or FireFox.

The web installer creates log files whenever the web installer operates. While the installation processes operate, the log files are located in a session-based directory under the `/var/tmp` directory. After the install process completes, the log files are located in the `/opt/VRTS/install/logs` directory. Symantec recommends that you keep these files for auditing, debugging, and future use.

The location of the Veritas XPortal Server configuration file is
`/var/opt/webinstaller/xprtlwid.conf`.

See [“Before using the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

Before using the web-based installer

The web-based installer requires the following configuration.

Table 10-1 Web-based installer requirements

System	Function	Requirements
Target system	The systems where you plan to install the Symantec products.	Must be a supported platform for Storage Foundation 6.1. See “Supported upgrade paths for SFHA 6.1” on page 292.
Installation server	The server where you start the installation. The installation media is accessible from the installation server.	Must be at one of the supported operating system update levels.
Administrative system	The system where you run the web browser to perform the installation.	Must have a web browser. Supported browsers: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Internet Explorer 6, 7, and 8■ Firefox 3.x and later

Starting the web-based installer

This section describes starting the web-based installer.

To start the web-based installer

- 1 Start the Veritas XPortal Server process `xprt1wid`, on the installation server:

```
# ./webinstaller start
```

The `webinstaller` script displays a URL. Note this URL.

Note: If you do not see the URL, please check your firewall and `iptables` settings. If you have configured a firewall, ensure that the firewall settings allow access to the port 14172. You can alternatively use the `-port` option to use a free port instead.

You can use the following command to display the details about ports used by `webinstaller` and its status:

```
# ./webinstaller status
```

- 2 On the administrative server, start the web browser.
- 3 Navigate to the URL that the script displayed.
- 4 Certain browsers may display the following message:

```
Secure Connection Failed
```

Obtain a security exception for your browser.

When you are prompted, enter `root` and `root`'s password of the installation server.

- 5 Log in as superuser.

Obtaining a security exception on Mozilla Firefox

You may need to get a security exception on Mozilla Firefox.

The following instructions are general. They may change because of the rapid release cycle of Mozilla browsers.

To obtain a security exception

- 1 Click **Or you can add an exception** link.
- 2 Click **I Understand the Risks**, or **You can add an exception**.
- 3 Click **Get Certificate** button.
- 4 Uncheck **Permanently Store this exception checkbox (recommended)**.

- 5 Click **Confirm Security Exception** button.
- 6 Enter root in *User Name* field and root password of the web server in the *Password* field.

Performing a preinstallation check with the web-based installer

This section describes performing a preinstallation check with the web-based installer.

To perform a preinstallation check

- 1 Start the web-based installer.
See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.
- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select **Perform a Pre-installation Check** from the **Task** drop-down list.
- 3 Indicate the systems on which to perform the precheck. Enter one or more system names, separated by spaces. Click **Next**.
- 4 The installer performs the precheck and displays the results.
- 5 If the validation completes successfully, click **Next**. The installer prompts you to begin the installation. Click **Yes** to install on the selected system. Click **No** to install later.
- 6 Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Setting installer options with the web-based installer

You can use the web-based installer for certain command-line installer options.

The supported options follow:

- `-serial`
- `-require path_to_hotfix_file`
- `-mediapath directory_path_to_install_media`
- `-logpath directory_path_to_save_logs`
- `-tmppath directory_path_to_save_temp_files`

See [“Installation script options”](#) on page 502.

To use installer options

- 1 On the web-installer's entry page, click the **Advanced Options** link.
- 2 In the Command line options field, enter the option that you want to use.
For example, if you want to use the serial option and the logpath option, enter:

```
-serial -logpath /opt/VRTS/install/advlogs
```

Where */opt/VRTS/install/advlogs* is the path that you want to use. Separate the command with a space.

- 3 Click the **OK** button and proceed.

Installing SFHA with the web-based installer

This section describes installing SFHA with the Symantec web-based installer.

To install SFHA using the web-based installer

- 1 Perform preliminary steps.
See [“Performing a preinstallation check with the web-based installer”](#) on page 173.
- 2 Start the web-based installer.
See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.
- 3 On the License agreement page, read the End User License Agreement (EULA). To continue, select **Yes, I agree** and click **Next**.
- 4 Indicate the systems where you want to install. Separate multiple system names with spaces. Click **Next**.
- 5 If you have not yet configured a communication mode among systems, you have the option to let the installer configure ssh or rsh. If you choose to allow this configuration, select the communication mode and provide the superuser passwords for the systems.
- 6 After the validation completes successfully, click **Next** to install SFHA on the selected system.
- 7 After the installation completes, you must choose your licensing method.
On the license page, select one of the following radio buttons:
 - Enable keyless licensing and complete system licensing later

Note: The keyless license option enables you to install without entering a key. However, to ensure compliance, you must manage the systems with a management server.

For more information, go to the following website:

<http://go.symantec.com/sfhakeyless>

Click **Next**

- Enter a valid license key
If you have a valid license key, input the license key and click **Next**.
- 8 For Storage Foundation and High Availability, click **Next**. If the installer prompts you to restart the system, then restart the system and invoke the web-based installer again for configuration. If the installer does not require a restart, go to step 9.

Note that you are prompted to configure only if the product is not yet configured.

If you select *n*, you can exit the installer. You must configure the product before you can use SFHA.

After the installation completes, the installer displays the location of the log and summary files. If required, view the files to confirm the installation status.

- 9 The installer prompts you to configure the cluster. Select **Yes** to continue with configuring the product.

If you select **No**, you can exit the installer. You must configure the product before you can use SFHA.

After the installation completes, the installer displays the location of the log and summary files. If required, view the files to confirm the installation status.

- 10 If you are prompted, enter the option to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.

```
Installation procedures and diagnostic information were saved in
the log files under directory
/var/tmp/installer-<platform>-<uuid>. Analyzing this information
helps Symantec discover and fix failed operations performed by
the installer. Would you like to send the information about this
installation to Symantec to help improve installation in the
future? [y,n,q,?]
```

Click **Finish**. The installer asks if you want to read the summary file. Select **Yes** to read the summary file. If you select **No**, the installer prompts you for another task.

Configuring SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer](#)

Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer

Before you begin to configure SFHA using the web-based installer, review the configuration requirements.

By default, the communication between the systems is selected as SSH. If SSH is used for communication between systems, the SSH commands execute without prompting for passwords or confirmations.

You can click **Quit** to quit the web-installer at any time during the configuration process.

To configure SFHA on a cluster

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	Configure CP Server
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 On the Select Systems page, enter the system names where you want to configure SFHA, and click **Next**.

Example: **sys1 sys2**

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.

Click **Next** after the installer completes the system verification successfully.

- 4 In the Confirmation dialog box that appears, choose whether or not to configure CP Server.

Would you like to configure CP Server on the cluster?, click **Yes**.

Would you like to configure CP Server on the cluster later?, click **No**. You can configure I/O fencing later using the web-based installer.

See [“Configuring SFHA for data integrity using the web-based installer”](#) on page 181.

You can also configure I/O fencing later using the `installsfha<version>-fencing` command, the response files, or manually configure.

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

5 On the Set Cluster Name/ID page, specify the following information for the cluster.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Cluster Name | Enter a unique cluster name. |
| Cluster ID | Enter a unique cluster ID.

Note that you can have the installer check to see if the cluster ID is unique. Symantec recommends that you use the installer to check for duplicate cluster IDs in multi-cluster environments. |
| Check duplicate cluster ID | Select the check box if you want the installer to verify if the given cluster ID is unique in your private network. The verification is performed after you specify the heartbeat details in the following pages. The verification takes some time to complete. |
| LLT Type | Select an LLT type from the list. You can choose to configure LLT over UDP or LLT over Ethernet. |
| Number of Heartbeats | Choose the number of heartbeat links you want to configure.

See "Setting up the private network" on page 60. |
| Additional Low Priority Heartbeat NIC | Select the check box if you want to configure a low priority link. The installer configures one heartbeat link as low priority link.

See "Setting up the private network" on page 60. |
| Unique Heartbeat NICs per system | For LLT over Ethernet, select the check box if you do not want to use the same NIC details to configure private heartbeat links on other systems.

For LLT over UDP, this check box is selected by default. |

Click **Next**.

6 On the Set Cluster Heartbeat page, select the heartbeat link details for the LLT type you chose on the Set Cluster Name/ID page.

For **LLT over Ethernet**: Do the following:

- If you are using the same NICs on all the systems, select the NIC for each private heartbeat link.
- If you had selected **Unique Heartbeat NICs per system** on the Set Cluster Name/ID page, provide the NIC details for each system.

For **LLT over UDP**: Select the NIC, Port, and IP address for each private heartbeat link. You must provide these details for each system.

Click **Next**.

- 7** On the Optional Configuration page, decide the optional VCS features that you want to configure. Click the corresponding tab to specify the details for each option:

Security

To configure a secure SFHA cluster, select the **Configure secure cluster** check box.

If you want to perform this task later, do not select the **Configure secure cluster** check box. You can use the `-security` option of the `installsfha`.

Virtual IP

- Select the **Configure Virtual IP** check box.
- If each system uses a separate NIC, select the **Configure NICs for every system separately** check box.
- Select the interface on which you want to configure the virtual IP.
- Enter a virtual IP address and value for the netmask. You can use an IPv4 or an IPv6 address.

VCS Users

- Reset the password for the Admin user, if necessary.
- Select the **Configure VCS users** option.
- Click **Add** to add a new user.
Specify the user name, password, and user privileges for this user.

SMTP

- Select the **Configure SMTP** check box.
- If each system uses a separate NIC, select the **Configure NICs for every system separately** check box.
- If all the systems use the same NIC, select the NIC for the VCS Notifier to be used on all systems. If not, select the NIC to be used by each system.
- In the **SMTP Server** box, enter the domain-based hostname of the SMTP server. Example: `smtp.yourcompany.com`
- In the **Recipient** box, enter the full email address of the SMTP recipient. Example: `user@yourcompany.com`.
- In the **Event** list box, select the minimum security level of messages to be sent to each recipient.
- Click **Add** to add more SMTP recipients, if necessary.

SNMP

- Select the **Configure SNMP** check box.
- If each system uses a separate NIC, select the **Configure NICs for every system separately** check box.
- If all the systems use the same NIC, select the NIC for the VCS Notifier to be used on all systems. If not, select the NIC to be used by each system.
- In the **SNMP Port** box, enter the SNMP trap daemon port: (162).
- In the **Console System Name** box, enter the SNMP console system name.
- In the **Event** list box, select the minimum security level of messages to be sent to each console.
- Click **Add** to add more SNMP consoles, if necessary.

GCO

If you installed a valid HA/DR license, you can now enter the wide-area heartbeat link details for the global cluster that you would set up later.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions to set up SFHA global clusters.

- Select the **Configure GCO** check box.
- If each system uses a separate NIC, select the **Configure NICs for every system separately** check box.
- Select a NIC.
- Enter a virtual IP address and value for the netmask. You can use an IPv4 or an IPv6 address.

Click **Next**.

- 8 On the Stop Processes page, click **Next** after the installer stops all the processes successfully.
- 9 On the Start Processes page, click **Next** after the installer performs the configuration based on the details you provided and starts all the processes successfully.

If you did not choose to configure I/O fencing in step 4, then skip to step 11. Go to step 10 to configure fencing.

10 On the Select Fencing Type page, choose the type of fencing configuration:

Configure Coordination Point client based fencing Choose this option to configure server-based I/O fencing.

Configure disk based fencing Choose this option to configure disk-based I/O fencing.

Based on the fencing type you choose to configure, follow the installer prompts.

See [“Configuring SFHA for data integrity using the web-based installer”](#) on page 181.

11 Click **Next** to complete the process of configuring SFHA.

On the Completion page, view the summary file, log file, or response file, if needed, to confirm the configuration.

12 Select the checkbox to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.

Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Configuring SFHA for data integrity using the web-based installer

After you configure SFHA, you must configure the cluster for data integrity. Review the configuration requirements.

See [“Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer”](#) on page 176.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

Ways to configure I/O fencing using the web-based installer:

- See [“Configuring disk-based fencing for data integrity using the web-based installer”](#) on page 182.
- See [“Configuring server-based fencing for data integrity using the web-based installer”](#) on page 184.
- See [“Configuring fencing in disabled mode using the web-based installer”](#) on page 186.
- See [“Replacing, adding, or removing coordination points using the web-based installer”](#) on page 187.
- See [“Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points using web-based installer”](#) on page 188.
- See [“Setting the order of existing coordination points using the web-based installer”](#) on page 190.

Configuring disk-based fencing for data integrity using the web-based installer

After you configure SFHA, you must configure the cluster for data integrity. Review the configuration requirements.

See [“Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer”](#) on page 176.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

To configure SFHA for data integrity

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and confirm whether you want to configure I/O fencing on the cluster.
- 4 On the Select Cluster page, click **Next** if the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.
- 5 On the Select Fencing Type page, select the `Configure disk-based fencing` option.
- 6 In the Confirmation dialog box that appears, confirm whether your storage environment supports SCSI-3 PR.

You can configure non-SCSI-3 server-based fencing in a virtual environment that is not SCSI-3 PR compliant.
- 7 On the Configure Fencing page, the installer prompts for details based on the fencing type you chose to configure. Specify the coordination points details.

Click **Next**.
- 8 On the Configure Fencing page, specify the following information:

- Select a Disk Group** Select the **Create a new disk group** option or select one of the disk groups from the list.
- If you selected one of the disk groups that is listed, choose the fencing disk policy for the disk group.
 - If you selected the **Create a new disk group** option, make sure you have SCSI-3 PR enabled disks, and click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box.
Click **Next**.

9 On the Create New DG page, specify the following information:

New Disk Group Name Enter a name for the new coordinator disk group you want to create.

Select Disks Select at least three disks to create the coordinator disk group.

If you want to select more than three disks, make sure to select an odd number of disks.

Fencing Disk Policy Choose the fencing disk policy for the disk group.

10 Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information.

The installer stops and restarts the VCS and the fencing processes on each application cluster node, and completes the I/O fencing configuration.

11 If you want to configure the Coordination Point agent on the client cluster, do the following:

- At the prompt for configuring the Coordination Point agent on the client cluster, click **Yes** and enter the Coordination Point agent service group name.
- If you want to set the LevelTwoMonitorFreq attribute, click **Yes** at the prompt and enter a value (0 to 65535).
- Follow the rest of the prompts to complete the Coordination Point agent configuration.

12 Click **Next** to complete the process of configuring I/O fencing.

On the Completion page, view the summary file, log file, or response file, if needed, to confirm the configuration.

13 Select the checkbox to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.

Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Configuring server-based fencing for data integrity using the web-based installer

After you configure SFHA, you must configure the cluster for data integrity. Review the configuration requirements.

See [“Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer”](#) on page 176.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

To configure SFHA for data integrity

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and confirm whether you want to configure I/O fencing on the cluster.
- 4 On the Select Cluster page, click **Next** if the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.
- 5 On the Select Fencing Type page, select the `Configure Coordination Point client based fencing` option.
- 6 In the Confirmation dialog box that appears, confirm whether your storage environment supports SCSI-3 PR.

You can configure non-SCSI-3 server-based fencing in a virtual environment that is not SCSI-3 PR compliant.
- 7 On the Configure Fencing page, the installer prompts for details based on the fencing type you chose to configure. Specify the coordination points details.

Click **Next**.
- 8 Provide the following details for each of the CP servers:

- Enter the virtual IP addresses or host names of the virtual IP address. The installer assumes these values to be identical as viewed from all the application cluster nodes.
 - Enter the port that the CP server must listen on.
 - Click **Next**.
- 9** If your server-based fencing configuration also uses disks as coordination points, perform the following steps:
- If you have not already checked the disks for SCSI-3 PR compliance, check the disks now, and click OK in the dialog box.
 - If you do not want to use the default coordinator disk group name, enter a name for the new coordinator disk group you want to create.
 - Select the disks to create the coordinator disk group.
 - Choose the fencing disk policy for the disk group.
The default fencing disk policy for the disk group is dmp.
- 10** In the Confirmation dialog box that appears, confirm whether the coordination points information you provided is correct, and click **Yes**.
- 11** Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information.
The installer stops and restarts the VCS and the fencing processes on each application cluster node, and completes the I/O fencing configuration.
- 12** If you want to configure the Coordination Point agent on the client cluster, do the following:
- At the prompt for configuring the Coordination Point agent on the client cluster, click **Yes** and enter the Coordination Point agent service group name.
 - Follow the rest of the prompts to complete the Coordination Point agent configuration.
- 13** Click **Next** to complete the process of configuring I/O fencing.
On the Completion page, view the summary file, log file, or response file, if needed, to confirm the configuration.
- 14** Select the checkbox to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.
Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Configuring fencing in disabled mode using the web-based installer

After you configure SFHA, you must configure the cluster for data integrity. Review the configuration requirements.

See [“Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer”](#) on page 176.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

To configure SFHA for data integrity

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and confirm whether you want to configure I/O fencing on the cluster.

- 4 On the Select Cluster page, click **Next** if the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.

- 5 Fencing may be enabled, installer may prompt whether you want to reconfigure it.

Click **Yes**.

- 6 On the Select Fencing Type page, select the `Configure fencing in disabled mode` option.

- 7 Installer stops VCS before applying the selected fencing mode to the cluster.

Note: Unfreeze any frozen service group and unmount any file system that is mounted in the cluster.

Click **Yes**.

- 8 Installer restarts VCS on all systems of the cluster. I/O fencing is disabled.

- 9 Verify and confirm the I/O fencing configuration information.
 On the Completion page, view the summary file, log file, or response file, if needed, to confirm the configuration.
- 10 Select the checkbox to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.
 Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Replacing, adding, or removing coordination points using the web-based installer

After you configure SFHA, you must configure the cluster for data integrity. Review the configuration requirements.

See [“Configuring SFHA using the web-based installer”](#) on page 176.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

To configure SFHA for data integrity

- 1 Start the web-based installer.
 See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.
- 2 On the Select a task and a product page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O Fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and confirm whether you want to configure I/O Fencing on the cluster.
- 4 On the Select Cluster page, click **Next** if the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.
 The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.
- 5 Fencing may be enabled, installer may prompt whether you want to reconfigure it.
 Click **Yes**.
- 6 On the Select Fencing Type page, select the `Replace/Add/Remove coordination points` option.

- 7 The installer prompts to select the coordination points you want to remove from the currently configured coordination points.
Click **Next**.
- 8 Provide the number of Coordination point server and disk coordination points to be added to the configuration.
Click **Next**.
- 9 Provide the number of virtual IP addresses or Fully Qualified Host Name (FQHN) used for each coordination point server.
Click **Next**.
- 10 Provide the IP or FQHN and port number for each coordination point server.
Click **Next**.
- 11 Installer prompts to confirm the online migration coordination point servers.
Click **Yes**.
- 12 Installer proceeds with migration of the new coordination point servers. VCS is restarted during configuration.
Click **Next**.
- 13 You can add a Coordination Point agent to the client cluster and also provide name to the agent.
- 14 Click **Next**.
- 15 On the Completion page, view the summary file, log file, or response file, if needed, to confirm the configuration.
- 16 Select the check box to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.
Click **Finish**. The installer prompts you for another task.

Refreshing keys or registrations on the existing coordination points using web-based installer

You must refresh registrations on the coordination points in the following scenarios:

- When the CoordPoint agent notifies VCS about the loss of registration on any of the existing coordination points.
- A planned refresh of registrations on coordination points when the cluster is online without having an application downtime on the cluster.

Registration loss may happen because of an accidental array restart, corruption of keys, or some other reason. If the coordination points lose the registrations of the cluster nodes, the cluster may panic when a network partition occurs.

Warning: Refreshing keys might cause the cluster to panic if a node leaves membership before the coordination points refresh is complete.

To refresh registrations on existing coordination points using web-based installer

- 1 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 2 On the **Select a task and a product** page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O Fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

- 3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and click **Yes** to confirm whether you want to configure I/O fencing on the cluster.
- 4 On the **Select Cluster** page, enter the system name and click **Yes** to confirm cluster information.
- 5 On the **Select Cluster** page, click **Next** when the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.
- 6 The installer may prompt you to reconfigure fencing if it is already enabled. Click **Yes** to reconfigure fencing.
- 7 On the **Select Fencing Type** page, select the `Refresh keys/registrations on the existing coordination points` option.
- 8 Ensure that the `/etc/vxfenmode` file contains the same coordination point servers that are currently used by the fencing module.
- 9 Ensure that the disk group mentioned in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file contains the same disks that are currently used by the fencing module as coordination disks.

- 10** Installer lists the reasons for the loss of registrations.
Click **OK**.
- 11** Verify the coordination points.
Click **Yes** if the information is correct.
- 12** Installer updates the client cluster information on the coordination point servers.
Click **Next**.

Installer prepares the `vxfenmode` file on all nodes and runs the `vxfenswap` utility to refresh registrations on the coordination points.
- 13** On the **Completion** page, view the `summary` file, `log` file, or `response` file to confirm the configuration.
- 14** Select the check box to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.

Click **Finish**.

Setting the order of existing coordination points using the web-based installer

This section describes the reasons, benefits, considerations, and the procedure to set the order of the existing coordination points using the web-based installer.

About deciding the order of existing coordination points

You can decide the order in which coordination points can participate in a race during a network partition. In a network partition scenario, I/O fencing attempts to contact coordination points for membership arbitration based on the order that is set in the `vxfenmode` file.

When I/O fencing is not able to connect to the first coordination point in the sequence it goes to the second coordination point and so on. To avoid a cluster panic, the surviving subcluster must win majority of the coordination points. So, the order must begin with the coordination point that has the best chance to win the race and must end with the coordination point that has the least chance to win the race.

For fencing configurations that use a mix of coordination point servers and coordination disks, you can either specify coordination point servers before coordination point disks or disks before servers.

Note: Disk-based fencing does not support setting the order of existing coordination points.

Considerations to decide the order of coordination points

- Choose coordination points based on their chances gain membership on the cluster during the race and hence gain control over a network partition. In effect, you have the ability to save a partition.
- First in the order must be the coordination point that has the best chance to win the race. The next coordination point you list in the order must have relatively lesser chance to win the race. Complete the order such that the last coordination point has the least chance to win the race.

Setting the order of existing coordination points using the web-based installer

To set the order of existing coordination points for server-based fencing using the web-based installer

1 Start the web-based installer.
 See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

2 On the **Select a task and a product** page, select the task and the product as follows:

Task	I/O Fencing configuration
Product	Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability

Click **Next**.

3 Verify the cluster information that the installer presents and confirm whether you want to configure I/O fencing on the cluster.

4 On the **Select Cluster** page, enter the system name and click **Yes**.

5 On the **Select Cluster** page, click **Next** if the installer completes the cluster verification successfully.

The installer performs the initial system verification. It checks for the system communication. It also checks for release compatibility, installed product version, platform version, and performs product prechecks.

6 The installer may prompt you to reconfigure fencing if it is already enabled. Click **Yes** to reconfigure fencing.

Click **Yes**.

7 On the **Select Fencing Type** page, select the `Set the order of existing coordination points` option.

8 Confirm **OK** at the installer message about the procedure.

- 9 Decide the new order by moving the existing coordination points to the box on the window in the order you want. If you want to change the current order of coordination points, click **Reset** and start again.
- 10 Click **Next** if the information is correct.
- 11 On the **Confirmation** window, click **Yes**.
Installer prepares the `vxfenmode` file on all nodes and runs the `vxfenswap` utility to update the new order of coordination points.
- 12 On the **Completion** page, view the summary file, log file, or response file to confirm the configuration.
- 13 Select the check box to specify whether you want to send your installation information to Symantec.
Click **Finish**.

Automated installation using response files

- [Chapter 12. Performing an automated SFHA installation](#)
- [Chapter 13. Performing an automated SFHA configuration](#)
- [Chapter 14. Performing an automated I/O fencing configuration using response files](#)

Performing an automated SFHA installation

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Installing SFHA using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to install Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Sample response file for SFHA install](#)

Installing SFHA using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform SFHA installation on one cluster to install SFHA on other clusters. You can also create a response file using the `-makeresponsefile` option of the installer.

To install SFHA using response files

- 1 Make sure the systems where you want to install SFHA meet the installation requirements.
- 2 Make sure that the preinstallation tasks are completed.
- 3 Copy the response file to one of the cluster systems where you want to install SFHA.
- 4 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the directory that contains the installation program.

- 6 Start the installation from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
# ./installer -responsefile /tmp/response_file
# ./installsfha -responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where `/tmp/response_file` is the response file's full path name.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 7 Complete the SFHA post-installation tasks.
 For instructions, see the chapter *Performing post-installation and configuration tasks* in this document.

Response file variables to install Storage Foundation and High Availability

[Table 12-1](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to install SFHA.

Table 12-1 Response file variables for installing SFHA

Variable	Description
CFG{opt}{install}	Installs SFHA packages. Configuration can be performed at a later time using the <code>-configure</code> option. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{installallpkgs} or CFG{opt}{installrecpkgs} or CFG{opt}{installminpkgs}	Instructs the installer to install SFHA packages based on the variable that has the value set to 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ <code>installallpkgs</code>: Installs all packages ■ <code>installrecpkgs</code>: Installs recommended packages ■ <code>installminpkgs</code>: Installs minimum packages <p>Note: Set only one of these variable values to 1. In addition to setting the value of one of these variables, you must set the variable <code>CFG{opt}{install}</code> to 1.</p> List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: required

Table 12-1 Response file variables for installing SFHA (*continued*)

Variable	Description
CFG{accepteula}	Specifies whether you agree with the EULA.pdf file on the media. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: required
CFG{opt}{vxkeyless}	Installs the product with keyless license. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{license}	Installs the product with permanent license. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{keys}{hostname}	List of keys to be registered on the system if the variable CFG{opt}{vxkeyless} is set to 0 or if the variable CFG{opt}{licence} is set to 1. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{systems}	List of systems on which the product is to be installed or uninstalled. List or scalar: list Optional or required: required
CFG{prod}	Defines the product to be installed or uninstalled. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: required
CFG{opt}{keyfile}	Defines the location of an ssh keyfile that is used to communicate with all remote systems. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional

Table 12-1 Response file variables for installing SFHA (*continued*)

Variable	Description
CFG{opt}{pkgpath}	Defines a location, typically an NFS mount, from which all remote systems can install product packages. The location must be accessible from all target systems. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{tmppath}	Defines the location where a working directory is created to store temporary files and the packages that are needed during the install. The default location is /var/tmp. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{updatekeys}	Updates the keyless license to the current version. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{rsh}	Defines that <i>rsh</i> must be used instead of <i>ssh</i> as the communication method between systems. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{logpath}	Mentions the location where the log files are to be copied. The default location is /opt/VRTS/install/logs. List or scalar: scalar Optional or required: optional
CFG{opt}{prodmode}	List of modes for product List or scalar: list Optional or required: optional

Sample response file for SFHA install

The following example shows a response file for installing Storage Foundation High Availability.

```
#####
#Auto generated sfha responsefile #
#####
```

```
our %CFG;
$CFG{accepteula}=1;
$CFG{opt}{gco}=1;
$CFG{opt}{vvr}=1;
$CFG{opt}{prodmode}="SF Enterprise HA";
$CFG{opt}{install}=1;
$CFG{opt}{installallpkgs}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";
$CFG{systems}=[ qw( sys1 sys2 ) ];
$CFG{keys}{sys1}=["XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX"];
$CFG{keys}{sys2}=["XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX-XXXX"];
$CFG{opt}{logpath}="/opt/VRTS/install/logs/HxRT-601-xxxx";

1;
```

Performing an automated SFHA configuration

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Configuring SFHA using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to configure Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Sample response file for SFHA configuration](#)

Configuring SFHA using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform SFHA configuration on one cluster to configure SFHA on other clusters. You can also create a response file using the `-makeresponsefile` option of the installer.

To configure SFHA using response files

- 1 Make sure the SFHA packages are installed on the systems where you want to configure SFHA.
- 2 Copy the response file to one of the cluster systems where you want to configure SFHA.

- 3 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.

To configure optional features, you must define appropriate values for all the response file variables that are related to the optional feature.

See [“Response file variables to configure Storage Foundation and High Availability”](#) on page 200.

- 4 Start the configuration from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version>
-responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version, and */tmp/response_file* is the response file’s full path name.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Response file variables to configure Storage Foundation and High Availability

[Table 13-1](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to configure SFHA.

Table 13-1 Response file variables specific to configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{opt}{configure}	Scalar	Performs the configuration if the packages are already installed. (Required) Set the value to 1 to configure SFHA.
CFG{accepteula}	Scalar	Specifies whether you agree with EULA.pdf on the media. (Required)
CFG{systems}	List	List of systems on which the product is to be configured. (Required)

Table 13-1 Response file variables specific to configuring Storage Foundation and High Availability (*continued*)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{prod}	Scalar	Defines the product to be configured. The value is SFHA61 for SFHA (Required)
CFG{opt}{keyfile}	Scalar	Defines the location of an ssh keyfile that is used to communicate with all remote systems. (Optional)
CFG{opt}{rsh}	Scalar	Defines that <i>rsh</i> must be used instead of <i>ssh</i> as the communication method between systems. (Optional)
CFG{opt}{logpath}	Scalar	Mentions the location where the log files are to be copied. The default location is <code>/opt/VRTS/install/logs</code> . Note: The installer copies the response files and summary files also to the specified <i>logpath</i> location. (Optional)
CFG{uploadlogs}	Scalar	Defines a Boolean value 0 or 1. The value 1 indicates that the installation logs are uploaded to the Symantec website. The value 0 indicates that the installation logs are not uploaded to the Symantec website. (Optional)

Note that some optional variables make it necessary to define other optional variables. For example, all the variables that are related to the cluster service group (`csgnic`, `csgvip`, and `csgnetmask`) must be defined if any are defined. The same is true for the SMTP notification (`smtpsrvr`, `smtprcvr`, and `smtprsev`), the SNMP

trap notification (snmpport, snmpcons, and snmpcsev), and the Global Cluster Option (gconic, gcovip, and gconetmask).

Table 13-2 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure a basic SFHA cluster.

Table 13-2 Response file variables specific to configuring a basic SFHA cluster

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_clusterid}	Scalar	An integer between 0 and 65535 that uniquely identifies the cluster. (Required)
CFG{vcs_clustername}	Scalar	Defines the name of the cluster. (Required)
CFG{vcs_allowcomms}	Scalar	Indicates whether or not to start LLT and GAB when you set up a single-node cluster. The value can be 0 (do not start) or 1 (start). (Required)
CFG{fencingenabled}	Scalar	In a SFHA configuration, defines if fencing is enabled. Valid values are 0 or 1. (Required)

Table 13-3 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure LLT over Ethernet.

Table 13-3 Response file variables specific to configuring private LLT over Ethernet

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_lltlink#} {"system"}	Scalar	<p>Defines the NIC to be used for a private heartbeat link on each system. At least two LLT links are required per system (lltlink1 and lltlink2). You can configure up to four LLT links.</p> <p>See "Setting up the private network" on page 60.</p> <p>You must enclose the system name within double quotes.</p> <p>(Required)</p>
CFG{vcs_lltlinklowpri#} {"system"}	Scalar	<p>Defines a low priority heartbeat link. Typically, lltlinklowpri is used on a public network link to provide an additional layer of communication.</p> <p>If you use different media speed for the private NICs, you can configure the NICs with lesser speed as low-priority links to enhance LLT performance. For example, lltlinklowpri1, lltlinklowpri2, and so on.</p> <p>You must enclose the system name within double quotes.</p> <p>(Optional)</p>

[Table 13-4](#) lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure LLT over UDP.

Table 13-4 Response file variables specific to configuring LLT over UDP

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{lltoverudp}=1	Scalar	<p>Indicates whether to configure heartbeat link using LLT over UDP.</p> <p>(Required)</p>

Table 13-4 Response file variables specific to configuring LLT over UDP
(continued)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_udplink<n>_address} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) that the heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective heartbeat links. (Required)
CFG {vcs_udplinklowpri<n>_address} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) that the low priority heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four low priority heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective low priority heartbeat links. (Required)
CFG{vcs_udplink<n>_port} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the UDP port (16-bit integer value) that the heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective heartbeat links. (Required)
CFG{vcs_udplinklowpri<n>_port} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the UDP port (16-bit integer value) that the low priority heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four low priority heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective low priority heartbeat links. (Required)

Table 13-4 Response file variables specific to configuring LLT over UDP
(continued)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_udplink<n>_netmask} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the netmask (prefix for IPv6) that the heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective heartbeat links. (Required)
CFG {vcs_udplinklowpri<n>_netmask} {<sys1>}	Scalar	Stores the netmask (prefix for IPv6) that the low priority heartbeat link uses on node1. You can have four low priority heartbeat links and <n> for this response file variable can take values 1 to 4 for the respective low priority heartbeat links. (Required)

Table 13-5 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure virtual IP for SFHA cluster.

Table 13-5 Response file variables specific to configuring virtual IP for SFHA cluster

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_csgnic} {system}	Scalar	Defines the NIC device to use on a system. You can enter 'all' as a system value if the same NIC is used on all systems. (Optional)
CFG{vcs_csgvip}	Scalar	Defines the virtual IP address for the cluster. (Optional)
CFG{vcs_csgnetmask}	Scalar	Defines the Netmask of the virtual IP address for the cluster. (Optional)

Table 13-6 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure the SFHA cluster in secure mode.

Table 13-6 Response file variables specific to configuring SFHA cluster in secure mode

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_eat_security}	Scalar	Specifies if the cluster is in secure enabled mode or not.
CFG{opt}{securityonnode}	Scalar	Specifies that the securityonnode option is being used.
CFG{securityonnode_menu}	Scalar	Specifies the menu option to choose to configure the secure cluster one at a time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1—Configure the first node ■ 2—Configure the other node
CFG{security_conf_dir}	Scalar	Specifies the directory where the configuration files are placed.
CFG{opt}{security}	Scalar	Specifies that the security option is being used.
CFG{vcs_eat_security_fips}	Scalar	Specifies that the enabled security is FIPS compliant.

Table 13-7 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure VCS users.

Table 13-7 Response file variables specific to configuring VCS users

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_userenpw}	List	List of encoded passwords for VCS users The value in the list can be "Administrators Operators Guests" Note: The order of the values for the vcs_userenpw list must match the order of the values in the vcs_username list. (Optional)

Table 13-7 Response file variables specific to configuring VCS users
(continued)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_username}	List	List of names of VCS users (Optional)
CFG{vcs_userpriv}	List	List of privileges for VCS users Note: The order of the values for the vcs_userpriv list must match the order of the values in the vcs_username list. (Optional)

Table 13-8 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure VCS notifications using SMTP.

Table 13-8 Response file variables specific to configuring VCS notifications using SMTP

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_smtpserver}	Scalar	Defines the domain-based hostname (example: smtp.symantecexample.com) of the SMTP server to be used for web notification. (Optional)
CFG{vcs_smtprecp}	List	List of full email addresses (example: user@symantecexample.com) of SMTP recipients. (Optional)
CFG{vcs_smtpsev}	List	Defines the minimum severity level of messages (Information, Warning, Error, SevereError) that listed SMTP recipients are to receive. Note that the ordering of severity levels must match that of the addresses of SMTP recipients. (Optional)

Table 13-9 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure VCS notifications using SNMP.

Table 13-9 Response file variables specific to configuring VCS notifications using SNMP

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_snmpport}	Scalar	Defines the SNMP trap daemon port (default=162). (Optional)
CFG{vcs_snmpcons}	List	List of SNMP console system names (Optional)
CFG{vcs_snmpcsev}	List	Defines the minimum severity level of messages (Information, Warning, Error, SevereError) that listed SNMP consoles are to receive. Note that the ordering of severity levels must match that of the SNMP console system names. (Optional)

Table 13-10 lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure SFHA global clusters.

Table 13-10 Response file variables specific to configuring SFHA global clusters

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_gconic} {system}	Scalar	Defines the NIC for the Virtual IP that the Global Cluster Option uses. You can enter 'all' as a system value if the same NIC is used on all systems. (Optional)
CFG{vcs_gcovip}	Scalar	Defines the virtual IP address to that the Global Cluster Option uses. (Optional)

Table 13-10 Response file variables specific to configuring SFHA global clusters (*continued*)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{vcs_gconetmask}	Scalar	Defines the Netmask of the virtual IP address that the Global Cluster Option uses. (Optional)

Sample response file for SFHA configuration

The following example shows a response file for configuring Storage Foundation High Availability.

```
#####
#Auto generated sfha responsefile #
#####

our %CFG;
$CFG{accepteula}=1;
$CFG{opt}{rsh}=1;
$CFG{vcs_allowcomms}=1;
$CFG{opt}{gco}=1;
$CFG{opt}{vvr}=1;
$CFG{opt}{prodmode}="SF Enterprise HA";
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";
$CFG{systems}=[ qw( sys1 sys2 ) ];
$CFG{vm_restore_cfg}{sys1}=0;
$CFG{vm_restore_cfg}{sys2}=0;
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=127;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="clus1";
$CFG{vcs_username}=[ qw(admin operator) ];
$CFG{vcs_userenpw}=[ qw(J1mElgLimHmMkumGlj bQOsOUUnVQoOUUnTQsOSnUQuOUUnPQtOS) ];
$CFG{vcs_userpriv}=[ qw(Administrators Operators) ];
$CFG{vcs_lltlink1}{sys1}="bge1";
$CFG{vcs_lltlink2}{sys1}="bge2";
$CFG{vcs_lltlink1}{sys2}="bge1";
$CFG{vcs_lltlink2}{sys2}="bge2";
$CFG{opt}{logpath}="/opt/VRTS/install/logs/installsf-xxxxxx/installsf-xxxxxx.response";

1;
```

Performing an automated I/O fencing configuration using response files

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Configuring I/O fencing using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing](#)
- [Sample response file for configuring disk-based I/O fencing](#)
- [Response file variables to configure server-based I/O fencing](#)
- [Sample response file for configuring non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing](#)
- [Response file variables to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing](#)

Configuring I/O fencing using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform I/O fencing configuration to configure I/O fencing for SFHA.

To configure I/O fencing using response files

- 1 Make sure that SFHA is configured.
- 2 Based on whether you want to configure disk-based or server-based I/O fencing, make sure you have completed the preparatory tasks.

See [“About planning to configure I/O fencing”](#) on page 81.

- 3 Copy the response file to one of the cluster systems where you want to configure I/O fencing.
 See [“Sample response file for configuring disk-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 214.
 See [“Sample response file for configuring server-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 216.
- 4 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.
 See [“Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 211.
 See [“Response file variables to configure server-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 215.
- 5 Start the configuration from the system to which you copied the response file.
 For example:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version>
-responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version, and */tmp/response_file* is the response file’s full path name.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing

[Table 14-1](#) lists the response file variables that specify the required information to configure disk-based I/O fencing for SFHA.

Table 14-1 Response file variables specific to configuring disk-based I/O fencing

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{opt}{fencing}	Scalar	Performs the I/O fencing configuration. (Required)

Table 14-1 Response file variables specific to configuring disk-based I/O fencing (*continued*)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{fencing_option}	Scalar	<p>Specifies the I/O fencing configuration mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1—Coordination Point Server-based I/O fencing ■ 2—Coordinator disk-based I/O fencing ■ 3—Disabled mode ■ 4—Replace/Add/Remove coordination points ■ 5—Refresh keys/registrations on the existing coordination points ■ 6—Set the order of existing coordination points <p>(Required)</p>
CFG {fencing_scsi3_disk_policy}	Scalar	<p>Specifies the I/O fencing mechanism.</p> <p>This variable is not required if you had configured fencing in disabled mode. For disk-based fencing, you must configure the <code>fencing_scsi3_disk_policy</code> variable and either the <code>fencing_dgname</code> variable or the <code>fencing_newdg_disks</code> variable.</p> <p>(Optional)</p>
CFG{fencing_dgname}	Scalar	<p>Specifies the disk group for I/O fencing.</p> <p>(Optional)</p> <p>Note: You must define the <code>fencing_dgname</code> variable to use an existing disk group. If you want to create a new disk group, you must use both the <code>fencing_dgname</code> variable and the <code>fencing_newdg_disks</code> variable.</p>

Table 14-1 Response file variables specific to configuring disk-based I/O fencing (*continued*)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG{fencing_newdg_disks}	List	<p>Specifies the disks to use to create a new disk group for I/O fencing.</p> <p>(Optional)</p> <p>Note: You must define the <code>fencing_dgname</code> variable to use an existing disk group. If you want to create a new disk group, you must use both the <code>fencing_dgname</code> variable and the <code>fencing_newdg_disks</code> variable.</p>
CFG{fencing_cpagent_monitor_freq}	Scalar	<p>Specifies the frequency at which the Coordination Point Agent monitors for any changes to the Coordinator Disk Group constitution.</p> <p>Note: Coordination Point Agent can also monitor changes to the Coordinator Disk Group constitution such as a disk being accidentally deleted from the Coordinator Disk Group. The frequency of this detailed monitoring can be tuned with the <code>LevelTwoMonitorFreq</code> attribute. For example, if you set this attribute to 5, the agent will monitor the Coordinator Disk Group constitution every five monitor cycles. If <code>LevelTwoMonitorFreq</code> attribute is not set, the agent will not monitor any changes to the Coordinator Disk Group. 0 means not to monitor the Coordinator Disk Group constitution.</p>
CFG {fencing_config_cpagent}	Scalar	<p>Enter '1' or '0' depending upon whether you want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer or not.</p> <p>Enter "0" if you do not want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer.</p> <p>Enter "1" if you want to use the installer to configure the Coordination Point agent.</p>

Table 14-1 Response file variables specific to configuring disk-based I/O fencing (*continued*)

Variable	List or Scalar	Description
CFG {fencing_cpagentgrp}	Scalar	Name of the service group which will have the Coordination Point agent resource as part of it. Note: This field is obsolete if the fencing_config_cpagent field is given a value of '0'.

Sample response file for configuring disk-based I/O fencing

Review the disk-based I/O fencing response file variables and their definitions.

See [“Response file variables to configure disk-based I/O fencing”](#) on page 211.

```
#
# Configuration Values:
#
our %CFG;

$CFG{fencing_config_cpagent}=1;
$CFG{fencing_cpagent_monitor_freq}=5;
$CFG{fencing_cpagentgrp}="vxfen";
$CFG{fencing_dgname}="fencingdg1";
$CFG{fencing_newdg_disks}=[ qw(emc_clariion0_155
    emc_clariion0_162 emc_clariion0_163) ];
$CFG{fencing_option}=2;
$CFG{fencing_scsi3_disk_policy}="dmp";
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{opt}{fencing}=1;
$CFG{fencing_cpagent_monitor_freq}=5;

$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";

$CFG{systems}=[ qw(pilot25) ];
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=32283;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="clus1";
1;
```

Response file variables to configure server-based I/O fencing

You can use a coordination point server-based fencing response file to configure server-based customized I/O fencing.

[Table 14-2](#) lists the fields in the response file that are relevant for server-based customized I/O fencing.

Table 14-2 Coordination point server (CP server) based fencing response file definitions

Response file field	Definition
CFG {fencing_config_cpagent}	<p>Enter '1' or '0' depending upon whether you want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer or not.</p> <p>Enter "0" if you do not want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer.</p> <p>Enter "1" if you want to use the installer to configure the Coordination Point agent.</p>
CFG {fencing_cpagentgrp}	<p>Name of the service group which will have the Coordination Point agent resource as part of it.</p> <p>Note: This field is obsolete if the <code>fencing_config_cpagent</code> field is given a value of '0'.</p>
CFG {fencing_cps}	<p>Virtual IP address or Virtual hostname of the CP servers.</p>
CFG {fencing_reusedg}	<p>This response file field indicates whether to reuse an existing DG name for the fencing configuration in customized fencing (CP server and coordinator disks).</p> <p>Enter either a "1" or "0".</p> <p>Entering a "1" indicates reuse, and entering a "0" indicates do not reuse.</p> <p>When reusing an existing DG name for the mixed mode fencing configuration, you need to manually add a line of text, such as "<code>CFG{fencing_reusedg}=0</code>" or "<code>CFG{fencing_reusedg}=1</code>" before proceeding with a silent installation.</p>

Table 14-2 Coordination point server (CP server) based fencing response file definitions (*continued*)

Response file field	Definition
CFG {fencing_dgname}	The name of the disk group to be used in the customized fencing, where at least one disk is being used.
CFG {fencing_disks}	The disks being used as coordination points if any.
CFG {fencing_ncp}	Total number of coordination points being used, including both CP servers and disks.
CFG {fencing_ndisks}	The number of disks being used.
CFG {fencing_cps_vips}	The virtual IP addresses or the fully qualified host names of the CP server.
CFG {fencing_cps_ports}	The port that the virtual IP address or the fully qualified host name of the CP server listens on.
CFG {fencing_scsi3_disk_policy}	The disk policy that the customized fencing uses. The value for this field is either "raw" or "dmp"
CFG{fencing_option}	Specifies the I/O fencing configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1—Coordination Point Server-based I/O fencing ■ 2—Coordinator disk-based I/O fencing ■ 3—Disabled mode ■ 4—Replace/Add/Remove coordination points ■ 5—Refresh keys/registrations on the existing coordination points ■ 6—Set the order of existing coordination points

Sample response file for configuring server-based I/O fencing

The following is a sample response file used for server-based I/O fencing:

```
$CFG{fencing_config_cpagent}=0;
$CFG{fencing_cps}=[ qw(10.200.117.145) ];
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.200.117.145"}=[ qw(10.200.117.145) ];
$CFG{fencing_dgname}="vxfencoorddg";
$CFG{fencing_disks}=[ qw(emc_clariion0_37 emc_clariion0_13) ];
$CFG{fencing_scsi3_disk_policy}="raw";
$CFG{fencing_ncp}=3;
$CFG{fencing_ndisks}=2;
```

```
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.200.117.145"}=443;
$CFG{fencing_reusedg}=1;
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{opt}{fencing}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";
$CFG{systems}=[ qw(sys1 sys2) ];
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=1256;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="clus1";
$CFG{fencing_option}=1;
```

Sample response file for configuring non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing

The following is a sample response file used for non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing :

```
$CFG{fencing_config_cpagent}=0;
$CFG{fencing_cps}=[ qw(10.198.89.251 10.198.89.252 10.198.89.253) ];
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.89.251"}=[ qw(10.198.89.251) ];
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.89.252"}=[ qw(10.198.89.252) ];
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.89.253"}=[ qw(10.198.89.253) ];
$CFG{fencing_ncp}=3;
$CFG{fencing_ndisks}=0;
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.89.251"}=443;
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.89.252"}=443;
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.89.253"}=443;
$CFG{non_scsi3_fencing}=1;
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{opt}{fencing}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";
$CFG{systems}=[ qw(sys1 sys2) ];
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=1256;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="clus1";
$CFG{fencing_option}=1;
```

Response file variables to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing

[Table 14-3](#) lists the fields in the response file that are relevant for non-SCSI-3 server-based customized I/O fencing.

See [“About I/O fencing for SFHA in virtual machines that do not support SCSI-3 PR”](#) on page 30.

Table 14-3 Non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing response file definitions

Response file field	Definition
CFG{non_scsi3_fencing}	Defines whether to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing. Valid values are 1 or 0. Enter 1 to configure non-SCSI-3 server-based I/O fencing.
CFG {fencing_config_cpagent}	Enter '1' or '0' depending upon whether you want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer or not. Enter "0" if you do not want to configure the Coordination Point agent using the installer. Enter "1" if you want to use the installer to configure the Coordination Point agent.
CFG {fencing_cpagentgrp}	Name of the service group which will have the Coordination Point agent resource as part of it. Note: This field is obsolete if the <code>fencing_config_cpagent</code> field is given a value of '0'.
CFG {fencing_cps}	Virtual IP address or Virtual hostname of the CP servers.
CFG {fencing_cps_vips}	The virtual IP addresses or the fully qualified host names of the CP server.
CFG {fencing_ncp}	Total number of coordination points (CP servers only) being used.
CFG {fencing_cps_ports}	The port of the CP server that is denoted by <i>cps</i> .

Installation using operating system-specific methods

- [Chapter 15. Installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods](#)
- [Chapter 16. Configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity](#)

Installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods](#)
- [Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using Automated Installer](#)
- [Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using JumpStart](#)
- [Manually installing SFHA using the system command](#)
- [Manually installing packages on solaris10 brand zones](#)

About installing SFHA using operating system-specific methods

On Solaris, you can install SFHA using the following methods:

- You can use the Oracle Solaris Automated Installer (AI) to install the Solaris 11 operating system and Storage Foundation product on multiple client systems in a network.
See [“Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using Automated Installer”](#) on page 221.
- The procedure to manually install SFHA differs depending on the Solaris version.
See [“Manually installing SFHA using the system command”](#) on page 232.
- You can install SFHA on Solaris 10 systems using Solaris JumpStart.
See [“Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using JumpStart”](#) on page 226.

- You can install SFHA using Flash archive on the Solaris 10 operating system. See [“Using a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system”](#) on page 230.

Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using Automated Installer

You can use the Oracle Solaris Automated Installer (AI) to install the Solaris 11 operating system and Storage Foundation product on multiple client systems in a network. AI performs a hands-free installation (automated installation without manual interactions) of SPARC systems. You can also use AI media to install the Oracle Solaris OS on a single SPARC platform. Oracle provides the AI bootable image and it can be downloaded from the Oracle website. All cases require access to a package repository on the network to complete the installation.

About Automated Installation

AI automates the installation of the Oracle Solaris 11 OS on one or more SPARC clients in a network. Automated Installation applies to Solaris 11 only. You can install the Oracle Solaris OS on many different types of clients. The clients can differ in:

- Architecture
- Memory characteristics
- MAC address
- IP address
- CPU

The installations can differ depending on specifications including network configuration and packages installed.

An automated installation of a client in a local network consists of the following high-level steps:

- 1 A client system boots and gets IP information from the DHCP server
- 2 Characteristics of the client determine which AI service and which installation instructions are used to install the client.
- 3 The installer uses the AI service instructions to pull the correct packages from the package repositories and install the Oracle Solaris OS on the client.

Using Automated Installer

To use Automated Installer to install systems over the network, set up DHCP and set up an AI service on an AI server. The DHCP server and AI server can be the same system or two different systems.

Make sure that the systems can access an Oracle Solaris Image Packaging System (IPS) package repository. The IPS package repository can reside on the AI server, on another server on the local network, or on the Internet.

An AI service is associated with a SPARC AI install image and one or more sets of installation instructions. The installation instructions specify one or more IPS package repositories from where the system retrieves the packages that are needed to complete the installation. The installation instructions also include the names of additional packages to install and information such as target device and partition information. You can also specify instructions for post-installation configuration of the system.

Consider the operating systems and packages you want to install on the systems. Depending on your configuration and needs, you may want to do one of the following:

- If two systems have different architectures or need to be installed with different versions of the Oracle Solaris OS, create two AI services. Then, associate each AI service with a different AI image
- If two systems need to be installed with the same version of the Oracle Solaris OS but need to be installed differently in other ways, create two sets of installation instructions for the AI service. The different installation instructions can specify different packages to install or a different slice as the install target.

The installation begins when you boot the system. DHCP directs the system to the AI install server, and the system accesses the install service and the installation instructions within that service.

For more information, see the *Oracle® Solaris 11 Express Automated Installer Guide*.

Using AI to install the Solaris 11 operating system and SFHA products

Use the following procedure to install the Solaris 11 operating system and SFHA products using AI.

To use AI to install the Solaris 11 operating system and SFHA products

- 1 Follow the Oracle documentation to set up a Solaris AI server and DHCP server.

You can find the documentation at <http://docs.oracle.com>.

- 2 Set up the Symantec package repository.

Run the following commands to startup necessary SMF services and create directories:

```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
# mkdir /ai
# zfs create -o compression=on -o mountpoint=/ai rpool/ai
```

- 3 Run the following commands to set up IPS repository for Symantec SPARC packages:

```
# mkdir -p /ai/repo_symc_sparc
# pkgrepo create /ai/repo_symc_sparc
# pkgrepo add-publisher -s /ai/repo_symc_sparc Symantec
# pkgrecv -s <media_sparc>/pkgs/VRTSpkgs.p5p -d
/ai/repo_symc_sparc '*'
# svccfg -s pkg/server list
# svcs -a | grep pkg/server
# svccfg -s pkg/server add symcsparc
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc addpg pkg application
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc setprop pkg/port=10003
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc setprop pkg/inst_root=
/ai/repo_symc_sparc
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc addpg general framework
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc addpropvalue general/complete
astring: symcsparc
# svccfg -s pkg/server:symcsparc addpropvalue general/enable
boolean: true
# svcs -a | grep pkg/server
# svcadm refresh application/pkg/server:symcsparc
# svcadm enable application/pkg/server:symcsparc
```

Or run the following commands to set up the private depot server for testing purposes:

```
# /usr/lib/pkg.depotd -d /ai/repo_symc_sparc -p 10003 > /dev/null &
```

Check the following URL on IE or Firefox browser:

<http://<host>:10003>

4 Set up the install service on the AI server.

Run the following command:

```
# mkdir /ai/iso
```

Download the AI image from the Oracle website and place the `iso` in the `/ai/iso` directory.

Create an install service.

For example:

To set up the AI install service for SPARC platform::

```
# # installadm create-service -n sol11sparc -s\  
/ai/iso/sol-11-1111-ai-sparc.iso -d /ai/aiboot/
```

5 Run the installer to generate manifest XML files for all the SFHA products that you plan to install.

```
# mkdir /ai/manifests  
# <media>/installer -ai /ai/manifests
```

6 For each system, generate the system configuration and include the host name, user accounts, and IP addresses. For example, enter one of the following:

```
# mkdir /ai/profiles  
# sysconfig create-profile -o /ai/profiles/profile_client.xml
```

or

```
# cp /ai/aiboot/auto-install/sc_profiles/sc_sample.xml  
/ai/profiles/profile_client.xml
```

- 7 Add a system and match it to the specified product manifest and system configuration.

Run the following command to add a SPARC system, for example:

```
# installadm create-client -e "<client_MAC>" -n soll1sparc
# installadm add-manifest -n soll1sparc -f \
/ai/manifests/vrts_manifest_sfha.xml
# installadm create-profile -n soll1sparc -f \
/ai/profiles/profile_client.xml -p profile_sc
# installadm set-criteria -n soll1sparc -m \
vrts_sfha -p profile_sc -c mac="<client_MAC>"
# installadm list -m -c -p -n soll1sparc
```

- 8 For SPARC system, run the following command to restart the system and install the operating system and Storage Foundation products:

```
# boot net:dhcp - install
```

Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using JumpStart

This installation method applies only to Solaris 10. These JumpStart instructions assume a working knowledge of JumpStart. See the JumpStart documentation that came with your operating system for details on using JumpStart.

Upgrading is not supported. The following procedure assumes a standalone configuration.

For the language pack, you can use JumpStart to install packages. You add the language packages in the script, and put those files in the JumpStart server directory.

You can use a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system with JumpStart.

See [“Using a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system”](#) on page 230.

Overview of JumpStart installation tasks

Review the summary of tasks before you perform the JumpStart installation.

Summary of tasks

- 1 Add a client (register to the JumpStart server). See the JumpStart documentation that came with your operating system for details.
- 2 Read the JumpStart installation instructions.

- 3 Generate the finish scripts.
See [“Generating the finish scripts”](#) on page 227.
- 4 Prepare shared storage installation resources.
See [“Preparing installation resources”](#) on page 228.
- 5 Modify the rules file for JumpStart.
See the JumpStart documentation that came with your operating system for details.
- 6 Install the operating system using the JumpStart server.
- 7 When the system is up and running, run the installer command from the installation media to configure the Symantec software.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installer -configure
```


See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Generating the finish scripts

Perform these steps to generate the finish scripts to install SFHA.

To generate the script

- 1 Run the product installer program to generate the scripts for all products.

```
./installer -jumpstart directory_to_generate_scripts
```

Or

```
./install<productname> -jumpstart directory_to_generate_script
```

where **<productname>** is the product's installation command, and *directory_to_generate_scripts* is where you want to put the product's script.

For example:

```
# ./installsfha -jumpstart /js_scripts
```

- 2 When you are prompted to encapsulate the root disk automatically, choose **yes** to do so. If you do not want to encapsulate it automatically, choose **no** and go to step 6.
- 3 Specify a disk group name for the root disk.

Specify the disk group name of the root disk to be encapsulated:

```
rootdg
```

4 Specify private region length.

Specify the private region length of the root disk to be encapsulated: **(65536)**

5 Specify the disk's media name of the root disk to encapsulate.

Specify the disk media name of the root disk to be encapsulated:
(rootdg_01)

6 JumpStart finish scripts and encapsulation scripts are generated in the directory you specified in step 1.

Output resembles:

```
The finish scripts for SF is generated at /js_scripts/  
jumpstart_sfha.fin  
The encapsulation boot disk script for VM is generated at  
/js_scripts/encap_bootdisk_vm.fin
```

List the `js_scripts` directory.

```
# ls /js_scripts
```

Output resembles:

```
encap_bootdisk_vm.fin jumpstart_sfha.fin
```

Preparing installation resources

Prepare resources for the JumpStart installation.

To prepare the resources

- 1 Copy the `pkgs` directory of the installation media to the shared storage.

```
# cd /path_to_installation_media  
# cp -r pkgs BUILDSRC
```

- 2 Generate the response file with the list of packages.

```
# cd BUILDSRC/pkgs/  
# pkgask -r package_name.response -d /  
BUILDSRC/pkgs/packages_name.pkg
```

- 3 Create the `adminfile` file under `BUILDSRC/pkgs/` directory.

```
mail=  
instance=overwrite  
partial=nocheck  
runlevel=quit  
idepend=quit  
rdepend=nocheck  
space=quit  
setuid=nocheck  
conflict=nocheck  
action=nocheck  
basedir=default
```

Adding language pack information to the finish file

To add the language pack information to the finish file, perform the following procedure.

To add the language pack information to the finish file

- 1 For the language pack, copy the language packages from the language pack installation disc to the shared storage.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/pkg  
# cp -r * BUILDSRC/pkg
```

If you downloaded the language pack:

```
# cd /path_to_language_pack_installation_media/pkg  
# cp -r * BUILDSRC/pkg
```

- 2 In the finish script, copy the product package information and replace the product packages with language packages.
- 3 The finish script resembles:

```
. . .  
for PKG in product_packages  
do  
...  
done. . .  
for PKG in language_packages  
do  
...  
done. . .
```

Using a Flash archive to install SFHA and the operating system

You can only use Flash archive on the Solaris 10 operating system. In the following outline, refer to Solaris documentation for Solaris-specific tasks.

Note: Symantec does not support Flash Archive installation if the root disk of the master system is encapsulated.

The following is an overview of the creation and installation of a Flash archive with Symantec software.

- If you plan to start flar (flash archive) creation from bare metal, perform step 1 through step 10.
- If you plan to start flar creation from a system where you have installed, but not configured the product, perform step 1 through step 4. Skip step 5 and finish step 6 through step 10.

- If you plan to start flar creation from a system where you have installed and configured the product, perform step 5 through step 10.

Flash archive creation overview

- 1 Ensure that you have installed Solaris 10 on the master system.
- 2 Use JumpStart to create a clone of a system.
- 3 Restart the cloned system.
- 4 Install the Symantec products on the master system.
Perform one of the installation procedures from this guide.
- 5 If you have configured the product on the master system, create the `vrts_deployment.sh` file and the `vrts_deployment.cf` file and copy them to the master system.

See [“Creating the Symantec post-deployment scripts”](#) on page 231.
- 6 Use the `flarcreate` command to create the Flash archive on the master system.
- 7 Copy the archive back to the JumpStart server.
- 8 Use JumpStart to install the Flash archive to the selected systems.
- 9 Configure the Symantec product on all nodes in the cluster.

The scripts that are installed on the system include the product version in the script name. For example, to install the SF script from the install media, run the `installsf` command. However, to run the script from the installed binaries, run the `installsf<version>` command. For example, for the 6.1 version:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/installsfha61 -configure
```

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 10 Perform post-installation and configuration tasks.

See the product installation guide for the post-installation and configuration tasks.

Creating the Symantec post-deployment scripts

The generated files `vrts_deployment.sh` and `vrts_post-deployment.cf` are customized Flash archive post-deployment scripts. These files clean up Symantec product settings on a cloned system before you reboot it for the first time. Include these files in your Flash archives.

To create the post-deployment scripts

- 1 Mount the product disc.
- 2 From the prompt, run the `-flash_archive` option for the installer. Specify a directory where you want to create the files.

```
# ./installer -flash_archive /tmp
```

- 3 Copy the `vrts_postdeployment.sh` file and the `vrts_postdeployment.cf` file to the golden system.
- 4 On the golden system perform the following:
 - Put the `vrts_postdeployment.sh` file in the `/etc/flash/postdeployment` directory.
 - Put the `vrts_postdeployment.cf` file in the `/etc/vx` directory.
- 5 Make sure that the two files have the following ownership and permissions:

```
# chown root:root /etc/flash/postdeployment/vrts_postdeployment.sh
# chmod 755 /etc/flash/postdeployment/vrts_postdeployment.sh
# chown root:root /etc/vx/vrts_postdeployment.cf
# chmod 644 /etc/vx/vrts_postdeployment.cf
```

Note that you only need these files in a Flash archive where you have installed Symantec products.

Manually installing SFHA using the system command

The procedure to manually install SFHA differs depending on the Solaris version.

See [“Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using the pkgadd command”](#) on page 232.

See [“Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using the pkg install command”](#) on page 234.

Installing SFHA on Solaris 10 using the pkgadd command

On Solaris 10, the packages must be installed while in the global zone.

To install SFHA on Solaris 10 using the pkgadd command

- 1 Mount the software disc.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

- 2 Copy the supplied VRTS* files from the installation media to a temporary location. Modify them if needed.

```
# cp /cdrom/cdrom0/pkgsrc/VRTS* \  
    /tmp/pkgsrc
```

- 3 Create the admin file in the current directory. Specify the `-a adminfile` option when you use the `pkgadd` command:

```
mail=  
instance=overwrite  
partial=nocheck  
    runlevel=quit  
idepend=quit  
rdepend=nocheck  
space=quit  
setuid=nocheck  
conflict=nocheck  
action=nocheck  
basedir=default
```

- 4 Use the product-specific install command with one of the following options to get a list of packages in the order to be installed:

- minpkgs
- recpkgs
- allpkgs

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

See [“Installation script options”](#) on page 502.

- 5 Install the packages listed in step 4.

```
# pkgadd -a adminfile -d /tmp/pkgsrc pkgname.pkg
```

On Solaris 10, these packages must be installed while in the global zone. If a package's `pkginfo` file contains the variable `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set not equal to true, the `-G` option should additionally be specified to the `pkgadd` command.

- 6 Verify that the packages are installed:

```
# pkginfo -l  
    packagename
```

- 7 Start the processes.

Installing SFHA on Solaris 11 using the pkg install command

To install SFHA on Solaris 11 using the pkg install command

- 1 Copy the VRTSpkgs.p5p package from the pkgs directory from the installation media to the system at /tmp/install directory.
- 2 Disable the publishers that are not reachable as package install may fail if any of the already added repositories are unreachable.

```
# pkg set-publisher --disable <publisher name>
```

- 3 Add a file-based repository in the system.

```
# pkg set-publisher -p /tmp/install/VRTSpkgs.p5p Symantec
```

- 4 Install the required packages.

```
# pkg install --accept VRTSperl VRTSvlic VRTSspt  
VRTSvxvm VRTSaslapm VRTSob VRTSvxfs VRTSfssdk VRTSllt VRTSgab  
VRTSvxfen VRTSamf VRTSvcs VRTScps VRTSvcsag VRTSvcssea VRTSdbed VRTSodm VR  
VRTSvbs VRTSsfcp1601
```

- 5 To configure an OracleVMServer logical domain for disaster recovery, install the following required package inside the logical domain:

```
# pkg install --accept VRTSvcsnr
```

- 6 Remove the publisher from the system.

```
# pkg unset-publisher Symantec
```

- 7 Clear the state of the SMF service if non-global zones are present in the system. In presence of non-global zones, setting the file-based repository causes SMF service `svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default` to go into maintenance state.

```
# svcadm clear svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default
```

- 8 Enable the publishers that were disabled earlier.

```
# pkg set-publisher --enable <publisher name>
```

Manually installing packages on Oracle Solaris 11 systems

To install packages on Solaris 11 system

- 1 Copy the `VRTSpkgs.p5p` package from the `pkgs` directory from the installation media to the the system at `/tmp/install` directory..
- 2 Disable the publishers that are not reachable, as package install may fail if any of the already added repositories are unreachable.

```
# pkg set-publisher --disable <publisher name>
```

- 3 Add a file-based repository in the non-global zone.

```
# pkg set-publisher -p/tmp/install/VRTSpkgs.p5p Symantec
```

- 4 Install the required packages.

```
# pkg install --accept VRTSperl VRTSvlic  
VRTSspt VRTSvxvm VRTSaslapm VRTSvxfs VRTSodm VRTSllt VRTSgab  
VRTSvxfen VRTSamf VRTSvcS VRTScps VRTSvcSag VRTSvcsea VRTSsfmh  
VRTSvbs VRTSvcswiz VRTSsfcp161
```

- 5 To configure an OracleVMServer logical domain for disaster recovery, install the following required packages inside the logical domain:

```
# pkg install --accept VRTSvcSnr
```

- 6 Remove the publisher on the non-global zone.

```
# pkg unset-publisher Symantec
```

- 7 Clear the state of the SMF service if non-global zones are present in the system. In presence of non-global zones, setting the file-based repository causes SMF service `svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default` to go into maintenance state. .

```
# svcadm clear svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default
```

- 8 Enable the publishers that were disabled earlier.

```
# pkg set-publisher --enable <publisher>
```

Manually installing packages on Solaris brand non-global zones

With Oracle Solaris 11, you must manually install SFHA packages inside non-global zones. The native non-global zones are called Solaris brand zones.

To install packages manually on Solaris brand non-global zones

- 1 Ensure that the SMF service

```
svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default and  
svc:/application/pkg/zones-proxyd:default is online on the global zone.
```

```
# svcs svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default  
# svcs svc:/application/pkg/zones-proxyd:default
```

- 2 Log on to the non-global zone as a superuser.

- 3 Ensure that the SMF service

```
svc:/application/pkg/zones-proxy-client:default is online inside  
non-global zone
```

```
# svcs svc:/application/pkg/zones-proxy-client:default
```

- 4 Copy the `VRTSpkgs.p5p` package from the `pkgs` directory from the installation media to the non-global zone (for example at `/tmp/install` directory).

- 5 Disable the publishers that are not reachable, as package install may fail if any of the already added repositories are unreachable.

```
# pkg set-publisher --disable <publisher name>
```

- 6 Add a file-based repository in the non-global zone.

```
# pkg set-publisher -g/tmp/install/VRTSpkgs.p5p Symantec
```

- 7 Install the required packages.

```
# pkg install --accept VRTSperl VRTSvlic VRTSvxfs VRTSvcs  
VRTSvcsag VRTSvcsea
```

- 8 Remove the publisher on the non-global zone.

```
# pkg unset-publisher Symantec
```

- 9 Clear the state of the SMF service, as setting the file-based repository causes SMF service `svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default` to go into maintenance state.

```
# svcadm clear svc:/application/pkg/system-repository:default
```

- 10 Enable the publishers that were disabled earlier.

```
# pkg set-publisher --enable <publisher>
```

Note: Note: Perform steps 2 through 10 on each non-global zone.

Manually installing packages on solaris10 brand zones

You need to manually install SFHA 6.1 packages inside the solaris10 brand zones.

- 1 Boot the zone.
- 2 Logon to the solaris10 brand zone as a super user.

- 3 Copy the Solaris 10 packages from the pkgs directory from the installation media to the non-global zone (such as `/tmp/install` directory).
- 4 Install the following SFHA packages on the brand zone.

```
# cd /tmp/install
# pkgadd -d VRTSperl.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSvlic.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSvcsc.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSvxfs.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSvcscag.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSvcsea.pkg
# pkgadd -d VRTSodm.pkg
```

Note: Perform all the above steps on each Solaris 10 brand zone.

For more information on the support for Branded Zones, refer the *Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Virtualization Guide*.

Configuring SFHA clusters for data integrity

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Setting up disk-based I/O fencing manually](#)
- [Setting up server-based I/O fencing manually](#)
- [Setting up non-SCSI-3 fencing in virtual environments manually](#)

Setting up disk-based I/O fencing manually

[Table 16-1](#) lists the tasks that are involved in setting up I/O fencing.

Table 16-1

Task	Reference
Initializing disks as VxVM disks	See "Initializing disks as VxVM disks" on page 140.
Identifying disks to use as coordinator disks	See "Identifying disks to use as coordinator disks" on page 240.
Checking shared disks for I/O fencing	See "Checking shared disks for I/O fencing" on page 141.
Setting up coordinator disk groups	See "Setting up coordinator disk groups" on page 240.
Creating I/O fencing configuration files	See "Creating I/O fencing configuration files" on page 241.
Modifying SFHA configuration to use I/O fencing	See "Modifying VCS configuration to use I/O fencing" on page 242.

Table 16-1 (continued)

Task	Reference
Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points	See “Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points” on page 258.
Verifying I/O fencing configuration	See “Verifying I/O fencing configuration” on page 244.

Removing permissions for communication

Make sure you completed the installation of SFHA and the verification of disk support for I/O fencing. If you used `rsh`, remove the temporary `rsh` access permissions that you set for the nodes and restore the connections to the public network.

If the nodes use `ssh` for secure communications, and you temporarily removed the connections to the public network, restore the connections.

Identifying disks to use as coordinator disks

Make sure you initialized disks as VxVM disks.

See [“Initializing disks as VxVM disks”](#) on page 140.

Review the following procedure to identify disks to use as coordinator disks.

To identify the coordinator disks

- 1 List the disks on each node.

For example, execute the following commands to list the disks:

```
# vxdisk -o alldgs list
```

- 2 Pick three SCSI-3 PR compliant shared disks as coordinator disks.

See [“Checking shared disks for I/O fencing”](#) on page 141.

Setting up coordinator disk groups

From one node, create a disk group named `vxencoorddg`. This group must contain three disks or LUNs. You must also set the coordinator attribute for the coordinator disk group. VxVM uses this attribute to prevent the reassignment of coordinator disks to other disk groups.

Note that if you create a coordinator disk group as a regular disk group, you can turn on the coordinator attribute in Volume Manager.

Refer to the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide* for details on how to create disk groups.

The following example procedure assumes that the disks have the device names c1t1d0s2, c2t1d0s2, and c3t1d0s2.

To create the vxfencoordg disk group

- 1 On any node, create the disk group by specifying the device names:

```
# vxdg init vxfencoordg c1t1d0s2 c2t1d0s2 c3t1d0s2
```

- 2 Set the coordinator attribute value as "on" for the coordinator disk group.

```
# vxdg -g vxfencoordg set coordinator=on
```

- 3 Deport the coordinator disk group:

```
# vxdg deport vxfencoordg
```

- 4 Import the disk group with the `-t` option to avoid automatically importing it when the nodes restart:

```
# vxdg -t import vxfencoordg
```

- 5 Deport the disk group. Deporting the disk group prevents the coordinator disks from serving other purposes:

```
# vxdg deport vxfencoordg
```

Creating I/O fencing configuration files

After you set up the coordinator disk group, you must do the following to configure I/O fencing:

- Create the I/O fencing configuration file `/etc/vxfendg`
- Update the I/O fencing configuration file `/etc/vxfenmode`

To update the I/O fencing files and start I/O fencing

- 1 On each nodes, type:

```
# echo "vxfencoorddg" > /etc/vxfendg
```

Do not use spaces between the quotes in the "vxfencoorddg" text.

This command creates the /etc/vxfendg file, which includes the name of the coordinator disk group.

- 2 On all cluster nodes depending on the SCSI-3 mechanism, type one of the following selections:

- For DMP configuration:

```
# cp /etc/vxfen.d/vxfenmode_scsi3_dmp /etc/vxfenmode
```

- For raw device configuration:

```
# cp /etc/vxfen.d/vxfenmode_scsi3_raw /etc/vxfenmode
```

- 3 To check the updated /etc/vxfenmode configuration, enter the following command on one of the nodes. For example:

```
# more /etc/vxfenmode
```

- 4 Ensure that you edit the following file on each node in the cluster to change the values of the VXFEN_START and the VXFEN_STOP environment variables to 1:

```
/etc/default/vxfen
```

Modifying VCS configuration to use I/O fencing

After you add coordination points and configure I/O fencing, add the UseFence = SCSI3 cluster attribute to the VCS configuration file /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf.

If you reset this attribute to UseFence = None, VCS does not make use of I/O fencing abilities while failing over service groups. However, I/O fencing needs to be disabled separately.

To modify VCS configuration to enable I/O fencing

- 1 Save the existing configuration:

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- 2 Stop VCS on all nodes:

```
# hastop -all
```

- 3 To ensure High Availability has stopped cleanly, run `gabconfig -a`.
In the output of the commands, check that Port h is not present.

- 4 If the I/O fencing driver `vxfen` is already running, stop the I/O fencing driver.

```
# svcadm disable -t vxfen
```

- 5 Make a backup of the `main.cf` file on all the nodes:

```
# cd /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config  
# cp main.cf main.orig
```

- 6 On one node, use `vi` or another text editor to edit the `main.cf` file. To modify the list of cluster attributes, add the `UseFence` attribute and assign its value as `SCSI3`.

```
cluster clus1(  
  UserNames = { admin = "cDRpdxPmHpzS." }  
  Administrators = { admin }  
  HacliUserLevel = COMMANDROOT  
  CounterInterval = 5  
  UseFence = SCSI3  
)
```

Regardless of whether the fencing configuration is disk-based or server-based, the value of the cluster-level attribute `UseFence` is set to `SCSI3`.

- 7 Save and close the file.

- 8 Verify the syntax of the file `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf`:

```
# hacf -verify /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config
```

- 9 Using rcp or another utility, copy the VCS configuration file from a node (for example, sys1) to the remaining cluster nodes.

For example, on each remaining node, enter:

```
# rcp sys1:/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf \  
/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config
```

- 10 Start the I/O fencing driver and VCS. Perform the following steps on each node:

- Start the I/O fencing driver.
The vxfen startup script also invokes the `vxfenconfig` command, which configures the vxfen driver to start and use the coordination points that are listed in `/etc/vxfentab`.

```
# svcadm enable vxfen
```

- Start VCS on the node where `main.cf` is modified.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/hastart
```

- Start VCS on all other nodes once VCS on first node reaches RUNNING state.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/hastart
```

Verifying I/O fencing configuration

Verify from the `vxfenadm` output that the SCSI-3 disk policy reflects the configuration in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file.

To verify I/O fencing configuration

- 1 On one of the nodes, type:

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

Output similar to the following appears if the fencing mode is SCSI3 and the SCSI3 disk policy is dmp:

```
I/O Fencing Cluster Information:
=====
```

```
Fencing Protocol Version: 201
Fencing Mode: SCSI3
Fencing SCSI3 Disk Policy: dmp
Cluster Members:
```

```
* 0 (sys1)
  1 (sys2)
```

```
RFSM State Information:
  node 0 in state 8 (running)
  node 1 in state 8 (running)
```

- 2 Verify that the disk-based I/O fencing is using the specified disks.

```
# vxfenconfig -l
```

Setting up server-based I/O fencing manually

Tasks that are involved in setting up server-based I/O fencing manually include:

Table 16-2 Tasks to set up server-based I/O fencing manually

Task	Reference
Preparing the CP servers for use by the SFHA cluster	See “Preparing the CP servers manually for use by the SFHA cluster” on page 246.
Generating the client key and certificates on the client nodes manually	See “Generating the client key and certificates manually on the client nodes ” on page 249.

Table 16-2 Tasks to set up server-based I/O fencing manually (*continued*)

Task	Reference
Modifying I/O fencing configuration files to configure server-based I/O fencing	See “Configuring server-based fencing on the SF HA cluster manually” on page 251.
Modifying SFHA configuration to use I/O fencing	See “Modifying VCS configuration to use I/O fencing” on page 242.
Configuring Coordination Point agent to monitor coordination points	See “Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points” on page 258.
Verifying the server-based I/O fencing configuration	See “Verifying server-based I/O fencing configuration” on page 259.

Preparing the CP servers manually for use by the SF HA cluster

Use this procedure to manually prepare the CP server for use by the SF HA cluster or clusters.

[Table 16-3](#) displays the sample values used in this procedure.

Table 16-3 Sample values in procedure

CP server configuration component	Sample name
CP server	cps1
Node #1 - SF HA cluster	sys1
Node #2 - SF HA cluster	sys2
Cluster name	clus1
Cluster UUID	{f0735332-1dd1-11b2}

To manually configure CP servers for use by the SF HA cluster

- 1 Determine the cluster name and uuid on the SF HA cluster.

For example, issue the following commands on one of the SF HA cluster nodes (sys1):

```
# grep cluster /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf

cluster clus1

# cat /etc/vx/.uuids/clusuuid

{f0735332-1dd1-11b2-bb31-00306eea460a}
```

- 2 Use the `cpsadm` command to check whether the SF HA cluster and nodes are present in the CP server.

For example:

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a list_nodes
```

ClusName	UUID	Hostname(Node ID)	Registered
clus1	{f0735332-1dd1-11b2-bb31-00306eea460a}	sys1(0)	0
clus1	{f0735332-1dd1-11b2-bb31-00306eea460a}	sys2(1)	0

If the output does not show the cluster and nodes, then add them as described in the next step.

For detailed information about the `cpsadm` command, see the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

3 Add the SF HA cluster and nodes to each CP server.

For example, issue the following command on the CP server (cps1.symantecexample.com) to add the cluster:

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a add_clus\  
-c clus1 -u {f0735332-1dd1-11b2}
```

```
Cluster clus1 added successfully
```

Issue the following command on the CP server (cps1.symantecexample.com) to add the first node:

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a add_node\  
-c clus1 -u {f0735332-1dd1-11b2} -h sys1 -n0
```

```
Node 0 (sys1) successfully added
```

Issue the following command on the CP server (cps1.symantecexample.com) to add the second node:

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a add_node\  
-c clus1 -u {f0735332-1dd1-11b2} -h sys2 -n1
```

```
Node 1 (sys2) successfully added
```

4 If security is to be disabled, then add the user name "cpsclient@hostname" to the server.

5 Add the users to the CP server.

Issue the following commands on the CP server (cps1.symantecexample.com):

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a add_user -e\  
cpsclient@hostname\  
-f cps_operator -g vx
```

```
User cpsclient@hostname  
successfully added
```

6 Authorize the CP server user to administer the SF HA cluster. You must perform this task for the CP server users corresponding to each node in the SF HA cluster.

For example, issue the following command on the CP server (cps1.symantecexample.com) for SF HA cluster clus1 with two nodes sys1 and sys2:

```
# cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a\  
add_clus_to_user -c clus1\  
-u {f0735332-1dd1-11b2}\  
-e cpsclient@hostname\  
-f cps_operator -g vx
```

```
Cluster successfully added to user  
cpsclient@hostname privileges.
```

See [“Generating the client key and certificates manually on the client nodes”](#) on page 249.

Generating the client key and certificates manually on the client nodes

The client node that wants to connect to a CP server using HTTPS must have a private key and certificates signed by the Certificate Authority (CA) on the CP server

The client uses its private key and certificates to establish connection with the CP server. The key and the certificate must be present on the node at a predefined location. Each client has one client certificate and one CA certificate for every CP server, so, the certificate files must follow a specific naming convention. Distinct certificate names help the `cpsadm` command to identify which certificates have to be used when a client node connects to a specific CP server.

The certificate names must be as follows: `ca_cps-vip.crt` and `client_cps-vip.crt`

Where, *cps-vip* is the VIP or FQHN of the CP server listed in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file. For example, for a sample VIP, `192.168.1.201`, the corresponding certificate name is `ca_192.168.1.201`.

To manually set up certificates on the client node

- 1 Create the directory to store certificates.

```
# mkdir -p /var/VRTSvxfen/security/keys  
/var/VRTSvxfen/security/certs
```

Note: Since the `openssl` utility might not be available on client nodes, Symantec recommends that you access the CP server using SSH to generate the client keys or certificates on the CP server and copy the certificates to each of the nodes.

- 2 Generate the private key for the client node.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out client_private.key 2048
```

- 3 Generate the client CSR for the cluster. CN is the UUID of the client's cluster.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl req -new -key client_private.key\  
-subj '/C=countryname/L=localityname/OU=COMPANY/CN=CLUS_UUID\'  
-out client_192.168.1.201.csr
```

Where, *countryname* is the name of the country, *localityname* is the city, *COMPANY* is the name of the company, and *CLUS_UUID* is the certificate name.

- 4 Generate the client certificate by using the CA key and the CA certificate.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl x509 -req -days days -in  
client_192.168.1.201.csr\  
-CA /var/VRTSscps/security/certs/ca.crt -CAkey\  
/var/VRTSscps/security/keys/ca.key -set_serial 01 -out  
client_192.168.10.1.crt
```

Where, *days* is the days you want the certificate to remain valid, `192.168.1.201` is the VIP or FQHN of the CP server.

- 5 Copy the client key, client certificate, and CA certificate to each of the client nodes at the following location.

Copy the client key at

`/var/VRTSvxfen/security/keys/client_private.key`. The client is common for all the client nodes and hence you need to generate it only once.

Copy the client certificate at

`/var/VRTSvxfen/security/certs/client_192.168.1.201.crt`.

Copy the CA certificate at

`/var/VRTSvxfen/security/certs/ca_192.168.1.201.crt`

Note: Copy the certificates and the key to all the nodes at the locations that are listed in this step.

- 6 If the client nodes need to access the CP server using the FQHN and or the host name, make a copy of the certificates you generated and replace the VIP with the FQHN or host name. Make sure that you copy these certificates to all the nodes.
- 7 Repeat the procedure for every CP server.
- 8 After you copy the key and certificates to each client node, delete the client keys and client certificates on the CP server.

Configuring server-based fencing on the SF HA cluster manually

The configuration process for the client or SF HA cluster to use CP server as a coordination point requires editing the `/etc/vxfenmode` file.

You need to edit this file to specify the following information for your configuration:

- Fencing mode
- Fencing mechanism
- Fencing disk policy (if applicable to your I/O fencing configuration)
- CP server or CP servers
- Coordinator disk group (if applicable to your I/O fencing configuration)
- Set the order of coordination points

Note: Whenever coordinator disks are used as coordination points in your I/O fencing configuration, you must create a disk group (vxencoorddg). You must specify this disk group in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file.

See [“Setting up coordinator disk groups”](#) on page 240.

The customized fencing framework also generates the `/etc/vxfentab` file which has coordination points (all the CP servers and disks from disk group specified in `/etc/vxfenmode` file).

To configure server-based fencing on the SF HA cluster manually

- 1 Use a text editor to edit the following file on each node in the cluster:

```
/etc/default/vxfen
```

You must change the values of the `VXFEN_START` and the `VXFEN_STOP` environment variables to 1.

- 2 Use a text editor to edit the `/etc/vxfenmode` file values to meet your configuration specifications.
 - If your server-based fencing configuration uses a single highly available CP server as its only coordination point, make sure to add the `single_cp=1` entry in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file.
 - If you want the `vxfen` module to use a specific order of coordination points during a network partition scenario, set the `vxfen_honor_cp_order` value to be 1. By default, the parameter is disabled.

The following sample file output displays what the `/etc/vxfenmode` file contains:

See [“Sample vxfenmode file output for server-based fencing”](#) on page 252.

- 3 After editing the `/etc/vxfenmode` file, run the `vxfen` init script to start fencing.

For example:

```
# svcadm enable vxfen
```

Sample vxfenmode file output for server-based fencing

The following is a sample `vxfenmode` file for server-based fencing:

```
#  
# vxfen_mode determines in what mode VCS I/O Fencing should work.  
#  
# available options:
```

```

# scsi3      - use scsi3 persistent reservation disks
# customized - use script based customized fencing
# disabled   - run the driver but don't do any actual fencing
#
vxfen_mode=customized

# vxfen_mechanism determines the mechanism for customized I/O
# fencing that should be used.
#
# available options:
# cps      - use a coordination point server with optional script
#            controlled scsi3 disks
#
vxfen_mechanism=cps

#
# scsi3_disk_policy determines the way in which I/O fencing
# communicates with the coordination disks. This field is
# required only if customized coordinator disks are being used.
#
# available options:
# dmp - use dynamic multipathing
# raw - connect to disks using the native interface
#
scsi3_disk_policy=dmp

#
# security parameter is deprecated release 6.1 onwards
# since communication with CP server will always happen
# over HTTPS which is inherently secure. In pre-6.1 releases,
# it was used to configure secure communication to the
# cp server using VxAT (Veritas Authentication Service)
# available options:
# 0 - don't use Veritas Authentication Service for cp server
#    communication
# 1 - use Veritas Authentication Service for cp server
#    communication
security=1

#
# vxfen_honor_cp_order determines the order in which vxfen
# should use the coordination points specified in this file.
#

```

```

# available options:
# 0 - vxfen uses a sorted list of coordination points specified
# in this file,
# the order in which coordination points are specified does not matter.
# (default)
# 1 - vxfen uses the coordination points in the same order they are
# specified in this file

# Specify 3 or more odd number of coordination points in this file,
# each one in its own line. They can be all-CP servers,
# all-SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks, or a combination of
# CP servers and SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks.
# Please ensure that the CP server coordination points
# are numbered sequentially and in the same order
# on all the cluster nodes.
#
# Coordination Point Server(CPS) is specified as follows:
#
# cps<number>=[<vip/vhn>]:<port>
#
# If a CPS supports multiple virtual IPs or virtual hostnames
# over different subnets, all of the IPs/names can be specified
# in a comma separated list as follows:
#
# cps<number>=[<vip_1/vhn_1>]:<port_1>,[<vip_2/vhn_2>]:<port_2>,
# ..., [<vip_n/vhn_n>]:<port_n>
#
# Where,
# <number>
# is the serial number of the CPS as a coordination point; must
# start with 1.
# <vip>
# is the virtual IP address of the CPS, must be specified in
# square brackets ("[]").
# <vhn>
# is the virtual hostname of the CPS, must be specified in square
# brackets ("[]").
# <port>
# is the port number bound to a particular <vip/vhn> of the CPS.
# It is optional to specify a <port>. However, if specified, it
# must follow a colon (":") after <vip/vhn>. If not specified, the
# colon (":") must not exist after <vip/vhn>.
#

```

```

# For all the <vip/vhn>s which do not have a specified <port>,
# a default port can be specified as follows:
#
# port=<default_port>
#
# Where <default_port> is applicable to all the <vip/vhn>s for
# which a <port> is not specified. In other words, specifying
# <port> with a <vip/vhn> overrides the <default_port> for that
# <vip/vhn>. If the <default_port> is not specified, and there
# are <vip/vhn>s for which <port> is not specified, then port
# number 14250 will be used for such <vip/vhn>s.
#
# Example of specifying CP Servers to be used as coordination points:
# port=57777
# cps1=[192.168.0.23],[192.168.0.24]:58888,[cps1.company.com]
# cps2=[192.168.0.25]
# cps3=[cps2.company.com]:59999
#
# In the above example,
# - port 58888 will be used for vip [192.168.0.24]
# - port 59999 will be used for vhn [cps2.company.com], and
# - default port 57777 will be used for all remaining <vip/vhn>s:
#   [192.168.0.23]
#   [cps1.company.com]
#   [192.168.0.25]
# - if default port 57777 were not specified, port 14250
# would be used for all remaining <vip/vhn>s:
#   [192.168.0.23]
#   [cps1.company.com]
#   [192.168.0.25]
#
# SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks are specified as:
#
# vxfendg=<coordinator disk group name>
# Example:
# vxfendg=vxfencoorddg
#
# Examples of different configurations:
# 1. All CP server coordination points
# cps1=
# cps2=
# cps3=
#

```

```
# 2. A combination of CP server and a disk group having two SCSI-3
# coordinator disks
# cps1=
# vxfendg=
# Note: The disk group specified in this case should have two disks
#
# 3. All SCSI-3 coordinator disks
# vxfendg=
# Note: The disk group specified in case should have three disks
# cps1=[cps1.company.com]
# cps2=[cps2.company.com]
# cps3=[cps3.company.com]
# port=443
```

Table 16-4 defines the vxfenmode parameters that must be edited.

Table 16-4 vxfenmode file parameters

vxfenmode File Parameter	Description
vxfen_mode	Fencing mode of operation. This parameter must be set to "customized".
vxfen_mechanism	Fencing mechanism. This parameter defines the mechanism that is used for fencing. If one of the three coordination points is a CP server, then this parameter must be set to "cps".
scsi3_disk_policy	Configure the vxfen module to use either DMP devices, "dmp" or the underlying raw character devices, "raw". Note: The configured disk policy is applied on all the nodes.
security	<p>Deprecated from release 6.1 onwards.</p> <p>Security parameter is deprecated release 6.1 onwards as communication between CP servers and application clusters happens over the HTTPS protocol which is inherently secure.</p> <p>In releases prior to 6.1, the security parameter was used to configure secure communication to the CP server using the VxAT (Veritas Authentication Service) options. The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 0 - Do not use Veritas Authentication Service for CP server communication ■ 1 - Use Veritas Authentication Service for CP server communication

Table 16-4 vxfenmode file parameters (*continued*)

vxfenmode File Parameter	Description
cps1, cps2, or vxfendg	<p>Coordination point parameters.</p> <p>Enter either the virtual IP address or the FQHN (whichever is accessible) of the CP server.</p> <pre>cps<number>=[virtual_ip_address/virtual_host_name]:port</pre> <p>Where <i>port</i> is optional. The default port value is 443.</p> <p>If you have configured multiple virtual IP addresses or host names over different subnets, you can specify these as comma-separated values. For example:</p> <pre>cps1=[192.168.0.23], [192.168.0.24]:58888, [cps1.company.com]</pre> <p>Note: Whenever coordinator disks are used in an I/O fencing configuration, a disk group has to be created (vxencoordg) and specified in the <code>/etc/vxfenmode</code> file. Additionally, the customized fencing framework also generates the <code>/etc/vxfentab</code> file which specifies the security setting and the coordination points (all the CP servers and the disks from disk group specified in <code>/etc/vxfenmode</code> file).</p>
port	<p>Default port for the CP server to listen on.</p> <p>If you have not specified port numbers for individual virtual IP addresses or host names, the default port number value that the CP server uses for those individual virtual IP addresses or host names is 443. You can change this default port value using the port parameter.</p>
single_cp	<p>Value 1 for <code>single_cp</code> parameter indicates that the server-based fencing uses a single highly available CP server as its only coordination point.</p> <p>Value 0 for <code>single_cp</code> parameter indicates that the server-based fencing uses at least three coordination points.</p>
vxfen_honor_cp_order	<p>Set the value to 1 for vxfen module to use a specific order of coordination points during a network partition scenario.</p> <p>By default the parameter is disabled. The default value is 0.</p>

Configuring CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points

The following procedure describes how to manually configure the CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points.

The CoordPoint agent can monitor CP servers and SCSI-3 disks.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Bundled Agents Reference Guide* for more information on the agent.

To configure CoordPoint agent to monitor coordination points

- 1 Ensure that your SF HA cluster has been properly installed and configured with fencing enabled.
- 2 Create a parallel service group vxfen and add a coordpoint resource to the vxfen service group using the following commands:

```
# haconf -makerw
# hagr -add vxfen
# hagr -modify vxfen SystemList sys1 0 sys2 1
# hagr -modify vxfen AutoFailOver 0
# hagr -modify vxfen Parallel 1
# hagr -modify vxfen SourceFile "./main.cf"
# hares -add coordpoint CoordPoint vxfen
# hares -modify coordpoint FaultTolerance 0
# hares -override coordpoint LevelTwoMonitorFreq
# hares -modify coordpoint LevelTwoMonitorFreq 5
# hares -modify coordpoint Enabled 1
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- 3 Configure the Phantom resource for the vxfen disk group.

```
# haconf -makerw
# hares -add RES_phantom_vxfen Phantom vxfen
# hares -modify RES_phantom_vxfen Enabled 1
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- 4 Verify the status of the agent on the SF HA cluster using the `hares` commands. For example:

```
# hares -state coordpoint
```

The following is an example of the command and output::

```
# hares -state coordpoint

# Resource      Attribute    System    Value
coordpoint     State       sys1     ONLINE
coordpoint     State       sys2     ONLINE
```

- 5 Access the engine log to view the agent log. The agent log is written to the engine log.

The agent log contains detailed CoordPoint agent monitoring information; including information about whether the CoordPoint agent is able to access all the coordination points, information to check on which coordination points the CoordPoint agent is reporting missing keys, etc.

To view the debug logs in the engine log, change the `dbg` level for that node using the following commands:

```
# haconf -makerw

# hatype -modify Coordpoint LogDbg 10

# haconf -dump -makero
```

The agent log can now be viewed at the following location:

```
/var/VRTSvcS/log/engine_A.log
```

Verifying server-based I/O fencing configuration

Follow the procedure described below to verify your server-based I/O fencing configuration.

To verify the server-based I/O fencing configuration

- 1 Verify that the I/O fencing configuration was successful by running the `vxfenadm` command. For example, run the following command:

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

Note: For troubleshooting any server-based I/O fencing configuration issues, refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

- 2 Verify that I/O fencing is using the specified coordination points by running the `vxfenconfig` command. For example, run the following command:

```
# vxfenconfig -l
```

If the output displays `single_cp=1`, it indicates that the application cluster uses a CP server as the single coordination point for server-based fencing.

Setting up non-SCSI-3 fencing in virtual environments manually

To manually set up I/O fencing in a non-SCSI-3 PR compliant setup

- 1 Configure I/O fencing in customized mode with only CP servers as coordination points.

See [“Setting up server-based I/O fencing manually”](#) on page 245.

- 2 Make sure that the SFHA cluster is online and check that the fencing mode is customized.

```
# vxfenadm -d
```

- 3 Make sure that the cluster attribute `UseFence` is set to `SCSI3`.

```
# haclus -value UseFence
```

- 4 On each node, edit the `/etc/vxenvron` file as follows:

```
data_disk_fencing=off
```

- 5 On each node, edit the `/kernel/drv/vxfen.conf` file as follows:

```
vxfen_vxfnd_tmt=25
```

- 6** On each node, edit the `/etc/vxfenmode` file as follows:

```
loser_exit_delay=55
vxfen_script_timeout=25
```

Refer to the sample `/etc/vxfenmode` file.

- 7** On each node, set the value of the LLT `sendhbcap` timer parameter value as follows:

- Run the following command:

```
lltconfig -T sendhbcap:3000
```

- Add the following line to the `/etc/llttab` file so that the changes remain persistent after any reboot:

```
set-timer senhbcap:3000
```

- 8** On any one node, edit the VCS configuration file as follows:

- Make the VCS configuration file writable:

```
# haconf -makerw
```

- For each resource of the type `DiskGroup`, set the value of the `MonitorReservation` attribute to 0 and the value of the `Reservation` attribute to `NONE`.

```
# hares -modify <dg_resource> MonitorReservation 0
```

```
# hares -modify <dg_resource> Reservation "NONE"
```

- Run the following command to verify the value:

```
# hares -list Type=DiskGroup MonitorReservation!=0
```

```
# hares -list Type=DiskGroup Reservation!="NONE"
```

The command should not list any resources.

- Modify the default value of the `Reservation` attribute at type-level.

```
# haattr -default DiskGroup Reservation "NONE"
```

- Make the VCS configuration file read-only

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- 9 Make sure that the UseFence attribute in the VCS configuration file main.cf is set to SCSI3.
- 10 To make these VxFEN changes take effect, stop and restart VxFEN and the dependent modules
 - On each node, run the following command to stop VCS:


```
# svcadm disable -t vcs
```
 - After VCS takes all services offline, run the following command to stop VxFEN:


```
# svcadm disable -t vxfen
```
 - On each node, run the following commands to restart VxFEN and VCS:


```
# svcadm enable vxfen
```

Sample /etc/vxfenmode file for non-SCSI-3 fencing

```
#
# vxfen_mode determines in what mode VCS I/O Fencing should work.
#
# available options:
# scsi3      - use scsi3 persistent reservation disks
# customized - use script based customized fencing
# disabled   - run the driver but don't do any actual fencing
#
vxfen_mode=customized

# vxfen_mechanism determines the mechanism for customized I/O
# fencing that should be used.
#
# available options:
# cps        - use a coordination point server with optional script
#              controlled scsi3 disks
#
vxfen_mechanism=cps

#
# scsi3_disk_policy determines the way in which I/O fencing
# communicates with the coordination disks. This field is
```

```

# required only if customized coordinator disks are being used.
#
# available options:
# dmp - use dynamic multipathing
# raw - connect to disks using the native interface
#
scsi3_disk_policy=dmp

#
# Seconds for which the winning sub cluster waits to allow for the
# losing subcluster to panic & drain I/Os. Useful in the absence of
# SCSI3 based data disk fencing loser_exit_delay=55
#
# Seconds for which vxferd process wait for a customized fencing
# script to complete. Only used with vxfer_mode=customized
# vxfer_script_timeout=25

# security parameter is deprecated release 6.1 onwards since
# communication with CP server will always happen over HTTPS
# which is inherently secure. In pre-6.1 releases, it was used
# to configure secure communication to the cp server using
# VxAT (Veritas Authentication Service) available options:
# 0 - don't use Veritas Authentication Service for cp server
#   communication
# 1 - use Veritas Authentication Service for cp server
#   communication
security=1

#
# vxfer_honor_cp_order determines the order in which vxfer
# should use the coordination points specified in this file.
#
# available options:
# 0 - vxfer uses a sorted list of coordination points specified
# in this file, the order in which coordination points are specified
# does not matter.
#   (default)
# 1 - vxfer uses the coordination points in the same order they are
#   specified in this file

# Specify 3 or more odd number of coordination points in this file,
# each one in its own line. They can be all-CP servers, all-SCSI-3
# compliant coordinator disks, or a combination of CP servers and

```

```

# SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks.
# Please ensure that the CP server coordination points are
# numbered sequentially and in the same order on all the cluster
# nodes.
#
# Coordination Point Server(CPS) is specified as follows:
#
# cps<number>=[<vip/vhn>]:<port>
#
# If a CPS supports multiple virtual IPs or virtual hostnames
# over different subnets, all of the IPs/names can be specified
# in a comma separated list as follows:
#
# cps<number>=[<vip_1/vhn_1>]:<port_1>,[<vip_2/vhn_2>]:<port_2>,
# ..., [<vip_n/vhn_n>]:<port_n>
#
# Where,
# <number>
# is the serial number of the CPS as a coordination point; must
# start with 1.
# <vip>
# is the virtual IP address of the CPS, must be specified in
# square brackets ("[]").
# <vhn>
# is the virtual hostname of the CPS, must be specified in square
# brackets ("[]").
# <port>
# is the port number bound to a particular <vip/vhn> of the CPS.
# It is optional to specify a <port>. However, if specified, it
# must follow a colon (":") after <vip/vhn>. If not specified, the
# colon (":") must not exist after <vip/vhn>.
#
# For all the <vip/vhn>s which do not have a specified <port>,
# a default port can be specified as follows:
#
# port=<default_port>
#
# Where <default_port> is applicable to all the <vip/vhn>s for which a
# <port> is not specified. In other words, specifying <port> with a
# <vip/vhn> overrides the <default_port> for that <vip/vhn>.
# If the <default_port> is not specified, and there are <vip/vhn>s for
# which <port> is not specified, then port number 14250 will be used
# for such <vip/vhn>s.

```

```

#
# Example of specifying CP Servers to be used as coordination points:
# port=57777
# cps1=[192.168.0.23],[192.168.0.24]:58888,[cps1.company.com]
# cps2=[192.168.0.25]
# cps3=[cps2.company.com]:59999
#
# In the above example,
# - port 58888 will be used for vip [192.168.0.24]
# - port 59999 will be used for vhn [cps2.company.com], and
# - default port 57777 will be used for all remaining <vip/vhn>s:
#   [192.168.0.23]
#   [cps1.company.com]
#   [192.168.0.25]
# - if default port 57777 were not specified, port 14250 would be
#   used for all remaining <vip/vhn>s:
#   [192.168.0.23]
#   [cps1.company.com]
#   [192.168.0.25]
#
# SCSI-3 compliant coordinator disks are specified as:
#
# vxfendg=<coordinator disk group name>
# Example:
# vxfendg=vxfencoorddg
#
# Examples of different configurations:
# 1. All CP server coordination points
# cps1=
# cps2=
# cps3=
#
# 2. A combination of CP server and a disk group having two SCSI-3
# coordinator disks
# cps1=
# vxfendg=
# Note: The disk group specified in this case should have two disks
#
# 3. All SCSI-3 coordinator disks
# vxfendg=
# Note: The disk group specified in case should have three disks
# cps1=[cps1.company.com]
# cps2=[cps2.company.com]

```

```
# cps3=[cps3.company.com]  
# port=443
```

Managing your Symantec deployments

- [Chapter 17. Performing centralized installations using the Deployment Server](#)

Performing centralized installations using the Deployment Server

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the Deployment Server](#)
- [How to install the Deployment Script](#)
- [Deployment management overview](#)
- [Setting up a Deployment Server](#)
- [Setting deployment preferences](#)
- [Using the Deployment Server command line option to specify a non-default repository location](#)
- [Using the Deployment Server command line options to load and download the most recent release information](#)
- [Viewing or downloading available release images](#)
- [Viewing or removing repository images stored in your repository](#)
- [Deploying Symantec product updates to your environment](#)
- [Finding out which releases you have, and which upgrades or updates you may need](#)
- [Deploying a specific Symantec release](#)
- [Updating release information on systems without Internet access](#)

About the Deployment Server

The Deployment Server is a script that makes it easier to install or upgrade SFHA releases. The Deployment Server lets you store multiple release images in one central location and deploy them to systems of any supported UNIX or Linux operating system (6.1 or later). Prior to 6.1, releases still require the same platform, architecture, distribution, and version of the operating system. You can use the Deployment Server if you want to install or upgrade multiple releases and or multiple platforms.

The Deployment Server lets you do the following as described in [Table 17-1](#).

Table 17-1 Deployment Server functionality

Feature	Description
Manage release images	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ View available SFHA releases. ■ Download maintenance and hot fix release images from the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) website into a repository. ■ Load the downloaded release image files from FileConnect and SORT into the repository. ■ View and remove release image files stored in the repository.
Check versions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Discover packages and patches installed on designated systems and informs you of the product and version installed, including installed hot fixes. ■ Identify base, maintenance, and hot fix level upgrades to your system and download maintenance and hot fix releases. ■ Query SORT for the most recent updates.
Install or upgrade systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Install or upgrade a release stored in the repository on selected systems. ■ In release 6.1 and later: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Install hot fix level releases. ■ Install SFHA from any supported UNIX or Linux operating system to any other supported UNIX or Linux operating system. ■ Automatically load the script-based installer hot fixes that apply to that release.
Update metadata and preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Download, load the release matrix updates, and script-based installer updates for systems behind a firewall. ■ Define or reset program settings.

Note: The Deployment Server is available only for the script-based installer, not the web-based installer.

How to install the Deployment Script

The Deployment Script is the utility for managing your Deployment Server.

You can obtain the Deployment Script by either:

- Installing the Deployment Script manually.
- Running the Deployment Script after installing at least one Symantec 6.1 product.

Note: The `VRTSper1` and the `VRTSsfcp1<version>` packages are included in all Storage Foundation (SF) products, so installing any Symantec 6.1 product lets you access the Deployment Script.

To install the Deployment Script manually

1 Log in as superuser.

2 Mount the installation media.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

3 For Solaris 10, move to the top-level directory on the disc.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0
```

4 For Solaris 10, navigate to the following directory:

```
# cd pkgs
```

5 For Solaris 10, run the following commands to install the `VRTSper1` and the `VRTSsfcp1<version>` packages:

```
# pkgadd -d ./VRTSper1.pkg VRTSper1
# pkgadd -d ./VRTSsfcp1<version>.pkg VRTSsfcp1<version>
```

6 For Solaris 11, move to the top-level directory on the disc.

```
# cd /cdrom/cdrom0
```

- 7 For Solaris 11, navigate to the following directory:

```
# cd pkgs
```

- 8 For Solaris 11, run the following commands to install the `VRTSper1` and the `VRTSsfcp1<version>` packages:

```
# pkg install --accept -g ./VRTSpkgs.p5p VRTSper1 VRTSsfcp1<version>
```

To run the Deployment Script

- 1 Log in as superuser.
- 2 Navigate to the following directory:

```
# cd /opt/VRTS/install
```

- 3 Run the Deployment Script.

```
# ./deploy_sfha
```

Deployment management overview

After obtaining and installing the Deployment Server and defining a central repository, you can begin managing your deployments from that repository. You can load and store product images for Symantec products up to version 5.1 in your Deployment Server. The Deployment Server is a central installation server for storing and managing your product updates.

See [“How to install the Deployment Script”](#) on page 270.

Setting up and managing your repository involves the following tasks:

- Setting up a Deployment Server.
See [“Setting up a Deployment Server”](#) on page 272.
- Finding out which products you have installed, and which upgrades or updates you may need.
See [“Viewing or downloading available release images”](#) on page 277.
- Adding release images to your Deployment Server.
See [“Viewing or downloading available release images”](#) on page 277.
- Removing release images from your Deployment Server.
See [“Viewing or removing repository images stored in your repository”](#) on page 281.

Later, when your repository is set up, you can use it to deploy Symantec products to other systems in your environment.

See [“Deploying Symantec product updates to your environment”](#) on page 284.

Setting up a Deployment Server

For large deployments, Symantec recommends that you create a dedicated Deployment Server to manage your product updates.

A Deployment Server is useful for doing the following tasks:

- Downloading and storing release images for the latest upgrades and updates from Symantec in a central repository directory.
- Installing and updating systems directly by accessing the release images that are stored within a central repository (direct installation).
- Performing heterogeneous push installations (installing Symantec products from the Deployment Server to systems running any supported platform).

Note: The script-based installer for version 6.1 and higher supports installations from one operating system node onto a different operating system. Therefore, heterogeneous push installations are supported for 6.1 and higher releases only. To perform push installations for product versions 5.1, 6.0, or 6.0.1 releases, you must have a separate Deployment Server for each operating system.

- Creating a file share on the repository directory provides a convenient, central location from which systems running any supported platform can install the latest Symantec products and updates.

Create a central repository on the Deployment Server to store and manage the following types of Symantec releases:

- Base releases. These major releases and minor releases are available for all Symantec products. They contain new features, and you can download them from FileConnect.
- Maintenance releases. These releases are available for all Symantec products. They contain bug fixes and a limited number of new features, and you can download them from the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) website.
- Hot fixes. These releases contain fixes for specific products, and you can download them from the SORT website.

Note: All SFHA base releases and maintenance releases can be deployed using the install scripts that are included in the release. Hot fixes are typically installed manually, however, from the 6.1 release and onwards, install scripts are included with hot fix releases.

You can set up a Deployment Server with or without Internet access.

- If you set up a Deployment Server that has Internet access, you can download SFHA maintenance releases and hot fixes from Symantec directly. Then, you can deploy them to your systems.

[Setting up a Deployment Server that has Internet access](#)

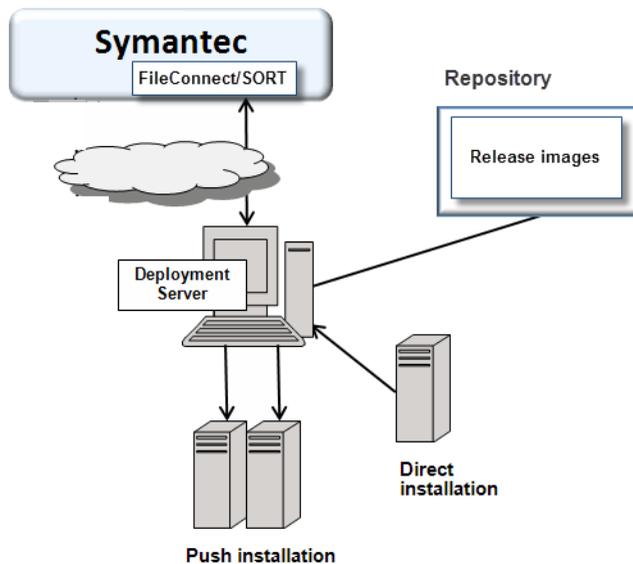
- If you set up a Deployment Server that does not have Internet access, you can download SFHA maintenance releases and hot fixes from Symantec on another system that has Internet access. Then, you can load the images onto the Deployment Server separately.

[Setting up a Deployment Server that does not have Internet access](#)

Setting up a Deployment Server that has Internet access

Figure 17-1 shows a Deployment Server that can download product images directly from Symantec using the Deployment Server.

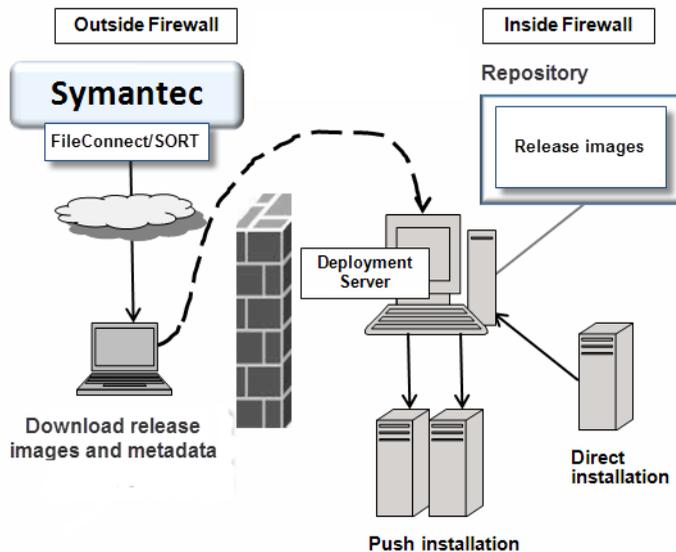
Figure 17-1 Example Deployment Server that has Internet access



Setting up a Deployment Server that does not have Internet access

Figure 17-2 shows a Deployment Server that does not have Internet access. In this scenario, release images and metadata updates are downloaded from another system. Then, they are copied to a file location available to the Deployment Server, and loaded.

Figure 17-2 Example Deployment Server that does not have Internet access



Setting deployment preferences

You can set preferences for managing the deployment of products dating back to version 5.1.

Note: You can select option **T (Terminology and Usage)** to obtain more information about Deployment Server terminology and usage.

To set deployment preferences

- 1 Launch the Deployment Server.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha
```

You see the following output:

Task Menu:

R) Manage Repository Images	M) Update Metadata
V) Version Check Systems	S) Set Preferences
U) Upgrade/Install Systems	T) Terminology and Usage
?) Help	Q) Quit

Enter a Task: [R,M,V,S,U,T,?,Q]

- 2 Select option **S, Set Preferences**.
- 3 In the current preferences page, select option **S, Set Preferences**.
- 4 Do one of the following:

- To set the default repository, enter **1**. Then enter the name of the repository in which you want to store your downloads. For example, enter the following:

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/ProductDownloads
```

If the specified repository replaces a previous repository, the installer asks if you want to move all your files into the new repository. To move your files to the new repository, enter **y**.

- To set the option for saving or removing tar files, enter **2**. At the prompt, if you want to save the tar files after untarring them, enter **y**. Or, if you want to remove tar files after untarring them, enter **n**.

By default, the installer does not remove tar files after the releases have been untarred.

Using the Deployment Server command line option to specify a non-default repository location

You can specify a repository location other than the default that has been set within the system preferences by using the command line option. The command line option is mainly used to install a release image from a different repository location. When you use the command line option, the designated repository folder is used instead

of the default for the execution time of the script. Using the command line option does not override the repository preference set by the **Set Preference** menu item.

To use the command line option to specify a non-default repository location

- ◆ At the command line, to specify a non-default repository location, enter the following:

```
# ./deploy_sfha -repository repository_path
```

where *repository_path* is the preferred location of the repository.

Using the Deployment Server command line options to load and download the most recent release information

You can use the Deployment Server command line options to perform the following operations:

- Load the most recent SF release information and installer hot fixes on systems without Internet access using the `deploy_sfha` command.
- Download a `.tar` file containing the most recent SF release information and installer hot fixes from the SORT site. This `.tar` file is used to update release information on systems without Internet access using the `deploy_sfha -load_metadata` command.

To use the Deployment Server command line option to load the most recent SF release information and installer hot fixes without Internet access

- ◆ At the command line, enter the following:

```
# ./deploy_sfha -load_metadata metadata_tar_file
```

where *metadata_tar_file* is the name of the metadata tar file where you want to load the most recent SF release information and installer hot fixes.

You can download the `.tar` file from the SORT site at:

https://sort.symantec.com/support/related_links/offline-release-updates

Or, you can create it by running the `deploy_sfha -download_metadata` command from a system that does have Internet access and can connect to the SORT site.

To use the Deployment Server command line option to download the most recent SF release information and installer hot fixes from the SORT site

- ◆ At the command line, enter the following:

```
# ./deploy_sfha -download_metadata
```

Viewing or downloading available release images

You can use the Deployment Server to conveniently view or download available SFHA release images to be deployed on other systems in your environment.

Note: If you have Internet access, communication with the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) provides the latest release information. If you do not have Internet access, static release matrix files are referenced, and the most recent updates may not be included.

See [“Updating release information on systems without Internet access”](#) on page 288.

To view or download available release images

1 Launch the Deployment Server.

```
# /opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha
```

You see the following output:

Task Menu:

```
R) Manage Repository Images      M) Update Metadata
V) Version Check Systems         S) Set Preferences
U) Upgrade/Install Systems      T) Terminology and Usage
?) Help                          Q) Quit
```

Enter a Task: [R,M,V,S,U,T,?,Q]

2 Select option R, **Manage Repository Images**.

You see the following output:

```
1) View/Download Available Releases
2) View/Remove Repository Images
3) Load a Release Image
b) Back to previous menu
```

Select the option you would like to perform [1-3,b,q,?]

3 Select option 1, **View/Download Available Releases**, to view or download what is currently installed on your system.

You see a list of platforms and release levels.

To view or download available releases, the platform type and release level type must be selected.

```
1) AIX 5.3                      2) AIX 6.1
3) AIX 7.1                      4) HP-UX 11.31
5) RHEL5 x86_64                 6) RHEL6 x86_64
7) SLES10 x86_64               8) SLES11 x86_64
9) Solaris 9 Sparc             10) Solaris 10 Sparc
11) Solaris 10 x64             12) Solaris 11 Sparc
13) Solaris 11 x64             b) Back to previous menu
```

Select the platform of the release to view/download [1-13,b,q]

- 4** Select the release level for which you want to get release image information. Enter the platform you want.

You see options for the Symantec release levels.

- 1) Base
- 2) Maintenance
- 3) Hot Fix
- b) Back to previous menu

Select the level of the <platform> releases to view/download
 [1-3,b,q,?]

- 5** Select the number corresponding to the type of release you want to view (Base, Maintenance, or Hot Fix).

You see a list of releases available for download.

Available Maintenance releases for sol10_sparc:

release_version	SORT_release_name	DL	OBS	AI	rel_date	size_KB
5.1SP1PR2RP2	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR2RP2	-	Y	Y	2011-09-28	145611
5.1SP1PR2RP3	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR2RP3	-	Y	Y	2012-10-02	153924
5.1SP1PR2RP4	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR2RP4	-	-	-	2013-08-21	186859
5.1SP1PR3RP2	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR3RP2	-	Y	Y	2011-09-28	145611
5.1SP1PR3RP3	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR3RP3	-	Y	Y	2012-10-02	153924
5.1SP1PR3RP4	sfha-sol10_sparc-5.1SP1PR3RP4	-	-	-	2013-08-21	186859
6.0RP1	sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1	Y	-	-	2012-03-22	245917
6.0.3	sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0.3	Y	-	-	2013-02-01	212507

Enter the release_version to view details about a release or press 'Enter' to continue [b,q,?]

The following are the descriptions for the column headers:

- release_version: The version of the release.
- SORT_release_name: The name of the release, used when accessing SORT (<https://sort.symantec.com>).
- DL: An indicator that the release is present in your repository.
- OBS: An indicator that the release has been obsoleted by another higher release.
- AI: An indicator that the release has scripted install capabilities. All base and maintenance releases have auto-install capabilities. Hot Fix releases

with auto-install capabilities are available beginning with version 6.1. Otherwise the hot fix will require a manual installation.

- `rel_date`: The date the release is available.
- `size_KB`: The file size of the release in kilobytes.

6 If you are interested in viewing more details about any release, type the release version. For example, enter the following:

6.0.3

You see the following output:

```
release_version: 6.0.3
release_name: sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0.3
release_type: MR
release_date: 2013-02-01
downloaded: Y
install_path: sol10_sparc/installmr
upload_location: ftp://ftp.veritas.com/pub/support/patchcentral
/Solaris/6.0.3/sfha/sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0.3-patches.tar.gz
obsoletes: 6.0.1.200-fs,6.0.1.200-vm,6.0.1.300-fs
obsoleted_by: None
Would you like to download this patch? [y,n,q] (y) n
```

Enter the `release_version` to view the details about a release or press 'Enter' to continue [b,q,?]

- 7 If you do not need to check detail information, you can press **Enter**.

You see the following question:

```
Would you like to download a sol10_sparc Maintenance Release Image?  
[y,n,q] (n) y
```

If you select a **y**, you see a menu of all releases that are not currently in the repository.

- ```
1) 5.1SP1PR1RP2
2) 5.1SP1PR1RP4
3) 6.0RP1
4) All non-obsolete releases
5) All releases
b) Back to previous menu
```

```
Select the patch release to download, 'All non-obsolete releases' to
download all non-obsolete releases, or 'All releases' to download
all releases [1-5,b,q] 3
```

- 8 Select the number corresponding to the release that you want to download. It is possible to download a single release, all non-obsolete releases, or all releases.

The selected release images are downloaded to the Deployment Server.

```
Downloading sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1 from SORT - https://sort.symantec.com
Downloading 215118373 bytes (Total 215118373 bytes [205.15 MB]): 100%
Untarring sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1 Done

sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1 has been downloaded successfully.
```

- 9 From the menu, select option **2, View/Remove Repository Images**, and follow the prompts to check that the release images are loaded.

See [“Viewing or downloading available release images”](#) on page 277.

## Viewing or removing repository images stored in your repository

You can use the Deployment Server to conveniently view or remove the release images that are stored in your repository.

## To view or remove release images stored in your repository

### 1 Launch the Deployment Server.

```
/opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha
```

You see the following output:

Task Menu:

```
R) Manage Repository Images M) Update Metadata
V) Version Check Systems S) Set Preferences
U) Upgrade/Install Systems T) Terminology and Usage
?) Help Q) Quit
```

Enter a Task: [R,M,V,S,U,T,?,Q]

### 2 Select option R, Manage Repository Images.

You see the following output:

```
1) View/Download Available Releases
2) View/Remove Repository Images
3) Load a Release Image
b) Back to previous menu
```

Select the option you would like to perform [1-3,b,q,?]

### 3 Select option 2, View/Remove Repository Images, to view or remove the release images currently installed on your system.

You see a list of platforms and release levels if you have downloaded the corresponding Base, Maintenance, or Hot Fix release on that platform.

To view or remove repository images, the platform type and release level type must be selected.

```
1) AIX 5.3 2) AIX 6.1
3) AIX 7.1 4) HP-UX 11.31
5) RHEL5 x86_64 6) RHEL6 x86_64
7) SLES10 x86_64 8) SLES11 x86_64
9) Solaris 9 Sparc 10) Solaris 10 Sparc
11) Solaris 10 x64 12) Solaris 11 Sparc
13) Solaris 11 x64 b) Back to previous menu
```

Select the platform of the release to view/remove [1-13,b,q]

- 4** Select the release level for which you want to get release image information. Enter the platform you want.

You see options for the Symantec release levels if you have downloaded the corresponding Base, Maintenance, or Hot Fix release.

- 1) Base
- 2) Maintenance
- 3) Hot Fix
- b) Back to previous menu

Select the level of the <platform> releases to view/remove  
 [1-3,b,q]

- 5** Select the number corresponding to the type of release you want to view or remove (Base, Maintenance, or Hot Fix).

You see a list of releases that are stored in your repository.

Stored Repository Releases:

| release_version | SORT_release_name       | OBS | AI |
|-----------------|-------------------------|-----|----|
| 6.0RP1          | sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1 | -   | Y  |
| 6.0.3           | sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0.3  | -   | Y  |

- 6** If you are interested in viewing more details about a release image stored in your repository, type the release version. For example, enter the following:

6.0.3

- 7 If you do not need to check detail information, you can press **Enter**.

You see the following question:

```
Would you like to remove a sol10_sparc Maintenance Release Image?
[y,n,q] (n) y
```

If you select a **y**, you see a menu of all releases stored in your repository that match the selected platform and release level.

```
1) 6.0RP1
2) 6.0.3
b) Back to previous menu
```

```
Select the patch release to remove [1-2,b,q] 1
```

- 8 Type the number corresponding to the release version you want to remove.

The release images are removed from the Deployment Server.

```
Removing sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1-patches Done
sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0RP1-patches has been removed successfully.
```

- 9 From the menu, select option **2, View/Remove Repository Images**, and follow the prompts to check that the release images are removed.

See [“Viewing or downloading available release images”](#) on page 277.

## Deploying Symantec product updates to your environment

After you install at least one Symantec 6.1 product on a server, you can use the Deployment Server to deploy release images to the systems in your environment as follows:

- If you are not sure what to deploy, perform a version check. A version check tells you if there are any Symantec products installed on your systems. It suggests patches and maintenance releases, and gives you the option to install updates.

See [“Finding out which releases you have, and which upgrades or updates you may need”](#) on page 285.

- If you know which update you want to deploy on your systems, use the Upgrade/Install Systems script to deploy a specific Symantec release. See [“Deploying a specific Symantec release”](#) on page 287.

## Finding out which releases you have, and which upgrades or updates you may need

Use the Version Check script to determine which Symantec product you need to deploy. The Version Check script is useful if you are not sure which releases you already have installed, or want to know about available releases.

The Version Check script gives the following information:

- Installed products and their versions (base, maintenance releases, and hot fixes)
- Installed packages (required and optional)
- Available releases (base, maintenance releases, and hot fixes) relative to the version which is installed on the system

### To determine which Symantec product updates to deploy

- 1 Launch the Deployment Server. For example, enter the following:

```
/opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha
```

You see the following output:

Task Menu:

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| R) Manage Repository Images | M) Update Metadata       |
| V) Version Check Systems    | S) Set Preferences       |
| U) Upgrade/Install Systems  | T) Terminology and Usage |
| ?) Help                     | Q) Quit                  |

Enter a Task: [R,M,V,S,U,T,?,Q]

- 2 Select option **V**, **Version Check Systems**.

- At the prompt, enter the system names for the systems you want to check. For example, enter the following:

```
sys1
```

You see output for the installed packages (required, optional, or missing).

You see a list of releases available for download.

```
Available Base Releases for Veritas Storage Foundation HA 6.0.1:
None
```

```
Available Maintenance Releases for Veritas Storage Foundation HA 6.0.1:
```

| release_version | SORT_release_name      | DL | OBS | AI | rel_date   | size_KB |
|-----------------|------------------------|----|-----|----|------------|---------|
| 6.0.3           | sfha-sol10_sparc-6.0.3 | Y  | -   | -  | 2013-02-01 | 212507  |

```
Available Public Hot Fixes for Veritas Storage Foundation HA 6.0.1:
```

| release_version | SORT_release_name        | DL | OBS | AI | rel_date   | size_KB |
|-----------------|--------------------------|----|-----|----|------------|---------|
| 6.0.1.200-fs    | fs-sol10_sparc-6.0.1.200 | -  | Y   | -  | 2012-09-20 | 14346   |
| 6.0.1.200-vm    | vm-sol10_sparc-6.0.1.200 | -  | Y   | -  | 2012-10-10 | 47880   |

```
Would you like to download the available Maintenance or Public Hot
Fix releases which cannot be found in the repository? [y,n,q] (n) y
```

- If you want to download any of the available maintenance releases or hot fixes, enter **y**.
- If you have not set a default repository for releases you download, the installer prompts you for a directory. (You can also set the default repository in **Set Preferences**).

See [“Setting deployment preferences”](#) on page 274.

You can also specify a non-default repository location using the command line.

See [“Using the Deployment Server command line option to specify a non-default repository location”](#) on page 275.

- Select an option for downloading products.

The installer downloads the releases you specified and stores them in the repository.

# Deploying a specific Symantec release

After you install at least one Symantec 6.1 product on a server, you can use the Deployment Server to deploy your licensed Symantec products dating back to version 5.1. If you know which product version you want to install, follow the steps in this section to install it.

## To deploy a specific Symantec release

- 1 From the directory in which you installed your Symantec product (version 6.1 or later), launch the Deployment Server with the upgrade and install systems option. For example, enter the following:

```
/opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha
```

You see the following output:

Task Menu:

```
R) Manage Repository Images M) Update Metadata
V) Version Check Systems S) Set Preferences
U) Upgrade/Install Systems T) Terminology and Usage
?) Help Q) Quit
```

Enter a Task: [R,M,V,S,U,T,?,Q]

- 2 Select option **U, Upgrade/Install Systems**.

You see the following output:

```
1) AIX 5.3
2) AIX 6.1
3) AIX 7.1
4) RHEL5 x86_64
b) Back to previous menu
```

Select the platform of the available release(s) to be upgraded/installed [1-4,b,q,?]

- 3 Select the number corresponding to the platform for the release you want to deploy. For example, select the number for the **RHEL5 x86\_64** release or the **AIX 6.1** release.
- 4 Select a Symantec product release.  
The installation script is executed and the release is deployed on the specified server.

## Updating release information on systems without Internet access

When you install the Deployment Server, the installation includes product metadata that includes information about Symantec, all prior base, maintenance, and hot fix releases across all the products and the platforms. If your system has Internet access, release matrix information is automatically updated from the Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) site with each use. If your system is behind a firewall, these updates are not possible and the release matrices eventually get out of date.

To update release information on systems without Internet access, you can download a `.tar` file (`deploy_sfha.tar`) containing all the latest release matrices. Then, load it on to your Deployment Server. The `deploy_sfha.tar` file available from the SORT site is updated on a daily basis, and there are typically several release updates every week captured in the updates.

[Downloading a .tar file from the SORT site](#)

[Loading releases and hot fixes onto your Deployment Server](#)

### Downloading a .tar file from the SORT site

To obtain a `.tar` file with release updates, the easiest method is to download a copy from the SORT website.

#### To download a .tar file from the SORT site

- 1 Navigate to the following link:  
[https://sort.symantec.com/support/related\\_links/offline-release-updates](https://sort.symantec.com/support/related_links/offline-release-updates)
- 2 Click on **deploy\_sfha.tar [Download]**.
- 3 Save the file to your desktop.

## Loading releases and hot fixes onto your Deployment Server

In this procedure, the Internet-enabled system is the system to which you downloaded the `deploy_sfha.tar` file.

### To load releases and hot fixes onto your Deployment Server

- 1 On the Internet-enabled system, copy the `deploy_sfha.tar` file you downloaded to a location accessible by the Deployment Server.
- 2 On the Deployment Server, change to the installation directory. For example, enter the following:

```
cd /opt/VRTS/install/
```

- 3 Run the Deployment Script. Enter the following:

```
./deploy_sfha
```

- 4 Select option **M, Update Metadata**, and enter the location of the `deploy_sfha.tar` file (the installer calls it a "meta-data tar file").

```
Enter the location of the meta-data tar file: [b]
(/opt/VRTS/install/deploy_sfha.tar)
```

For example, enter the location of the meta-data tar file:

```
/tmp/deploy_sfha.tar
```

## Upgrade of SFHA

- [Chapter 18. Planning to upgrade SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 19. Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Chapter 20. Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 21. Performing a phased upgrade of SFHA](#)
- [Chapter 22. Performing an automated SFHA upgrade using response files](#)
- [Chapter 23. Upgrading SFHA using Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade](#)
- [Chapter 24. Performing post-upgrade tasks](#)

# Planning to upgrade SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Upgrade methods for SFHA](#)
- [Supported upgrade paths for SFHA 6.1](#)
- [Considerations for upgrading SFHA to 6.1 on systems configured with an Oracle resource](#)
- [About using the installer to upgrade when the root disk is encapsulated](#)
- [Preparing to upgrade SFHA](#)
- [Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes](#)

## Upgrade methods for SFHA

Symantec offers you several different ways to upgrade. You need to decide which upgrade method best suits your environment, your expertise, and the downtime required.

**Table 18-1** Review this table to determine how you want to perform the upgrade

| Upgrade types and considerations                                                                                                                                   | Methods available for upgrade                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Typical upgrades—use a Symantec provided tool or you can perform the upgrade manually. Requires some server downtime.</p>                                       | <p>Script-based—you can use this method to upgrade for the supported upgrade paths</p> <p>Web-based—you can use this method to upgrade for the supported upgrade paths</p> <p>Manual—you can use this method to upgrade from the previous release</p> <p>Response file—you can use this method to upgrade from the supported upgrade paths</p> |
| <p>Rolling upgrade—use a Symantec provided tool or you can perform the upgrade manually. Requires the least amount of server downtime.</p>                         | <p>Script-based—you can use this method to upgrade from the previous release</p> <p>Web-based—you can use this method to upgrade from the previous release</p>                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>Phased upgrades—use a Symantec provided tool and some manual steps. Requires a lesser server downtime than a regular upgrade.</p>                               | <p>Script-based with some manual steps—you can use this method to upgrade from the previous release</p> <p>Web-based—you can use this method to upgrade from the previous release</p>                                                                                                                                                          |
| <p>Native operating system upgrade—use the upgrade software that comes with the operating system. Note that not all operating systems support native upgrades.</p> | <p>Operating system-specific methods</p> <p>Operating system upgrades</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <p>Upgrade from any supported UNIX or Linux platform to any other supported UNIX or Linux platform.</p>                                                            | <p>Deployment Server</p> <p>See <a href="#">“About the Deployment Server”</a> on page 269.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>Simultaneously upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes.</p>                                                                                   | <p>Install Bundles</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes”</a> on page 310.</p>                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Supported upgrade paths for SFHA 6.1

The following tables describe upgrading to 6.1.

**Table 18-2** Solaris SPARC upgrades using the script- or web-based installer

| Symantec product versions                   | Solaris 8 or older                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Solaris 9                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Solaris 10                                                                 | Solaris 11 |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 3.5<br>3.5 MP4<br>4.0<br>4.0 MP1<br>4.0 MP2 | <p>Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11, then upgrade product to 5.0 MP3. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For Symantec product version 3.5, upgrade to 3.5 MP4 prior to upgrading to 5.0 MP3. For Symantec product versions 4.0 and 4.0 MP1, upgrade to 4.0 MP2 prior to upgrading to 5.0 MP3.</p> | <p>Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11, then upgrade product to 5.0 MP3. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For Symantec product version 3.5, upgrade to 3.5 MP4 prior to upgrading to 5.0 MP3. For Symantec product versions 4.0 and 4.0 MP1, upgrade to 4.0 MP2 prior to upgrading to 5.0 MP3.</p> | N/A                                                                        | N/A        |
| 4.1<br>4.1 MP1<br>4.1 MP2<br>5.0<br>5.0 MP1 | <p>Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11, then upgrade product to 5.0 MP3. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11, then upgrade product to 5.0MP3. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Upgrade the product to 5.0 MP3. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script. | N/A        |

**Table 18-2** Solaris SPARC upgrades using the script- or web-based installer  
*(continued)*

| Symantec product versions                | Solaris 8 or older                                                                                                  | Solaris 9                                                                                                           | Solaris 10                                          | Solaris 11                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5.0 MP3<br>5.0 MP3 RPx                   | Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script. | Upgrade operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script.     | Upgrade directly to 6.1 using the installer script. | N/A                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 5.1<br>5.1 RPx<br>5.1 SP1<br>5.1 SP1 RPx | N/A                                                                                                                 | Upgrade the operating system to at least Solaris 10 Update 9, 10, or 11. Upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script. | Upgrade directly to 6.1 using the installer script. | N/A                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 6.0<br>6.0 RP1                           | N/A                                                                                                                 | N/A                                                                                                                 | Upgrade directly to 6.1 using the installer script. | N/A                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 6.0 PR1                                  | N/A                                                                                                                 | N/A                                                                                                                 | N/A                                                 | Upgrade operating system to one of the supported Solaris versions, and then upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script. See the <i>Storage Foundation and High Availability Release Notes</i> for the supported Solaris versions. |

**Table 18-2** Solaris SPARC upgrades using the script- or web-based installer (continued)

| Symantec product versions | Solaris 8 or older | Solaris 9 | Solaris 10                                          | Solaris 11                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6.0.1<br>6.0.3            | N/A                | N/A       | Upgrade directly to 6.1 using the installer script. | Upgrade operating system to one of the supported Solaris versions, and then upgrade to 6.1 using the installer script. See the <i>Storage Foundation and High Availability Release Notes</i> for the supported Solaris versions. |

**Note:** For upgrades from 6.0.1 or 6.0 PR1 to Solaris 11.0, a rolling upgrade is not supported. Instead perform a phased upgrade, a full upgrade, or a Live Upgrade.

**Note:** Starting with Solaris version 11.1, DMP native support provides support for ZFS root devices. On Solaris 11.1 or later, if DMP native support is enabled, then upgrading SFHA enables ZFS root support automatically. However, if you upgrade from a previous Solaris release to Solaris 11.1, DMP support for ZFS root devices is not automatically enabled. You must enable support explicitly.

## Considerations for upgrading SFHA to 6.1 on systems configured with an Oracle resource

If you plan to upgrade SFHA running on systems configured with an Oracle resource, set the `MonitorOption` attribute to 0 (zero) before you start the upgrade. If you use the product installer for the rolling upgrade, it sets the `MonitorOption` to 0 through its scripts. In a manual upgrade, the `MonitorOption` value must be set to 0 using the `hares` command. When the upgrade is complete, invoke the `build_oraapi.sh` script, and then set the `MonitorOption` to 1 to enable the Oracle health check.

For more information on enabling the Oracle health check, see the *Symantec Cluster Server Agent for Oracle Installation and Configuration Guide*.

# About using the installer to upgrade when the root disk is encapsulated

In prior versions of SFHA, when upgrading a system with an encapsulated root disk, you first had to unencapsulate. When upgrading to SFHA 6.1, that is no longer necessary, as shown in the table below.

**Table 18-3** Upgrading using the installer when the root disk is encapsulated

| Starting version       | Ending version | Action required                                                          |
|------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5.0 MP3 RPx            | 6.1            | Do not unencapsulate. The installer runs normally. Reboot after upgrade. |
| 5.1 or 5.1 RPx         | 6.1            | Do not unencapsulate. The installer runs normally. Reboot after upgrade. |
| 5.1 SP1 or 5.1 SP1 RPx | 6.1            | Do not unencapsulate. The installer runs normally. Reboot after upgrade. |
| 6.0 or 6.0 RPx         | 6.1            | Do not unencapsulate. The installer runs normally. Reboot after upgrade. |
| 6.0.1 or 6.0.3         | 6.1            | Do not unencapsulate. The installer runs normally. Reboot after upgrade. |

## Preparing to upgrade SFHA

Before you upgrade, you need to prepare the systems and storage. Review the following procedures and perform the appropriate tasks.

### Getting ready for the upgrade

Complete the following tasks before you perform the upgrade:

- Review the Symantec Technical Support website for additional information: <http://www.symantec.com/techsupp/>
- Perform the following system-level settings:

- Set `diag-level` to `min` to perform the minimum number of diagnostics when the system boots. Depending on the configuration of your systems you may want to turn it on after you perform the upgrade.

```
{1} ok setenv diag-level min

diag-level=min
```

- Set `auto-boot?` to `false`. For tight control when systems restart, set this variable to `false`. Re-enable this variable after the upgrade.

```
{1} ok setenv auto-boot? false

auto-boot?=false
```

- Deactivate cron to make sure that extraneous jobs are not performed while you upgrade the systems. Do one of the following:  
Solaris 9:

```
/etc/init.d/cron stop
```

Solaris 10:

```
svcadm disable -t svc:system/cron:default
```

Solaris 11:

```
ps -ef | grep cron
kill cron pid
svcadm disable svc:/system/cron:default
```

- If zones are present, make sure that all non-global zones are booted and are in the running state before you use the Symantec product installer to upgrade the Storage Foundation products in the global zone so that any packages present inside non-global zones also gets updated automatically.

For Oracle Solaris 10, if the non-global zones are not mounted and running at the time of the upgrade, you have to attach the zone with `-U` option to upgrade the SFHA packages inside non-global zone.

For Oracle Solaris 11.1, if the non-global zone has previous version of VCS packages (`VRTSperl`, `VRTSvlic`, `VRTSvcs`, `VRTSvcsag`, `VRTSvcssea`) already installed, then during upgrade of the VCS packages in global zone, packages inside non-global zone are automatically upgraded if the zone is in running state. If non-global zones are not in running state, you must set the Symantec publisher inside the global zone. You also must attach the zone with `-u` option to upgrade the SFHA packages inside non-global zone. If previous version of `VRTSvxfs`,

and `VRTSodm` packages are installed inside non-global zone, they must be uninstalled manually prior to the upgrade. Once the packages in global zone are upgraded, `VRTSvxfs` and `VRTSodm` must be installed manually inside non-global zone.

For Live Upgrade, if the alternative root environment also has a zone, you cannot install `VRTSodm`. You must remove the `VRTSodm` package first then install the Storage Foundation product. After you restart the alternative root, you can install `VRTSodm`.

- Make sure that the administrator who performs the upgrade has root access and a good knowledge of the operating system's administration.
- Make sure that all users are logged off and that all major user applications are properly shut down.
- Make sure that you have created a valid backup.  
See [“Creating backups”](#) on page 299.
- Ensure that you have enough file system space to upgrade. Identify where you want to copy the packages, for example `/packages/Veritas` when the root file system has enough space or `/var/tmp/packages` if the `/var` file system has enough space.  
Do not put the files under `/tmp`, which is erased during a system restart.  
Do not put the files on a file system that is inaccessible before running the upgrade script.  
You can use a Symantec-supplied disc for the upgrade as long as modifications to the upgrade script are not required.  
If `/usr/local` was originally created as a slice, modifications are required.
- Unmount all the file systems not on the `root disk`. Comment out their entries in `/etc/vfstab`. Stop the associated volumes and deport the associated disk groups. Any file systems that the Solaris operating system or Storage Foundation assumes should be in `rootdg` but are not, must be unmounted, and the associated entry in `/etc/vfstab` commented out.
- For any startup scripts in `/usr/sbin/svcadm disable`, comment out any application commands or processes that are known to hang if their file systems are not present.
- Make sure that the current operating system supports version 6.1 of the product. If the operating system does not support it, plan for a staged upgrade.
- Schedule sufficient outage time and downtime for the upgrade and any applications that use the Symantec products. Depending on the configuration, the outage can take several hours.

- Any swap partitions not in `rootdg` must be commented out of `/etc/vfstab`. If possible, swap partitions other than those on the root disk should be commented out of `/etc/vfstab` and not mounted during the upgrade. The active swap partitions that are not in `rootdg` cause `upgrade_start` to fail.
- Make sure that the file systems are clean before upgrading. See [“Verifying that the file systems are clean”](#) on page 308.
- Symantec recommends that you upgrade VxFS disk layouts to a supported version before installing VxFS 6.1. Unsupported disk layout versions 4, 5, and 6 can be mounted for the purpose of online upgrading in VxFS 6.1. You can upgrade unsupported layout versions online before installing VxFS 6.1.
- Upgrade arrays (if required). See [“Upgrading the array support”](#) on page 309.
- To reliably save information on a mirrored disk, shut down the system and physically remove the mirrored disk. Removing the disk in this manner offers a failback point.
- Determine if the root disk is encapsulated. See [“Determining if the root disk is encapsulated”](#) on page 301.
- If CP server-based coordination points are used in your current fencing configuration, then check that your CP servers are upgraded to 6.1 before starting the upgrade process.
- Make sure that DMP support for native stack is disabled (`dmp_native_support=off`). If DMP support for native stack is enabled (`dmp_native_support=on`), the installer may detect it and ask you to restart the system.

## Creating backups

Save relevant system information before the upgrade.

### To create backups

- 1 Log in as superuser.
- 2 Before the upgrade, ensure that you have made backups of all data that you want to preserve.

Back up the `/etc/system` file.

- 3 Installer verifies that recent backups of configuration files in VxVM private region have been saved in `/etc/vx/cbr/bk`.

If not, a warning message is displayed.

---

**Warning:** Backup `/etc/vx/cbr/bk` directory.

---

- 4 Copy the `vfstab` file to `vfstab.orig`:

```
cp /etc/vfstab /etc/vfstab.orig
```

- 5 Run the `vxlicrep`, `vxdisk list`, and `vxprint -ht` commands and record the output. Use this information to reconfigure your system after the upgrade.
- 6 If you install the high availability version of the Symantec Storage Foundation 6.1 software, follow the guidelines that are given in the *Symantec Cluster Server Installation Guide* and *Symantec Cluster Server Release Notes* for information on preserving your VCS configuration across the installation procedure.
- 7 Back up the external `quotas` and `quotas.grp` files.

If you are upgrading from 6.0.3, you must also back up the `quotas.grp.64` and `quotas.64` files.

- 8 If you are planning on performing a Phased or Rolling upgrade from 6.0.3 and use `quotas`, you need to disable them:

```
vxquotaoff -av
```

- 9 Verify that `quotas` are turned off on all the mounted file systems.

## Tasks for upgrading the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB)

Tasks for upgrading SFDB tools to version 6.1:

- Preparing to migrate the repository database before upgrading from 5.0x or earlier to 6.1  
 See [“Pre-upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database”](#) on page 301.
- Migrating the repository database after upgrading from 5.0.x or earlier to 6.1  
 See [“Post upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database”](#) on page 398.

---

**Caution:** If you are running Oracle version 11.1.0.6 and upgrading a Storage Foundation product to 6.1: upgrade the Oracle binaries and database to version 11.1.0.7 before moving to 6.1.

---

## Determining if the root disk is encapsulated

Before you upgrade, you need to determine if the root disk is encapsulated by running the following command:

```
mount | grep "/" on"
```

If the output from this command includes a path name that contains `vx` and `rootvol` as in `/dev/vx/dsk/bootdg/rootvol`, then the root disk is encapsulated.

If the root disk is encapsulated, follow the appropriate upgrade procedures.

See [“About using the installer to upgrade when the root disk is encapsulated”](#) on page 296.

## Pre-upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database

---

**Note:** The `Sfua_Base` repository resource group will be removed from the `main.cf` file. It is not required as a separate service group for SFHA 6.1.

---

Perform the following before upgrading SFHA.

### To prepare to migrate the repository database

- ◆ Resynchronize all existing snapshots before upgrading. As Oracle user, enter:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S $ORACLE_SID \
-f SNAPPLAN -o resync
```

---

**Warning:** The Database Flashsnap clone database will not be able to be carried over after upgrading. You must create a new Database Flashsnap clone database after upgrading to 6.1.

---

## Pre-upgrade planning for Volume Replicator

Before installing or upgrading Volume Replicator (VVR):

- Confirm that your system has enough free disk space to install VVR.

- Make sure you have root permissions. You must have root permissions to perform the install and upgrade procedures.
- If replication using VVR is configured, Symantec recommends that the disk group version is at least 110 prior to upgrading.  
 You can check the Disk Group version using the following command:

```
vxdg list diskgroup
```

- If replication using VVR is configured, make sure the size of the SRL volume is greater than 110 MB.  
 Refer to the *Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide*.
- If replication using VVR is configured, verify that all the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date on all the hosts.

```
/usr/sbin/vxrlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

---

**Note:** Do not continue until the primary RLINKs are up-to-date.

---

- If VCS is used to manage VVR replication, follow the preparation steps to upgrade VVR and VCS agents.
- Make sure that you have worked out all terminal emulation issues. Make sure that the terminal you use is fully functional for OpenBoot prompts and single-user and multi-user run levels.

See the *Symantec Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for more information.

See the *Getting Started Guide* for more information on the documentation.

## Planning an upgrade from the previous VVR version

If you plan to upgrade VVR from the previous VVR version, you can upgrade VVR with reduced application downtime by upgrading the hosts at separate times. While the Primary is being upgraded, the application can be migrated to the Secondary, thus reducing downtime. The replication between the (upgraded) Primary and the Secondary, which have different versions of VVR, will still continue. This feature facilitates high availability even when the VVR upgrade is not complete on both the sites. Symantec recommends that the Secondary hosts be upgraded before the Primary host in the Replicated Data Set (RDS).

See the *Symantec Storage Foundation Release Notes* for information regarding VVR support for replicating across Storage Foundation versions.

Replicating between versions is intended to remove the restriction of upgrading the Primary and Secondary at the same time. VVR can continue to replicate an existing RDS with Replicated Volume Groups (RVGs) on the systems that you want to upgrade. When the Primary and Secondary are at different versions, VVR does not support changing the configuration with the `vradmin` command or creating a new RDS.

Also, if you specify TCP as the network protocol, the VVR versions on the Primary and Secondary determine whether the checksum is calculated. As shown in [Table 18-4](#), if either the Primary or Secondary are running a version of VVR prior to 6.1, and you use the TCP protocol, VVR calculates the checksum for every data packet it replicates. If the Primary and Secondary are at VVR 6.1, VVR does not calculate the checksum. Instead, it relies on the TCP checksum mechanism.

**Table 18-4** VVR versions and checksum calculations

| VVR prior to 6.1<br>(DG version <= 140) | VVR 6.1<br>(DG version >= 150) | VVR calculates<br>checksum TCP<br>connections? |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Primary                                 | Secondary                      | Yes                                            |
| Secondary                               | Primary                        | Yes                                            |
| Primary and Secondary                   |                                | Yes                                            |
|                                         | Primary and Secondary          | No                                             |

---

**Note:** When replicating between versions of VVR, avoid using commands associated with new features. The earlier version may not support new features and problems could occur.

---

If you do not need to upgrade all the hosts in the RDS simultaneously, you can use replication between versions after you upgrade one host. You can then upgrade the other hosts in the RDS later at your convenience.

---

**Note:** If you have a cluster setup, you must upgrade all the nodes in the cluster at the same time.

---

### Planning and upgrading VVR to use IPv6 as connection protocol

Storage Foundation and High Availability supports using IPv6 as the connection protocol.

This release supports the following configurations for VVR:

- VVR continues to support replication between IPv4-only nodes with IPv4 as the internet protocol
- VVR supports replication between IPv4-only nodes and IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack nodes with IPv4 as the internet protocol
- VVR supports replication between IPv6-only nodes and IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack nodes with IPv6 as the internet protocol
- VVR supports replication between IPv6 only nodes
- VVR supports replication to one or more IPv6 only nodes and one or more IPv4 only nodes from a IPv4/IPv6 dual-stack node
- VVR supports replication of a shared disk group only when all the nodes in the cluster that share the disk group are at IPv4 or IPv6

## Additional settings for using VVR in a localized environment

If the language packages for VVR are installed, VVR displays localized messages, if the client locale is a supported non-English locale. The client locale is the locale from which you are accessing the VVR command line or GUI. For example, if the Japanese version of VVR is installed, then the messages are displayed in the Japanese locale, if the client locale is Japanese.

Make sure that the appropriate locale has been installed on all the hosts that are intended to be a part of the VVR RDS setup. Otherwise, some VVR error messages will be displayed in English, because it is the default locale. Make sure the following settings are done on all hosts that are intended to be part of the RDS:

- Install the required client locale from the Operating System disc.
- Install the required Volume Manager and VVR localized packages.
- Set the client locale, before using any of the VVR interfaces:
  - For the VVR command line, set the locale using the appropriate method for your operating system.
  - For VRW, select the locale from the VRW login page.

## Preparing to upgrade VVR when VCS agents are configured

To prepare to upgrade VVR when VCS agents for VVR are configured, perform the following tasks in the order presented:

- [Freezing the service groups and stopping all the applications](#)
- [Preparing for the upgrade when VCS agents are configured](#)

## Freezing the service groups and stopping all the applications

This section describes how to freeze the service groups and stop all applications.

To freeze the service groups and stop applications

**Perform the following steps for the Primary and Secondary clusters:**

- 1 Log in as the superuser.
- 2 Make sure that `/opt/VRTS/bin` is in your PATH so that you can execute all the product commands.
- 3 Before the upgrade, cleanly shut down all applications.
  - OFFLINE all application service groups that do not contain RVG resources. Do not OFFLINE the service groups containing RVG resources.
  - If the application resources are part of the same service group as an RVG resource, then OFFLINE only the application resources. In other words, ensure that the RVG resource remains ONLINE so that the private disk groups containing these RVG objects do not get deported.

---

**Note:** You must also stop any remaining applications not managed by VCS.

---

- 4 On any node in the cluster, make the VCS configuration writable:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 5 On any node in the cluster, list the groups in your configuration:

```
hagrps -list
```

- 6 On any node in the cluster, freeze all service groups except the ClusterService group by typing the following command for each group name displayed in the output from step 5.

```
hagrps -freeze group_name -persistent<sys_name>
```

---

**Note:** Make a note of the list of frozen service groups for future use.

---

- 7 On any node in the cluster, save the configuration file (`main.cf`) with the groups frozen:

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

---

**Note:** Continue only after you have performed steps 3 to step 7 for each node of the cluster.

---

- 8 Display the list of service groups that have RVG resources and the nodes on which each service group is online by typing the following command on any node in the cluster:

```
hares -display -type RVG -attribute State
Resource Attribute System Value
VVRGrp State sys2 ONLINE
ORAGrp State sys2 ONLINE
```

---

**Note:** For the resources that are ONLINE, write down the nodes displayed in the System column of the output.

---

- 9 Repeat step 8 for each node of the cluster.
- 10 For private disk groups, determine and note down the hosts on which the disk groups are imported.

See [“Determining the nodes on which disk groups are online”](#) on page 306.

### Determining the nodes on which disk groups are online

For private disk groups, determine and note down the hosts on which the disk groups containing RVG resources are imported. This information is required for restoring the configuration after the upgrade.

### To determine the online disk groups

- 1 On any node in the cluster, list the disk groups in your configuration, and note down the disk group names listed in the output for future use:

```
hares -display -type RVG -attribute DiskGroup
```

---

**Note:** Write down the list of the disk groups that are under VCS control.

---

- 2 For each disk group listed in the output in step 1, list its corresponding disk group resource name:

```
hares -list DiskGroup=diskgroup Type=DiskGroup
```

- 3 For each disk group resource name listed in the output in step 2, get and note down the node on which the disk group is imported by typing the following command:

```
hares -display dg_resname -attribute State
```

The output displays the disk groups that are under VCS control and nodes on which the disk groups are imported.

## Preparing for the upgrade when VCS agents are configured

If you have configured the VCS agents, it is recommended that you take backups of the configuration files, such as `main.cf` and `types.cf`, which are present in the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config` directory.

### To prepare a configuration with VCS agents for an upgrade

- 1 List the disk groups on each of the nodes by typing the following command on each node:

```
vxdisk -o alldgs list
```

The output displays a list of the disk groups that are under VCS control and the disk groups that are not under VCS control.

---

**Note:** The disk groups that are not locally imported are displayed in parentheses.

---

- 2 If any of the disk groups have not been imported on any node, import them. For disk groups in your VCS configuration, you can import them on any node. For disk groups that are not under VCS control, choose an appropriate node on which to import the disk group. Enter the following command on the appropriate node:

```
vxdg -t import diskgroup
```

- 3 If a disk group is already imported, then recover the disk group by typing the following command on the node on which it is imported:

```
vxrecover -bs
```

- 4 Verify that all the Primary RLINKs are up to date.

```
vxrlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

---

**Note:** Do not continue until the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date.

---

## Verifying that the file systems are clean

Verify that all file systems have been cleanly unmounted.

## To make sure the file systems are clean

- 1 Verify that all file systems have been cleanly unmounted:

```
echo "8192B.p S" | /opt/VRTS/bin/fsdb filesystem | \
 grep clean
 flags 0 mod 0 clean clean_value
```

A *clean\_value* value of `0x5a` indicates the file system is clean. A value of `0x3c` indicates the file system is dirty. A value of `0x69` indicates the file system is dusty. A dusty file system has pending extended operations.

- 2 If a file system is not clean, enter the following commands for that file system:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/fsck -F vxfs filesystem
/opt/VRTS/bin/mount -F vxfs Block_Device
 mountpoint
/opt/VRTS/bin/umount mountpoint
```

These commands should complete any extended operations on the file system and unmount the file system cleanly.

A pending large package clone removal extended operation might be in progress if the `umount` command fails with the following error:

```
file system device busy
```

An extended operation is in progress if the following message is generated on the console:

```
Storage Checkpoint asynchronous operation on file_system
file system still in progress.
```

- 3 If an extended operation is in progress, you must leave the file system mounted for a longer time to allow the operation to complete. Removing a very large package clone can take several hours.
- 4 Repeat step 1 to verify that the unclean file system is now clean.

## Upgrading the array support

The Storage Foundation 6.1 release includes all array support in a single package, `VRTSaslapm`. The array support package includes the array support previously included in the `VRTSvxvm` package. The array support package also includes support previously packaged as external Array Support Libraries (ASLs) and array policy modules (APMs).

See the 6.1 Hardware Compatibility List for information about supported arrays.

## Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes

When you upgrade Storage Foundation products with the product installer, the installer automatically upgrades the array support. If you upgrade Storage Foundation products with manual steps, you should remove any external ASLs or APMs that were installed previously on your system. Installing the `VRTSvxvm` package exits with an error if external ASLs or APMs are detected.

After you have installed Storage Foundation 6.1, Symantec provides support for new disk arrays through updates to the `VRTSaslapm` package.

For more information about array support, see the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

## Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes

Beginning with version 6.1, Symantec offers you a method to easily install or upgrade your systems directly to a base, maintenance, or hot fix level in one step using Install Bundles. With Install Bundles, the installers have the ability to merge so that customers can install or upgrade directly to maintenance or hot fix levels in one execution. The various scripts, packages, and patch components are merged, and multiple releases are installed together as if they are one combined release. You do not have to perform two or more install actions to install or upgrade systems to maintenance levels or hot fix levels.

Releases are divided into the following categories:

**Table 18-5** Release Levels

| Level       | Content             | Form factor       | Applies to     | Release types                                          | Download location                          |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Base        | Features            | packages          | All products   | Major, minor, Service Pack (SP), Platform Release (PR) | FileConnect                                |
| Maintenance | Fixes, new features | packages, patches | All products   | Maintenance Release (MR)                               | Symantec Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) |
| Hot fix     | Fixes               | packages          | Single product | P-Patch, Public hot fix, Private hot fix               | SORT, Support site                         |

**Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes**

When you install or upgrade using Install Bundles:

- SFHA products are discovered and assigned as a single version to the maintenance level. Each system can also have one or more hot fixes applied.
- Base releases are accessible from FileConnect that requires customer serial numbers. Maintenance and hot fix releases can be automatically downloaded from SORT. You can download them from the SORT website manually or use the `deploy_sfha` script.
- Public hot fix releases can be installed using automated installers from the 6.1 version or later.
- Private hot fixes can now be detected to prevent upgrade conflict. Private hot fix releases are not offered as a combined release. They are only available from Symantec Technical Support on a need basis.

You can use the `-base_path` and `-hotfix_path` options to import installation code from multiple releases. You can find packages and patches from different media paths, and merge package and patch definitions for multiple releases. You can use these options to use new task and phase functionality to correctly perform required operations for each release component. You can install the packages and patches in defined phases using these options, which helps you when you want to perform a single start or stop process and perform pre and post operations for all level in a single operation.

Four possible methods of integration exist. All commands must be executed from the highest base or maintenance level install script.

For example:

1. Base + maintenance:

This integration method can be used when you install or upgrade from a lower version to 6.1.1.

Enter the following command:

```
installmr -base_path <path_to_base>
```

2. Base + hot fix:

This integration method can be used when you install or upgrade from a lower version to 6.1.0.100.

Enter the following command:

```
installer -hotfix_path <path_to_hotfix>
```

3. Maintenance + hot fix:

**Using Install Bundles to simultaneously install or upgrade base releases, maintenance patches, and hot fixes**

This integration method can be used when you upgrade from version 6.1 to 6.1.1.100.

Enter the following command:

```
installmr -hotfix_path <path_to_hotfix>
```

4. Base + maintenance + hot fix:

This integration method can be used when you install or upgrade from a lower version to 6.1.1.100.

Enter the following command:

```
installmr -base_path <path_to_base>
-hotfix_path <path_to_hotfix>
```

---

**Note:** For the 6.1 release, you can add a maximum of five hot fixes using  
-hotfix\_path <path\_to\_hotfix> -hotfix2\_path <path\_to\_hotfix> ... -hotfix5\_path  
<path\_to\_hotfix>

---

# Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer when OS upgrade is not required](#)
- [Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability to 6.1 using the product installer or manual steps](#)
- [Upgrading SFHA using the web-based installer](#)
- [Upgrading the Solaris operating system](#)
- [Upgrading Volume Replicator](#)
- [Upgrading language packages](#)

## Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer when OS upgrade is not required

This section describes upgrading to the current Storage Foundation and High Availability if the root disk is unencapsulated, and you do not intend to upgrade your Solaris version. Only use this procedure if you are already running a version of Solaris that is supported with 6.1.

### To upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability

- 1 Log in as superuser.
- 2 If the root disk is encapsulated under VxVM, unmirror and unencapsulate the root disk as described in the following steps, to be performed in the order listed:

- Use the `vxplex` command to remove all the plexes of the volumes `rootvol`, `swapvol`, `usr`, `var`, `opt`, and `home` that are on disks other than the root disk. For example, the following command removes the plexes `mirrootvol-01`, and `mirswapvol-01` that are configured on a disk other than the root disk:

```
vxplex -o rm dis mirrootvol-01 mirswapvol-01
```

---

**Warning:** Do not remove the plexes on the root disk that corresponds to the original disk partitions.

---

- Enter the following command to convert all the encapsulated volumes in the root disk back to being accessible directly through disk partitions instead of through volume devices.

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxunroot
```

Following the removal of encapsulation, the system is restarted from the unencapsulated root disk.

If your system is running VxVM 4.1 MP2, the following remnants of encapsulation are still present:

- Partition table entries for the private regions and public regions
  - GRUB or LILO configuration entries for VxVM
- 3 Unmount any mounted VxFS file systems.

The installer supports the upgrade of multiple hosts, if each host is running the same version of VxVM and VxFS. Hosts must be upgraded separately if they are running different versions.

- 4 If you want to upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability, take all service groups offline.

List all service groups:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -list
```

For each service group listed, take it offline:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -offline service_group \
-sys system_name
```

- 5 Enter the following commands on each node to freeze HA service group operations:

```
haconf -makerw
hasys -freeze -persistent nodename
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 6 If your system has separate `/opt` and `/var` file systems, make sure that they are mounted before proceeding with installation.
- 7 If replication using VVR is configured, verify that all the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date:

```
/usr/sbin/vxlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

---

**Note:** Do not continue until the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date.

---

- 8 Load and mount the disc. If you downloaded the software, navigate to the top level of the download directory.
- 9 From the disc, run the `installer` command. If you downloaded the software, run the `./installer` command.

```
cd /cdrom/cdrom0
./installer
```

- 10 Enter `g` to upgrade and select the **Full Upgrade**.

- 11** You are prompted to enter the system names (in the following example, "sys1") on which the software is to be installed. Enter the system name or names and then press Return.

```
Enter the system names separated by spaces on which to
install SFHA: sys1 sys2
```

Depending on your existing configuration, various messages and prompts may appear. Answer the prompts appropriately.

- 12** The installer asks if you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement. Press **y** to agree and continue.
- 13** The installer lists the packages to install or to update. You are prompted to confirm that you are ready to upgrade.
- 14** The installer discovers if any of the systems that you want to upgrade have mirrored and encapsulated boot disks. For each system that has a mirrored boot disk, you have the option to create a backup of the system's boot disk group before the upgrade proceeds. If you want to split the boot disk group to create a backup, answer **y**.
- 15** The installer then prompts you to name the backup boot disk group. Enter the name for it or press **Enter** to accept the default.
- 16** You are prompted to start the split operation. Press **y** to continue.

---

**Note:** The split operation can take some time to complete.

---

- 17** Stop the product's processes.

```
Do you want to stop SFHA processes now? [y,n,q] (y) y
```

If you select **y**, the installer stops the product processes and makes some configuration updates before it upgrades.

- 18** The installer stops, uninstalls, reinstalls, and starts specified packages.
- 19** If the upgrade was done from 5.0 or if the Storage Foundation and High Availability was done without `vxkeyless` keys, the installer shows the following warning:

```
CPI WARNING V-9-40-5323 SFHA license version 5.0 is not
updated to 6.1 on sys1. It's recommended to upgrade to a 6.1 key.
CPI WARNING V-9-40-5323 SFHA license version 5.0 is not updated
to 6.1 on sys2. It's recommended to upgrade to a 6.1 key.
SFHA is licensed on the systems.
Do you wish to enter additional licenses? [y,n,q,b] (n) n
```

- 20 The Storage Foundation and High Availability software is verified and configured.
- 21 The installer prompts you to provide feedback, and provides the log location for the upgrade.
- 22 Restart the nodes when the installer prompts restart. Then, unfreeze the nodes and start the cluster by entering the following:

```
haconf -makerw
hasys -unfreeze -persistent nodename
haconf -dump -makero
hastart
```

- 23 Only perform this step if you have split the mirrored root disk to back it up. After a successful restart, verify the upgrade and re-join the backup disk group into the upgraded boot disk group. If the upgrade fails, revert the upgrade boot disk group to the backup disk group.

See [“Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group”](#) on page 397.

See [“Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade”](#) on page 397.

## Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability to 6.1 using the product installer or manual steps

This section describes upgrading SFHA from a previous release to 6.1. Symantec recommends that you perform this upgrade from single-user mode.

No VxFS file systems can be in use at the time of the upgrade.

Choose the appropriate procedure for your situation.

- If the current Storage Foundation product is installed on an operating system supported by 6.1, you do not need to upgrade the operating system. If you do not plan to upgrade the operating system, use one of the following upgrade procedures:
  - Upgrade SF but not OS with the product installer.  
For the recommended upgrade procedure:  
See [“Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer”](#) on page 318.

- Upgrade SF but not OS with manual steps (`pkgadd` command).
- If you plan to upgrade the operating system, you must perform additional steps to upgrade. If the current Storage Foundation product is installed on an operating system which is no longer supported by 6.1, you must upgrade the operating system. If you plan to upgrade the operating system, use the following upgrade procedure:  
See "[Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation to 6.1 using upgrade scripts \(OS upgrade\)](#)" on page 320.

## Upgrading Storage Foundation and High Availability with the product installer

This section describes upgrading to the current Storage Foundation and High Availability, and you do not intend to upgrade your Solaris version. Only use this procedure if you are already running a version of Solaris that is supported with 6.1.

### To upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability

- 1 Log in as superuser.
- 2 Unmount any mounted VxFS file systems.

The installer supports the upgrade of multiple hosts, if each host is running the same version of VxVM and VxFS. Hosts must be upgraded separately if they are running different versions.

If any VxFS file systems are mounted with the QuickLog feature, QuickLog must be disabled before you upgrade. See the "Veritas QuickLog" chapter of the *Veritas File System Administrator's Guide* for more information.

- 3 If you upgrade a high availability (HA) product, take all service groups offline.

List all service groups:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -list
```

For each service group listed, take it offline:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -offline service_group \
-sys system_name
```

- 4 Enter the following commands on each node to freeze HA service group operations:

```
haconf -makerw
hasys -freeze -persistent nodename
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 5 If your system has separate `/opt` and `/var` file systems, make sure that they are mounted before proceeding with installation.
- 6 If replication using VVR is configured, verify that all the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date:

```
vxlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

---

**Note:** Do not continue until the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date.

---

- 7 Load and mount the disc.  
See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.
- 8 To invoke the common installer, run the `installer` command on the disc as shown in this example:

```
cd /cdrom/cdrom0
./installer
```

- 9 Enter `c` to upgrade and press Return.
- 10 You are prompted to enter the system names (in the following example, "host1"). Enter the system name or names and then press Return.

```
Enter the system names separated by spaces on which to
install SFHA: host1
```

Depending on your existing configuration, various messages and prompts may appear. Answer the prompts appropriately.

- 11 Installer asks if you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement. Press `y` to agree and continue.
- 12 You can perform this step if you want to upgrade from SFHA 5.1 SP1 for Solaris.  
The installer discovers if any of the systems that you want to upgrade have mirrored and encapsulated boot disks. For each system that has a mirrored boot disk, you have the option to create a backup of the system's boot disk group before the upgrade proceeds. If you want to split the boot disk group to create a backup, answer `y`.

---

**Note:** Splitting the mirrors for the root disk group backup requires a restart upon completion of the upgrade.

---

- 13** The installer then prompts you to name the backup boot disk group. Enter the name for it or press **Enter** to accept the default.

---

**Note:** The split operation can take some time to complete.

---

- 14** You are prompted to start the split operation. Press **y** to continue.

- 15** Stop the product's processes.

```
Do you want to stop SFHA processes now? ? [y,n,q] (y) y
```

- 16** The installer lists the packages to install or upgrade, and performs the installation or upgrade.

- 17** If the upgrade was done from 5.0 or if the Storage Foundation and High Availability was done without `vxkeyless` keys, the installer shows the following warning:

```
CPI WARNING V-9-40-5323 SFHA license version 5.0 is not
updated to 6.1 on sys1. It's recommended to upgrade to a 6.1 key.
CPI WARNING V-9-40-5323 SFHA license version 5.0 is not updated
to 6.1 on sys2. It's recommended to upgrade to a 6.1 key.
SFHA is licensed on the systems
Do you wish to enter additional licenses? [y,n,q,b] (n) n
```

- 18** The installer verifies, configures, and starts the Symantec Storage Foundation software.

- 19** Only perform this step if you have split the boot disk group into a backup disk group. After a successful restart, verify the upgrade and re-join the backup disk group. If the upgrade fails, revert to the backup disk group.

See [“Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group”](#) on page 397.

See [“Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade”](#) on page 397.

## Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation to 6.1 using upgrade scripts (OS upgrade)

This section describes upgrading to the current Symantec Storage Foundation and the need to upgrade the Solaris version. If the operating system is not at a supported Solaris version, you must follow this procedure.

This upgrade procedure lets you retain existing VxVM and VxFS configurations. After upgrading, you can resume using your file systems and volumes as before (without having to run `vxinstall` again).

These steps have to be followed in the specified order.

### To begin the upgrade

- 1 If VCS agents for VVR are configured, you must perform the pre-upgrade steps before proceeding.

See [“Preparing to upgrade VVR when VCS agents are configured”](#) on page 304.

- 2 Load and mount the disc.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

- 3 Verify that an upgrade is possible on the system. Enter the following command:

```
/dvd_mount/scripts/upgrade_start -check
```

- 4 Run the `upgrade_start` script to preserve the previous configuration of Volume Manager.

```
/dvd_mount/scripts/upgrade_start
```

- 5 If the `upgrade_start` script fails for any reason, run the `upgrade_finish` script to undo any changes already made. Compare `/etc/system`, `/etc/vfstab`, and the output of the `format` command and verify that the system is restored. Then determine and correct the cause of the `upgrade_start` failure. If you cannot correct the problem in a timely manner, restore the `vfstab` file to the version saved, restore any other applications, and perform an `init 6` to completely restore the system.

- 6 Verify that all the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date on all the hosts.

```
vxrlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

---

**Caution:** Do not continue until the Primary RLINKs are up-to-date.

---

- 7 If VVR is configured, run the `vvr_upgrade_start` script on all hosts to save the original VVR configuration:

```
/dvd_mount/scripts/vvr_upgrade_start
```

- 8 If you have VxFS file systems specified in the `/etc/vfstab` file, comment them out.

- 9** Remove the existing Storage Foundation packages in one of the following ways:

- Using the `uninstallsfha` script
- Using the `pkgrm` command

For details, refer to the *Storage Foundation Installation Guide* for the existing Storage Foundation version.

After you run the `uninstallsfha` script, verify that all VRTS\* packages are removed; otherwise, remove them manually using `pkgrm`.

- 10** If you want to upgrade the operating system, do so now.

Refer to the Solaris installation documentation.

- 11** Install the Storage Foundation packages in one of the following ways:

- Using the common installer  
See [“To upgrade the Symantec Storage Foundation packages with the product installer”](#) on page 322.
- Using manual steps  
See [“To upgrade the Symantec Storage Foundation packages with manual steps”](#) on page 323.

### To upgrade the Symantec Storage Foundation packages with the product installer

- 1** Load and mount the disc.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

- 2** To invoke the common installer, run the `installer` command on the disc as shown in this example:

```
cd /dvd_mount
./installer
```

- 3** Select **I** to upgrade the product. The installer asks you if you want to use the previous configuration.
- 4** Depending on your existing configuration, various messages and prompts may appear. Answer the prompts appropriately.
- 5** If you commented out VxFS File System entries in the `/etc/vfstab` file, uncomment them.
- 6** Complete the upgrade by restoring the configuration.

**To upgrade the Symantec Storage Foundation packages with manual steps**

- 1 If you want to upgrade from Symantec Storage Foundation for DB2 or Symantec Storage Foundation for Oracle, resynchronize all existing snapshots before upgrading.

For Symantec Storage Foundation for DB2:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/db2ed_vmsnap -D DB2DATABASE -f SNAPPLAN \
-o resync
```

For Symantec Storage Foundation for Oracle:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_vmsnap -S $ORACLE_SID -f SNAPPLAN \
-o resync
```

- 2 Load and mount the software disc.
- 3 Change to the directory containing the packages.
- 4 Run the following command to obtain a list of recommended packages to install:

```
./installsfha -recpkgs
```

Run the following command to obtain a list of all packages to install:

```
./installsfha -allpkgs
```

- 5 Add packages with the `pkgadd` command.
- 6 If you commented out VxFS File System entries in the `/etc/vfstab` file, uncomment them.
- 7 Complete the upgrade by restoring the configuration.

**Restoring the configuration and completing the upgrade**

- 1 Complete the upgrade using the `upgrade_finish` script.

```
devlinks
/dvd_mount/scripts/upgrade_finish
```

- 2 Configure the product using the following command:

```
/dvd_mount/installer -configure
```

If some Veritas modules fail to unload, perform the following steps:

- Restart the systems.
- 3 Importing a pre-6.1 Veritas Volume Manager disk group does not automatically upgrade the disk group version to the VxVM 6.1 level. You may need to manually upgrade each of your disk groups following a VxVM upgrade.  
See “[Upgrading VxVM disk group versions](#)” on page 409.

## Upgrading SFHA using the web-based installer

This section describes upgrading SFHA with the web-based installer. The installer detects and upgrades the product that is currently installed on the specified system or systems.

### To upgrade SFHA

- 1 Perform the required steps to save any data that you want to preserve. For example, make configuration file backups.
- 2 If you want to upgrade a high availability (HA) product, take all service groups offline. List all service groups:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -list
```

For each service group listed, take it offline:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hagrp -offline service_group -any
```

- 3 Start the web-based installer.  
See “[Starting the web-based installer](#)” on page 171.
- 4 Indicate the systems on which to upgrade. Enter one or more system names, separated by spaces. Click **Next**.
- 5 Installer detects the product that is installed on the specified system. It shows the cluster information and lets you confirm if you want to perform upgrade on the cluster. Select **Yes** and click **Next**.
- 6 The installer discovers if any of the systems that you want to upgrade have mirrored and encapsulated boot disks. For each system that has a mirrored boot disk, you have the option to create a backup of the boot disk group. To create the backup, check the **Split mirrors on all the systems** box. Check the appropriate box to use the same name for the backup disk group on all systems. You can use the default name or choose a new one. Check the systems where you want to create the backup. When you are ready, click the **Next** button.

- 7 Click **Next** to complete the upgrade.

After the upgrade completes, the installer displays the location of the log and summary files. If required, view the files to confirm the installation status.

- 8 If you are prompted to restart the systems, enter the following restart command:

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

- 9 After the upgrade, if the product is not configured, the web-based installer asks: "Do you want to configure this product?" If the product is already configured, it does not ask any questions.
- 10 If you want to upgrade CP server systems that use VCS or SFHA to 6.1, make sure that you upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA, see the *VCS or SFHA Installation Guide*.
- 11 Only perform this step if you have split the mirrored root disk to back it up. After a successful restart, verify the upgrade and re-join the backup disk group into the upgraded boot disk group. If the upgrade fails, revert the upgrade boot disk group to the backup disk group.

See ["Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group"](#) on page 397.

See ["Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade"](#) on page 397.

If you want to upgrade from 4.x, you may need to create new VCS accounts if you used native operating system accounts.

## Upgrading the Solaris operating system

If you are running Storage Foundation and High Availability 6.1 with an earlier release of the Solaris operating system, you can upgrade the Solaris operating system using the following procedure.

---

**Warning:** You should only use this procedure to upgrade the Solaris operating system if you are running Storage Foundation and High Availability 6.1.

---

The directory `/opt` must exist, be writable, and must not be a symbolic link as the volumes that the `upgrade_start` command does not temporarily convert are unavailable during the upgrade process. If you have a symbolic link from `/opt` to one of the unconverted volumes, the symbolic link does not function during the upgrade and items in `/opt` are not installed.

**To upgrade the Solaris operating system only**

- 1 Bring the system down to single-user mode using the following command:

```
init s
```

You must mount `/opt` manually if `/opt` is on its own partition.

- 2 Load and mount the software disc from the currently installed version of Storage Foundation and High Availability.

See [“Mounting the product disc”](#) on page 70.

- 3 Change directory:

```
cd /mount_point/scripts
```

- 4 Run the `upgrade_start` with the `-check` argument to detect any problems that exist which can prevent a successful upgrade. Use the `upgrade_start` script that was supplied with the currently installed SF release. If this command reports success, you can proceed with running the `upgrade_start` script, but if it reports errors, correct the problem(s) and rerun `upgrade_start -check`.

```
./upgrade_start -check
```

- 5 Run the `upgrade_start` script so that the system can come up with partitions. The `upgrade_start` script searches for volumes containing file systems, and if any are found, converts them to partitions:

```
./upgrade_start
```

- 6 Bring the system down to run level 0.

```
init 0
```

- 7 Upgrade the operating system to a supported version of Solaris.

You should boot up the system from run level 0 depending on the Solaris upgrade procedure that you want to follow. Refer to the Solaris installation documentation for instructions on how to upgrade the Solaris operating system.

- 8 After installing the Solaris operating system, install any Solaris patches required by Storage Foundation and High Availability 6.1.

See the *Storage Foundation and High Availability Release Notes*.

- 9 After the system is up with the upgraded Solaris operating system, bring the system down to single-user mode by entering:

```
init s
```

- 10 Ensure that `/opt` is mounted.
- 11 Load and mount the software disc from the currently installed version of Storage Foundation and High Availability.
- 12 If you upgraded to Solaris 10, you must reinstall certain Storage Foundation and High Availability packages to support Solaris 10 functionality.

To reinstall the required packages, follow the steps below:

- Remove the existing packages in the reverse order of their installation. For example, if you chose the installation of all packages then uninstall those in the following order.

For Storage Foundation and High Availability:

```
pkgrm VRTSvxvm VRTSvxfs VRTSvcs
VRTSvxfen VRTSgab VRTS11t
```

For Storage Foundation and High Availability:

```
pkgrm VRTSvxvm VRTSvxfs VRTSvcs
VRTSvxfen VRTSgab VRTS11t
```

- Run the following commands.  
To obtain a list of recommended packages to install:

```
./installsfha -recpkgs
```

Or

To obtain a list of all packages to install:

```
./installsfha -allpkgs
```

- Change to the directory containing the appropriate packages.

```
cd /mount_point/pkg
```

- Use the `pkgadd` command to install the packages from the list you generated.

- Restart the system.
- 13** Complete the upgrade from the software disc from the currently installed version of Storage Foundation by entering:

```
devlinks
./upgrade_finish
```

## Upgrading Volume Replicator

If a previous version of Volume Replicator (VVR) is configured, the product installer upgrades VVR automatically when you upgrade the Storage Foundation products.

When upgrading from 4.1 MP1 or later, you have the option to upgrade without disrupting replication.

See [“Upgrading VVR without disrupting replication”](#) on page 328.

## Upgrading VVR without disrupting replication

This section describes the upgrade procedure from an earlier version of VVR to the current version of VVR when replication is in progress, assuming that you do not need to upgrade all the hosts in the RDS simultaneously.

You may also need to set up replication between versions.

See [“Planning an upgrade from the previous VVR version”](#) on page 302.

When both the Primary and the Secondary have the previous version of VVR installed, the upgrade can be performed either on the Primary or on the Secondary. We recommend that the Secondary hosts be upgraded before the Primary host in the RDS. This section includes separate sets of steps, for the Primary upgrade and for the Secondary upgrade.

---

**Note:** If you have a cluster setup, you must upgrade all the nodes in the cluster at the same time.

---

### Upgrading VVR on the Secondary

Follow these instructions to upgrade the Secondary hosts.

### To upgrade the Secondary

- 1 Stop replication to the Secondary host by initiating a Primary pause using the following command:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup pauserep local_rvgname sec_hostname
```

- 2 Upgrade from VVR 5.1 or later to VVR 6.1 on the Secondary.

- 3 Do one of the following:

- Upgrade the disk group now. Enter the following:

```
vxdg upgrade dgname
```

- Upgrade the disk group later.  
If you upgrade the disk group later, be sure to pause replication before you upgrade the disk group.

- 4 Resume the replication from the Primary using the following command:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup resumerep local_rvgname sec_hostname
```

## Upgrading VVR on the Primary

After you upgrade the Secondary, use the product installer to upgrade the Primary.

### To upgrade the Primary

- 1 Stop replication to the Primary host by initiating a Primary pause using the following command:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup pauserep local_rvgname
```

- 2 Upgrade from VVR 5.1 or later to VVR 6.1 on the Secondary.

- 3 Do one of the following:

- Upgrade the disk group now. Enter the following:

```
vxdg upgrade dgname
```

- Upgrade the disk group later.

If you upgrade the disk group later, be sure to pause replication before you upgrade the disk group.

- 4 Resume the replication from the Primary using the following command:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup resumerep local_rvgname
 sec_hostname
```

See [“Planning an upgrade from the previous VVR version”](#) on page 302.

## Upgrading language packages

If you want to upgrade Symantec products in a language other than English, you must install the required language packages after installing the English packages. Verify that the English installation is correct before you proceed.

Install the language packages as for an initial installation.

See [“Installing language packages”](#) on page 80.

# Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About rolling upgrades](#)
- [Supported rolling upgrade paths](#)
- [Performing a rolling upgrade using the script-based installer](#)
- [Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA using the web-based installer](#)

## About rolling upgrades

The rolling upgrade minimizes downtime for highly available clusters to the amount of time that it takes to perform a service group failover. The rolling upgrade has two main phases where the installer upgrades kernel packages in phase 1 and VCS agent packages in phase 2.

---

**Note:** You need to perform a rolling upgrade on a completely configured cluster.

---

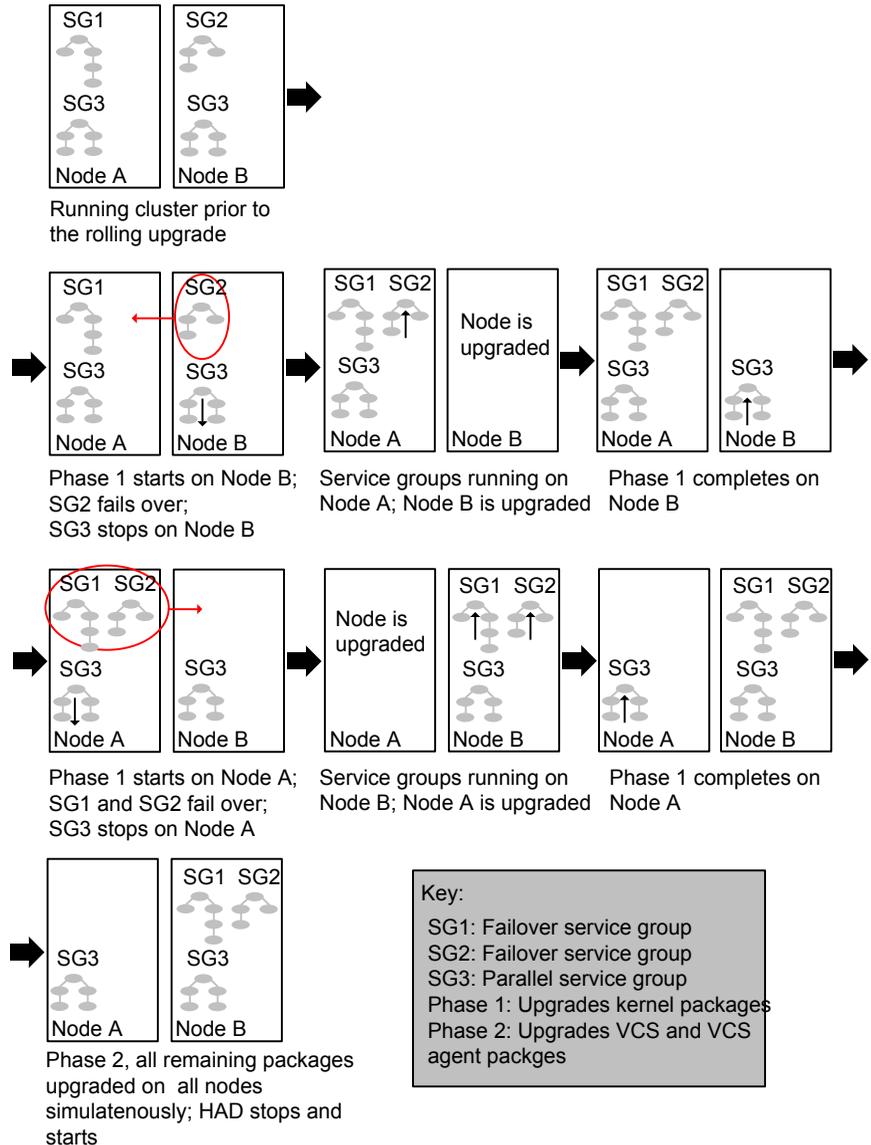
The following is an overview of the flow for a rolling upgrade:

1. The installer performs prechecks on the cluster.
2. Application downtime occurs during the first phase as the installer moves service groups to free nodes for the upgrade. The only downtime that is incurred is the normal time required for the service group to fail over. The downtime is limited to the applications that are failed over and not the entire cluster.

3. The installer performs the second phase of the upgrade on all of the nodes in the cluster. The second phase of the upgrade includes downtime of the Symantec Cluster Server (VCS) engine HAD, but does not include application downtime.

[Figure 20-1](#) illustrates an example of the installer performing a rolling upgrade for three service groups on a two node cluster.

**Figure 20-1** Example of the installer performing a rolling upgrade



The following limitations apply to rolling upgrades:

- Rolling upgrades are not compatible with phased upgrades. Do not mix rolling upgrades and phased upgrades.
- You can perform a rolling upgrade from 5.1 and later versions.

## Supported rolling upgrade paths

You can perform a rolling upgrade of SFHA with the script-based installer, the web-based installer, or manually.

The rolling upgrade procedures support only minor operating system upgrades.

[Table 20-1](#) shows the versions of SFHA for which you can perform a rolling upgrade to Storage Foundation 6.1.

**Table 20-1** Supported rolling upgrade paths

| Platform         | SFHA version                                                    |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Solaris 10 SPARC | 5.1, 5.1RPs<br>5.1SP1, 5.1SP1RPs<br>6.0, 6.0RP1<br>6.0.1, 6.0.3 |
| Solaris 11 SPARC | 6.0PR1<br>6.0.1, 6.0.3                                          |

**Note:** Before performing a rolling upgrade from version 5.1SP1RP3 to version 6.1, install patch VRTSvxfen-5.1SP1RP3P2. For downloading the patch, search VRTSvxfen-5.1SP1RP3P2 in [Patch Lookup](#) on the [SORT](#) website.

## Performing a rolling upgrade using the script-based installer

Before you start the rolling upgrade, make sure that Symantec Cluster Server (VCS) is running.

### To perform a rolling upgrade

- 1 Complete the preparatory steps on the first sub-cluster.
- 2 Log in as superuser and mount the SFHA 6.1 installation media.
- 3 From root, start the installer.

```
./installer
```

- 4 From the menu, select `Upgrade a Product` and from the sub menu, select `Rolling Upgrade`.

- 5 The installer suggests system names for the upgrade. Press **Enter** to upgrade the suggested systems, or enter the name of any one system in the cluster on which you want to perform a rolling upgrade and then press **Enter**.
- 6 The installer checks system communications, release compatibility, version information, and lists the cluster name, ID, and cluster nodes. Type **y** to continue.
- 7 The installer inventories the running service groups and determines the node or nodes to upgrade in phase 1 of the rolling upgrade. Type **y** to continue. If you choose to specify the nodes, type **n** and enter the names of the nodes.
- 8 The installer performs further prechecks on the nodes in the cluster and may present warnings. You can type **y** to continue or quit the installer and address the precheck's warnings.
- 9 Review the end-user license agreement, and type **y** if you agree to its terms.
- 10 After the installer detects the online service groups, the installer checks for the installed packages and displays them. Then, the installer displays the list of packages that would be installed and prompts the user to do one of the following:
  - Manually switch service groups
  - Use the CPI to automatically switch service groups

The downtime is the time that it normally takes for the service group's failover.

---

**Note:** It is recommended that you manually switch the service groups. Automatic switching of service groups does not resolve dependency issues.

---

- 11 The installer prompts you to stop the applicable processes. Type **y** to continue. The installer evacuates all service groups to the node or nodes that are not upgraded at this time. The installer stops parallel service groups on the nodes that are to be upgraded.
- 12 The installer stops relevant processes, uninstalls old kernel packages, and installs the new packages. The installer asks if you want to update your licenses to the current version. Select **Yes** or **No**. Symantec recommends that you update your licenses to fully use the new features in the current release.
- 13 If the cluster has configured Coordination Point Server based fencing, then during upgrade, installer asks the user to provide the new HTTPS Coordination Point Server. The installer performs the upgrade configuration and restarts the nodes, if required. Then, the installer starts the processes.

- 14** Complete the preparatory steps on the nodes that you have not yet upgraded.
- 15** The installer begins phase 1 of the upgrade on the remaining node or nodes. Type **y** to continue the rolling upgrade.  
If the installer prompts to restart nodes, restart the nodes.  
Restart the installer.  
The installer repeats step [7](#) through step [12](#).  
For clusters with larger number of nodes, this process may repeat several times. Service groups come down and are brought up to accommodate the upgrade.
- 16** When phase 1 of the rolling upgrade completes, begin phase 2 of the upgrade. Phase 2 of the upgrade includes downtime for the VCS engine (HAD), which does not include application downtime. Type **y** to continue.
- 17** The installer determines the remaining packages to upgrade. Press **Enter** to continue.
- 18** The installer stops Symantec Cluster Server (VCS) processes but the applications continue to run. Type **y** to continue.  
The installer performs prestop, uninstalls old packages, and installs the new packages. It performs post-installation tasks, and the configuration for the upgrade.
- 19** If you have network connection to the Internet, the installer checks for updates. If updates are discovered, you can apply them now.

- 20 A prompt message appears to ask if the user wants to read the summary file. You can choose **y** if you want to read the install summary file.
- 21 If you want to upgrade application clusters that use CP server based fencing to 6.1, make sure that you upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. However, note that the CP server upgraded to 6.1 can support application clusters on 6.1 (HTTPS-based communication) and application clusters prior to 6.1 (IPM-based communication). When you configure the CP server, the installer asks the VIPs for HTTPS-based communication (if the clients are on release version 6.1) or VIPs for IPM-based communication (if the clients are on a release version prior to 6.1).

For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems, refer to the appropriate installation guide.

---

**Note:** You have to configure `vset` under VCS if you want the new configuration changes to take effect.

---

## Performing a rolling upgrade of SFHA using the web-based installer

This section describes using the web-based installer to perform a rolling upgrade. The installer detects and upgrades the product that is currently installed on the specified system or systems. If you want to upgrade to a different product, you may need to perform additional steps.

See [“About rolling upgrades”](#) on page 331.

### To start the rolling upgrade—phase 1

- 1 Perform the required steps to save any data that you want to preserve. For example, take backups of configuration files.

- 2 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 3 In the Task pull-down menu, select `Rolling Upgrade`.

The option `Phase-1: Upgrade Kernel packages` is displayed and selected by default.

Click **Next** to proceed.

- 4** Enter the name of any one system in the cluster on which you want to perform a rolling upgrade. The installer identifies the cluster information of the system and displays the information.

Click **Yes** to confirm the cluster information. The installer now displays the nodes in the cluster that will be upgraded during phase 1 of the upgrade.
- 5** Review the systems that the installer has chosen for phase 1 of the rolling upgrade. These systems are chosen to minimize downtime during the upgrade.

Click **Yes** to proceed.

The installer validates systems.
- 6** Review the End User License Agreement (EULA). To continue, select **Yes, I agree** and click **Next**.
- 7** If you have online failover service groups, the installer prompts you to choose to switch these service groups either manually or automatically. Choose any option and follow the steps to switch all the failover service groups to the other subcluster.
- 8** The installer stops all processes. Click **Next** to proceed.

The installer removes old software and upgrades the software on the systems that you selected.
- 9** The installer asks if you want to update your licenses to the current version. Select **Yes** or **No**. Symantec recommends that you update your licenses to fully use the new features in the current release.
- 10** If the cluster has configured Coordination Point Server-based fencing, then during upgrade, installer asks the user to provide the new HTTPS Coordination Point Server. If you are prompted, restart the node.

The installer starts all the relevant processes and brings all the service groups online if the nodes do not require a restart.
- 11** Restart the nodes, if required.

Restart the installer.
- 12** Repeat step [5](#) through step [11](#) until the kernel packages of all the nodes are upgraded. For clusters with larger number of nodes, this process may get repeated several times. Service groups come down and are brought up to accommodate the upgrade.
- 13** When prompted, start phase 2. Click **Yes** to continue with the rolling upgrade.

### To upgrade the non-kernel components—phase 2

- 1** The installer detects the information of cluster and the state of rolling upgrade. The installer validates systems. Click **Next**. If it throws an error, address the error and return to the installer.
- 2** Review the End User License Agreement (EULA). To continue, select **Yes, I agree** and click **Next**.
- 3** The installer stops the `HAD` and `CmdServer` processes in phase 2 of the rolling upgrade process but the applications continue to run. Click **Next** to proceed.
- 4** The installer removes old software and upgrades the software on the systems that you selected. Review the output and click the **Next** button when prompted. Register the software and click **Next** to proceed. The installer starts all the relevant processes and brings all the service groups online.
- 5** If you have network connection to the Internet, the installer checks for updates. If updates are discovered, you can apply them now.
- 6** A prompt message appears to ask if the user wants to read the summary file. You can choose **y** if you want to read the install summary file.

The upgrade is complete.

# Performing a phased upgrade of SFHA

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About phased upgrade](#)
- [Performing a phased upgrade using the script-based installer](#)
- [Performing a phased upgrade using the web-based installer](#)

## About phased upgrade

Perform a phased upgrade to minimize the downtime for the cluster. Depending on the situation, you can calculate the approximate downtime as follows:

**Table 21-1**

| Fail over condition                                                                    | Downtime                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| You can fail over all your service groups to the nodes that are up.                    | Downtime equals the time that is taken to offline and online the service groups.                          |
| You have a service group that you cannot fail over to a node that runs during upgrade. | Downtime for that service group equals the time that is taken to perform an upgrade and restart the node. |

## Prerequisites for a phased upgrade

Before you start the upgrade, confirm that you have licenses for all the nodes that you plan to upgrade.

## Planning for a phased upgrade

Plan out the movement of the service groups from node-to-node to minimize the downtime for any particular service group.

Some rough guidelines follow:

- Split the cluster into two sub-clusters of equal or near equal size.
- Split the cluster so that your high priority service groups remain online during the upgrade of the first subcluster.
- Before you start the upgrade, back up the VCS configuration files `main.cf` and `types.cf` which are in the directory `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/`.

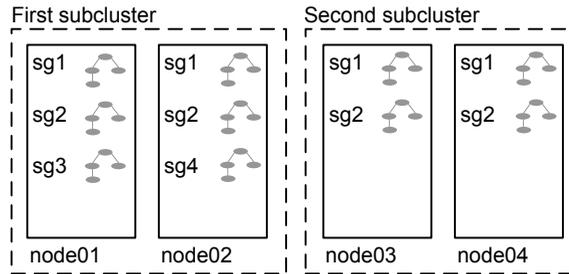
## Phased upgrade limitations

The following limitations primarily describe not to tamper with configurations or service groups during the phased upgrade:

- While you perform the upgrades, do not start any modules.
- When you start the installer, only select SFHA.
- While you perform the upgrades, do not add or remove service groups to any of the nodes.
- After you upgrade the first half of your cluster (the first subcluster), you need to set up password-less SSH or RSH. Create the connection between an upgraded node in the first subcluster and a node from the other subcluster. The node from the other subcluster is where you plan to run the installer and also plan to upgrade.
- Depending on your configuration, you may find that you cannot upgrade multiple nodes at the same time. You may only be able to upgrade one node at a time.
- For very large clusters, you might have to repeat these steps multiple times to upgrade your cluster.

## Phased upgrade example

In this example, you have a secure cluster that you have configured to run on four nodes: `node01`, `node02`, `node03`, and `node04`. You also have four service groups: `sg1`, `sg2`, `sg3`, and `sg4`. For the purposes of this example, the cluster is split into two subclusters. The nodes `node01` and `node02` are in the first subcluster, which you first upgrade. The nodes `node03` and `node04` are in the second subcluster, which you upgrade last.

**Figure 21-1** Example of phased upgrade set up

Each service group is running on the nodes as follows:

- sg1 and sg2 are parallel service groups and run on all the nodes.
- sg3 and sg4 are failover service groups. sg3 runs on node01 and sg4 runs on node02.

In your system list, you have each service group that fails over to other nodes as follows:

- sg1 and sg2 are running on all the nodes.
- sg3 and sg4 can fail over to any of the nodes in the cluster.

## Phased upgrade example overview

This example's upgrade path follows:

- Move all the failover service groups from the first subcluster to the second subcluster.
- Take all the parallel service groups offline on the first subcluster.
- Upgrade the operating system on the first subcluster's nodes, if required.
- On the first subcluster, start the upgrade using the installation program.
- Get the second subcluster ready.
- Activate the first subcluster. After activating the first cluster, switch the service groups online on the second subcluster to the first subcluster.
- Upgrade the operating system on the second subcluster's nodes, if required.
- On the second subcluster, start the upgrade using the installation program.
- Activate the second subcluster.

See [“Performing a phased upgrade using the script-based installer”](#) on page 343.

## Performing a phased upgrade using the script-based installer

This section explains how to perform a phased upgrade of SFHA on four nodes with four service groups. Note that in this scenario, VCS and the service groups cannot stay online on the second subcluster during the upgrade of the second subcluster. Do not add, remove, or change resources or service groups on any nodes during the upgrade. These changes are likely to get lost after the upgrade.

An example of a phased upgrade follows. It illustrates the steps to perform a phased upgrade. The example makes use of a secure SFHA cluster.

You can perform a phased upgrade from SFHA 5.1 or other supported previous versions to SFHA 6.1.

See [“About phased upgrade”](#) on page 340.

See [“Phased upgrade example”](#) on page 341.

### Moving the service groups to the second subcluster

Perform the following steps to establish the service group's status and to switch the service groups.

## To move service groups to the second subcluster

- 1 On the first subcluster, determine where the service groups are online.

```
hagrps -state
```

The output resembles:

```
#Group Attribute System Value
sg1 State node01 |ONLINE|
sg1 State node02 |ONLINE|
sg1 State node03 |ONLINE|
sg1 State node04 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node01 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node02 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node03 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node04 |ONLINE|
sg3 State node01 |ONLINE|
sg3 State node02 |OFFLINE|
sg3 State node03 |OFFLINE|
sg3 State node04 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node01 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node02 |ONLINE|
sg4 State node03 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node04 |OFFLINE|
```

- 2 Offline the parallel service groups (sg1 and sg2) from the first subcluster. Switch the failover service groups (sg3 and sg4) from the first subcluster (node01 and node02) to the nodes on the second subcluster (node03 and node04). For SFHA, vxfsn sg is the parallel service group.

```
hagrps -offline sg1 -sys node01
hagrps -offline sg2 -sys node01
hagrps -offline sg1 -sys node02
hagrps -offline sg2 -sys node02
hagrps -switch sg3 -to node03
hagrps -switch sg4 -to node04
```

- 3** On the nodes in the first subcluster, unmount all the VxFS file systems that VCS does not manage, for example:

```
df -k

Filesystem kbytes used avail capacity Mounted on
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0 66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /
/devices 0 0 0 0% /devices
ctfs 0 0 0 0% /system/contract
proc 0 0 0 0% /proc
mnttab 0 0 0 0% /etc/mnttab
swap 5287408 1400 5286008 1% /etc/svc/volatile
objfs 0 0 0 0% /system/object
sharefs 0 0 0 0% /etc/dfs/sharetab
/platform/sun4u-us3/lib/libc_psr/libc_psr_hwcap1.so.1
66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /platform/sun4u-us3/lib/
libc_psr.so.1
/platform/sun4u-us3/lib/sparcv9/libc_psr/libc_psr_hwcap1.so.1
66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /platform/sun4u-us3/lib/
sparcv9/libc_psr.so.1
fd 0 0 0 0% /dev/fd
swap 5286064 56 5286008 1% /tmp
swap 5286056 48 5286008 1% /var/run
swap 5286008 0 5286008 0% /dev/vx/dmp
swap 5286008 0 5286008 0% /dev/vx/rdmp
3.0G 18M 2.8G 1% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol1
/dev/vx/dsk/dg2/dg2vol2
1.0G 18M 944M 2% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol2
/dev/vx/dsk/dg2/dg2vol3
10G 20M 9.4G 1% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol3

umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol1
umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol2
umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol3
```

- 4** On the nodes in the first subcluster, stop all VxVM volumes (for each disk group) that VCS does not manage.
- 5** Make the configuration writable on the first subcluster.

```
haconf -makerw
```

**6** Freeze the nodes in the first subcluster.

```
hasys -freeze -persistent node01
hasys -freeze -persistent node02
```

**7** Dump the configuration and make it read-only.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 8 Verify that the service groups are offline on the first subcluster that you want to upgrade.

```
hagrps -state
```

Output resembles:

```
#Group Attribute System Value
sg1 State node01 |OFFLINE|
sg1 State node02 |OFFLINE|
sg1 State node03 |ONLINE|
sg1 State node04 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node01 |OFFLINE|
sg2 State node02 |OFFLINE|
sg2 State node03 |ONLINE|
sg2 State node04 |ONLINE|
sg3 State node01 |OFFLINE|
sg3 State node02 |OFFLINE|
sg3 State node03 |ONLINE|
sg3 State node04 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node01 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node02 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node03 |OFFLINE|
sg4 State node04 |ONLINE|
```

- 9 Back up the llttab, llthosts, gabtab, types.cf, main.cf and AT configuration files on the first subcluster.

```
cp /etc/llttab /etc/llttab.bkp
cp /etc/llthosts /etc/llthosts.bkp
cp /etc/gabtab /etc/gabtab.bkp
cp /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf \
 /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf.bkp
cp /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/types.cf \
 /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/types.cf.bkp
/opt/VRTSat/bin/vssat showbackuplist
B|/var/VRTSat/.VRTSat/profile/VRTSatlocal.conf
B|/var/VRTSat/.VRTSat/profile/certstore
B|/var/VRTSat/ABAuthSource
B|/etc/vx/vss/VRTSat.conf
Quiescing ...
Snapshot Directory :/var/VRTSatSnapshot
```

## Upgrading the operating system on the first subcluster

You can perform the operating system upgrade on the first subcluster, if required.

Before performing operating system upgrade, it is better to prevent LLT from starting automatically when the node starts. For example, you can do the following:

```
mv /etc/llttab /etc/llttab.save
```

or you can change the `/etc/default/llt` file by setting `LLT_START = 0`.

After you finish upgrading the OS, remember to change the LLT configuration to its original configuration.

Refer to the operating system's documentation for more information.

## Upgrading the first subcluster

You now navigate to the installer program and start it.

### To start the installer for the phased upgrade

- 1 Confirm that you are logged on as the superuser and you mounted the product disc.
- 2 Navigate to the folder that contains `installsfha`.

```
cd storage_foundation_high_availability
```

- 3 Make sure that you can ssh or rsh from the node where you launched the installer to the nodes in the second subcluster without requests for a password.
- 4 Start the `installsfha` program, specify the nodes in the first subcluster (`node1` and `node2`).

```
./installsfha<version> -upgrade node1 node2
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The program starts with a copyright message and specifies the directory where it creates the logs. It performs a system verification and outputs upgrade information.

- 5 Enter `y` to agree to the End User License Agreement (EULA).

```
Do you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement
as specified in the storage_foundation_high_availability/
EULA/lang/EULA_SFHA_Ux_version.pdf
file present on media? [y,n,q,?] y
```

- 6 The installer displays the list of packages that get removed, installed, and upgraded on the selected systems.
- 7 When you are prompted, reply **y** to stop appropriate processes.

```
Do you want to stop SFHA processes now? [y,n,q] (y)
```

The installer stops processes, uninstalls packages, and installs packages.

The upgrade is finished on the first subcluster. Do not reboot the nodes in the first subcluster until you complete the [Preparing the second subcluster](#) procedure.

## Preparing the second subcluster

Perform the following steps on the second subcluster before rebooting nodes in the first subcluster.

**To prepare to upgrade the second subcluster**

- 1** Get the summary of the status of your resources.

```
hastatus -summ
-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen

A node01 EXITED 1
A node02 EXITED 1
A node03 RUNNING 0
A node04 RUNNING 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State

B SG1 node01 Y N OFFLINE
B SG1 node02 Y N OFFLINE
B SG1 node03 Y N ONLINE
B SG1 node04 Y N ONLINE
B SG2 node01 Y N OFFLINE
B SG2 node02 Y N OFFLINE
B SG2 node03 Y N ONLINE
B SG2 node04 Y N ONLINE
B SG3 node01 Y N OFFLINE
B SG3 node02 Y N OFFLINE
B SG3 node03 Y N ONLINE
B SG3 node04 Y N OFFLINE
B SG4 node01 Y N OFFLINE
B SG4 node02 Y N OFFLINE
B SG4 node03 Y N OFFLINE
B SG4 node04 Y N ONLINE
```

**2 Unmount all the VxFS file systems that VCS does not manage, for example:**

```
df -k

Filesystem kbytes used avail capacity Mounted on
/dev/dsk/clt0d0s0 66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /
/devices 0 0 0 0% /devices
ctfs 0 0 0 0% /system/contract
proc 0 0 0 0% /proc
mnttab 0 0 0 0% /etc/mnttab
swap 5287408 1400 5286008 1% /etc/svc/volatile
objfs 0 0 0 0% /system/object
sharefs 0 0 0 0% /etc/dfs/sharetab
/platform/sun4u-us3/lib/libc_psr/libc_psr_hwcap1.so.1
 66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /platform/sun4u-us3/
lib/libc_psr.so.1
/platform/sun4u-us3/lib/sparcv9/libc_psr/libc_psr_hwcap1.so.1
 66440242 10114415 55661425 16% /platform/sun4u-us3/
lib/sparcv9/libc_psr.so.1
fd 0 0 0 0% /dev/fd
swap 5286064 56 5286008 1% /tmp
swap 5286056 48 5286008 1% /var/run
swap 5286008 0 5286008 0% /dev/vx/dmp
swap 5286008 0 5286008 0% /dev/vx/rdmp
 3.0G 18M 2.8G 1% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol1
/dev/vx/dsk/dg2/dg2vol2
 1.0G 18M 944M 2% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol2
/dev/vx/dsk/dg2/dg2vol3
 10G 20M 9.4G 1% /mnt/dg2/dg2vol3

umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol1
umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol2
umount /mnt/dg2/dg2vol3
```

**3 Make the configuration writable on the second subcluster.**

```
haconf -makerw
```

**4 Unfreeze the service groups.**

```
hagrps -unfreeze sg1 -persistent
hagrps -unfreeze sg2 -persistent
hagrps -unfreeze sg3 -persistent
hagrps -unfreeze sg4 -persistent
```

- 5** Dump the configuration and make it read-only.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 6** Take the service groups offline on node03 and node04.

```
hagr -offline sg1 -sys node03
hagr -offline sg1 -sys node04
hagr -offline sg2 -sys node03
hagr -offline sg2 -sys node04
hagr -offline sg3 -sys node03
hagr -offline sg4 -sys node04
```

- 7** Verify the state of the service groups.

```
hagr -state
#Group Attribute System Value
SG1 State node01 |OFFLINE|
SG1 State node02 |OFFLINE|
SG1 State node03 |OFFLINE|
SG1 State node04 |OFFLINE|
SG2 State node01 |OFFLINE|
SG2 State node02 |OFFLINE|
SG2 State node03 |OFFLINE|
SG2 State node04 |OFFLINE|
SG3 State node01 |OFFLINE|
SG3 State node02 |OFFLINE|
SG3 State node03 |OFFLINE|
SG3 State node04 |OFFLINE|
```

- 8** Stop all VxVM volumes (for each disk group) that VCS does not manage.

- 9** Stop VCS, I/O Fencing, GAB, and LLT on node03 and node04.

- Solaris 9:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hastop -local
/etc/init.d/vxfen stop
/etc/init.d/gab stop
/etc/init.d/llt stop
```

- Solaris 10 and 11:

```
svcadm disable -t /system/vcs
svcadm disable -t /system/vxfen
```

```
svcadm disable -t /system/gab
svcadm disable -t /system/llt
```

- 10 Make sure that the VXFEN, GAB, and LLT modules on node03 and node04 are not configured.

- Solaris 9:

```
/etc/init.d/vxfen status
VXFEN: loaded
/etc/init.d/gab status
GAB: module not configured
/etc/init.d/llt status
LLT: is loaded but not configured
```

- Solaris 10 and 11:

```
/lib/svc/method/vxfen status
VXFEN: loaded

/lib/svc/method/gab status
GAB: module not configured

/lib/svc/method/llt status
LLT: is loaded but not configured
```

## Activating the first subcluster

Get the first subcluster ready for the service groups.

### To activate the first subcluster

- 1 Reboot the node01 and node02 in the first subcluster.

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

- 2 In the `/etc/default/llt` file, change the value of the `LLT_START` attribute.

```
LLT_START = 1
```

- 3 Start LLT and GAB.

```
svcadm enable system/llt
svcadm enable system/gab
```

- 4 Seed node01 and node02 in the first subcluster.

```
gabconfig -x
```

- 5 On the first half of the cluster, start SFHA:

```
cd /opt/VRTS/install
```

```
./installsfha<version> -start sys1 sys2
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 6 Start VCS in first half of the cluster:

```
svcadm enable system/vcs
```

- 7 Start VCS on node01 and node02. On each node run:

```
hastart
```

- 8 Make the configuration writable on the first subcluster.

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 9 Unfreeze the nodes in the first subcluster.

```
hasys -unfreeze -persistent node01
```

```
hasys -unfreeze -persistent node02
```

- 10 Dump the configuration and make it read-only.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 11 Bring the service groups online on node01 and node02.

```
hagrps -online sg1 -sys node01
```

```
hagrps -online sg1 -sys node02
```

```
hagrps -online sg2 -sys node01
```

```
hagrps -online sg2 -sys node02
```

```
hagrps -online sg3 -sys node01
```

```
hagrps -online sg4 -sys node02
```

## Upgrading the operating system on the second subcluster

You can perform the operating system upgrade on the second subcluster, if required. Refer to the operating system's documentation for more information.

Before you perform the operating system upgrade, make sure to disable VCS, VXFEN, GAB, and LLT.

### To disable VCS, VXFEN, GAB, and LLT

- 1 On the second subcluster, disable VCS so that it does not start after reboot. Edit the `vcs` file in `/etc/default`. Open the `vcs` file in an editor, and change the line that reads `VCS_START=1` to `VCS_START=0`. Save and close the file.
- 2 On the second subcluster, disable VXFEN so that it does not start after reboot. Edit the `vxfen` file in `/etc/default`. Open the `vxfen` file in an editor, and change the line that reads `VXFEN_START=1` to `VXFEN_START=0`. Save and close the file.
- 3 On the second subcluster, disable GAB so that it does not start after reboot. Edit the `gab` file in `/etc/default`. Open the `gab` file in an editor, and change the line that reads `GAB_START=1` to `GAB_START=0`. Save and close the file.
- 4 On the second subcluster, disable LLT so that it does not start after reboot. Edit the `llt` file in `/etc/default`. Open the `llt` file in an editor, and change the line that reads `LLT_START=1` to `LLT_START=0`. Save and close the file.
- 5 For a cluster that uses secure mode, create a password-less SSH connection. The connection is from the node where you plan to run the installer to one of the nodes that you have already upgraded.

## Upgrading the second subcluster

Perform the following procedure to upgrade the second subcluster (node03 and node04).

### To start the installer to upgrade the second subcluster

- 1 Confirm that you are logged on as the superuser and you mounted the product disc.
- 2 Navigate to the folder that contains `installsfha`.

```
cd storage_foundation_high_availability
```

- 3 Confirm that SFHA is stopped on node03 and node04. Start the `installsfha` program, specify the nodes in the second subcluster (node3 and node4).

```
./installsfha -upgrade node3 node4
```

The program starts with a copyright message and specifies the directory where it creates the logs.

- 4 The installer displays the list of packages that get removed, installed, and upgraded on the selected systems.
- 5 When you are prompted, reply **y** to stop appropriate processes.

```
Do you want to stop SFHA processes now? [y,n,q] (y)
```

The installer stops processes, uninstalls packages, and installs packages.

- 6 Enter **y** to agree to the End User License Agreement (EULA).

```
Do you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement
as specified in the storage_foundation_high_availability/
EULA/lang/EULA_SFHA_Ux_<version>.pdf
file present on media? [y,n,q,?] y
```

- 7 Monitor the installer program answering questions as appropriate until the upgrade completes.

## Finishing the phased upgrade

Complete the following procedure to complete the upgrade.

## To finish the upgrade

- 1 Verify that the cluster UUID is the same on the nodes in the second subcluster and the first subcluster. Run the following command to display the cluster UUID:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/uuidconfig.pl
-clus -display node1 [node2 ...]
```

If the cluster UUID differs, manually copy the cluster UUID from a node in the first subcluster to the nodes in the second subcluster. For example:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/uuidconfig.pl [-rsh] -clus
-copy -from_sys node01 -to_sys node03 node04
```

- 2 Reboot the node03 and node04 in the second subcluster.

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

The nodes in the second subcluster join the nodes in the first subcluster.

- 3 In the `/etc/default/llt` file, change the value of the `LLT_START` attribute.  
In the `/etc/default/gab` file, change the value of the `gab_START` attribute.  
In the `/etc/default/vxfen` file, change the value of the `vxfen_START` attribute.  
In the `/etc/default/vcs` file, change the value of the `vcs_START` attribute.

```
LLT_START = 1
GAB_START = 1
VXFEN_START =1
VCS_START =1
```

- 4 Start LLT and GAB.

```
svcadm enable system/llt

svcadm enable system/gab
```

- 5 Seed node03 and node04 in the second subcluster.

```
gabconfig -x
```

- 6** On the second half of the cluster, start SFHA:

```
cd /opt/VRTS/install
./installsfha<version> -start sys3 sys4
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 7** For nodes that use Solaris 10, start VCS in first half of the cluster:

```
svcadm enable system/vcs
```

- 8** Check to see if SFHA and High Availabilty and its components are up.

```
gabconfig -a
GAB Port Memberships
=====
Port a gen nxxxxnn membership 0123
Port b gen nxxxxnn membership 0123
Port h gen nxxxxnn membership 0123
```

**9** Run an `hastatus -sum` command to determine the status of the nodes, service groups, and cluster.

```
hastatus -sum

-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen

A node01 RUNNING 0
A node02 RUNNING 0
A node03 RUNNING 0
A node04 RUNNING 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State
B sg1 node01 Y N ONLINE
B sg1 node02 Y N ONLINE
B sg1 node03 Y N ONLINE
B sg1 node04 Y N ONLINE
B sg2 node01 Y N ONLINE
B sg2 node02 Y N ONLINE
B sg2 node03 Y N ONLINE
B sg2 node04 Y N ONLINE
B sg3 node01 Y N ONLINE
B sg3 node02 Y N OFFLINE
B sg3 node03 Y N OFFLINE
B sg3 node04 Y N OFFLINE
B sg4 node01 Y N OFFLINE
B sg4 node02 Y N ONLINE
B sg4 node03 Y N OFFLINE
B sg4 node04 Y N OFFLINE
```

**10** After the upgrade is complete, start the VxVM volumes (for each disk group) and mount the VxFS file systems.

In this example, you have performed a phased upgrade of SFHA. The service groups were down when you took them offline on node03 and node04, to the time SFHA brought them online on node01 or node02.

---

**Note:** If you want to upgrade application clusters that use CP server based fencing to 6.1, make sure that you first upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. However, note that the CP server upgraded to 6.1 can support application clusters on 6.1 (HTTPS-based communication) and application clusters prior to 6.1 (IPM-based communication). When you configure the CP server, the installer asks the VIPs for HTTPS-based communication (if the clients are on release version 6.1) or VIPs for IPM-based communication (if the clients are on a release version prior to 6.1).

For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA, see the VCS or SFHA Installation Guide.

---

## Performing a phased upgrade using the web-based installer

This section explains how to perform a phased upgrade of SFHA on four nodes with four service groups using the web-based installer. Note that in this scenario, VCS and the service groups cannot stay online on the second subcluster during the upgrade of the second subcluster. Do not add, remove, or change resources or service groups on any nodes during the upgrade. These changes are likely to get lost after the upgrade.

[Table 21-2](#) illustrates the steps to perform a phased upgrade. The example makes use of a secure SFHA cluster. You can perform a phased upgrade from SFHA 5.1 or other supported previous versions to SFHA 6.1.

**Table 21-2** Performing a phased upgrade using the web-based installer

| Step   | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 1 | Move the service groups to the second subcluster.<br><br>See <a href="#">"Moving the service groups to the second subcluster"</a> on page 343.                     |
| Step 2 | Upgrade the operating system on the first subcluster.<br><br>See <a href="#">"Upgrading the operating system on the first subcluster"</a> on page 348.             |
| Step 3 | Upgrade the first subcluster using the web-based installer.<br><br>See <a href="#">"Upgrading the first subcluster using the web-based installer"</a> on page 361. |
| Step 4 | Prepare the second subcluster.<br><br>See <a href="#">"Preparing the second subcluster"</a> on page 349.                                                           |

**Table 21-2** Performing a phased upgrade using the web-based installer  
*(continued)*

| Step   | Description                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 5 | Activate the first subcluster using the web-based installer.<br>See <a href="#">“Activating the first subcluster using the web-based installer”</a> on page 363. |
| Step 6 | Upgrade the operating system on the second subcluster.<br>See <a href="#">“Upgrading the operating system on the second subcluster”</a> on page 355.             |
| Step 7 | Upgrade the second subcluster using the web-based installer.<br>See <a href="#">“Upgrading the second subcluster using the web-based installer”</a> on page 364. |
| Step 8 | Finish the phased upgrade.<br>See <a href="#">“Finishing the phased upgrade”</a> on page 356.                                                                    |

## Upgrading the first subcluster using the web-based installer

You now navigate to the installer program and start it.

### To start the installer for the phased upgrade

- 1** Confirm that you are logged on as the superuser and you mounted the product disc.
- 2** Navigate to the folder that contains `installsfha`.  
  

```
cd storage_foundation_high_availability
```
- 3** Make sure that you can `ssh` or `rsh` from the node where you launched the installer to the nodes in the second subcluster without requests for a password.
- 4** Start the web-based installer.  
  
See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.
- 5** Indicate the systems on which you want to upgrade. Enter all the system names (`node01` and `node02`) in first subcluster, separated by spaces. Click **Next**.

**6** The installer discovers if any of the systems that you want to upgrade have mirrored and encapsulated boot disks. For each system that has a mirrored boot disk, you have the option to create a backup of the boot disk group. To create the backup, put a check on **Split mirrors on all the systems**. Check the appropriate box to use the same name for the backup disk group on all systems. You can use the default name or choose a new one. Check the systems where you want to create the backup. When you are ready, click the **Next** button.

**7** Installer detects the product that is installed on the specified system. It shows the subcluster information of the first phase of phase upgrade. If you want to perform upgrade on the cluster, select **Yes** and click **Next**.

**8** Select **Yes, I agree** to agree to the End User License Agreement (EULA).

```
Do you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement
as specified in the storage_foundation_high_availability/
EULA/lang/EULA_SFHA_Ux_version.pdf
file present on media? [y,n,q,?] y
```

**9** Installer detects the packages which will be uninstalled. Enter **Yes** to confirm.

**10** Installer detects the packages which will be upgraded. in installed. Enter **Yes** to confirm.

**11** Click **Next** to complete the upgrade. During the upgrade, find new key, select **Yes** to upgrade the key, and confirm the key register on the first subcluster.

**12** Installer displays that it is doing the first phase of the phase upgrade. After the upgrade completes, the installer displays the location of the log and summary files. If required, view the files to confirm the installation status.

**13** If you are prompted to restart the systems, enter the following restart command:

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

**14** If you want to upgrade CP server systems that use VCS or SFHA to 6.1, make sure that you upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA, see the *VCS or SFHA Installation Guide*.

**15** Perform this step if you have split the mirrored root disk to back it up. After a successful restart, verify the upgrade and re-join the backup disk group into the upgraded boot disk group. If the upgrade fails, revert the upgrade boot disk group to the backup disk group.

If you want to upgrade from 4.x, you may need to create new VCS accounts if you used native operating system accounts.

## Activating the first subcluster using the web-based installer

Get the first subcluster ready for the service groups.

### To activate the first subcluster

- 1 Reboot the node01 and node02 in the first subcluster.

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

- 2 In the `/etc/default/llt` file, change the value of the `LLT_START` attribute.

```
LLT_START = 1
```

- 3 Start LLT and GAB.

```
svcadm enable system/llt
svcadm enable system/gab
```

- 4 Seed node01 and node02 in the first subcluster.

```
gabconfig -x
```

- 5 On the first half of the cluster, start the web-based installer.

- 6 Start VCS in first half of the cluster:

```
svcadm enable system/vcs
```

- 7 Start VCS on node01 and node02. On each node run:

```
hastart
```

- 8 Make the configuration writable on the first subcluster.

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 9 Unfreeze the nodes in the first subcluster.

```
hasys -unfreeze -persistent node01
hasys -unfreeze -persistent node02
```

- 10 Dump the configuration and make it read-only.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 11 Bring the service groups online on node01 and node02.

```
hagrps -online sg1 -sys node01
hagrps -online sg1 -sys node02
hagrps -online sg2 -sys node01
hagrps -online sg2 -sys node02
hagrps -online sg3 -sys node01
hagrps -online sg4 -sys node02
```

## Upgrading the second subcluster using the web-based installer

Perform the following procedure to upgrade the second subcluster (node03 and node04).

### To start the installer to upgrade the second subcluster

- 1 Confirm that you are logged on as the superuser and you mounted the product disc.

- 2 Navigate to the folder that contains installsfha.

```
cd storage_foundation_high_availability
```

- 3 Make sure that you can ssh or rsh from the node where you launched the installer to the nodes in the second subcluster without requests for a password.

- 4 Start the web-based installer.

See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.

- 5 Indicate the systems on which you want to upgrade. Enter all the system names (node03 and node04) in first subcluster, separated by spaces. Click **Next**.

- 6 The installer discovers if any of the systems that you want to upgrade have mirrored and encapsulated boot disks. For each system that has a mirrored boot disk, you have the option to create a backup of the boot disk group. To create the backup, put a check on **Split mirrors on all the systems**. Check the appropriate box to use the same name for the backup disk group on all systems. You can use the default name or choose a new one. Check the systems where you want to create the backup. When you are ready, click the **Next** button.

**7** Installer detects the product that is installed on the specified system. It shows the subcluster information of the second phase of phase upgrade. If you want to perform upgrade on the cluster, select **Yes** and click **Next**.

**8** Enter **y** to agree to the End User License Agreement (EULA).

```
Do you agree with the terms of the End User License Agreement
as specified in the storage_foundation_high_availability/
EULA/lang/EULA_SFHA_Ux_version.pdf
file present on media? [y,n,q,?] y
```

**9** Installer detects the packages which will be uninstalled. Enter **Y**to confirm.

**10** Installer detects the packages which will be upgraded. in installed. Enter **Y**to confirm.

**11** Click **Next** to complete the upgrade. During the upgrade, find new key, select **Yes** to upgrade the key, and confirm the key register on the second subcluster.

**12** After the upgrade completes, the installer displays the location of the log and summary files. If required, view the files to confirm the installation status.

**13** If you are prompted to restart the systems, enter the following restart command:

```
/usr/sbin/shutdown -y -i6 -g0
```

**14** If you want to upgrade CP server systems that use VCS or SFHA to 6.1, make sure that you upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems. Then, upgrade all application clusters to version 6.1. For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA, see the *VCS or SFHA Installation Guide*.

**15** Perform this step if you have split the mirrored root disk to back it up. After a successful restart, verify the upgrade and re-join the backup disk group into the upgraded boot disk group. If the upgrade fails, revert the upgrade boot disk group to the backup disk group.

If you want to upgrade from 4.x, you may need to create new VCS accounts if you used native operating system accounts.

# Performing an automated SFHA upgrade using response files

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Upgrading SFHA using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Sample response file for SFHA upgrade](#)
- [Performing rolling upgrade of SFHA using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to upgrade SFHA using rolling upgrade](#)
- [Sample response file for SFHA using rolling upgrade](#)

## Upgrading SFHA using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform SFHA upgrade on one system to upgrade SFHA on other systems. You can also create a response file using the `makeresponsefile` option of the installer.

### To perform automated SFHA upgrade

- 1 Make sure the systems where you want to upgrade SFHA meet the upgrade requirements.
- 2 Make sure the pre-upgrade tasks are completed.
- 3 Copy the response file to one of the systems where you want to upgrade SFHA.

- 4 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the folder that contains the installation program.
- 6 Start the upgrade from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
./installer -responsefile /tmp/response_file
./installsfha -responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where /tmp/response\_file is the response file's full path name.

## Response file variables to upgrade Storage Foundation and High Availability

[Table 22-1](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to configure SFHA.

**Table 22-1** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA

| Variable          | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{accepteula}   | Specifies whether you agree with the EULA.pdf file on the media.<br>List or scalar: scalar<br>Optional or required: required                            |
| CFG{systems}      | List of systems on which the product is to be installed or uninstalled.<br>List or scalar: list<br>Optional or required: required                       |
| CFG{opt}{keyfile} | Defines the location of an ssh keyfile that is used to communicate with all remote systems.<br>List or scalar: scalar<br>Optional or required: optional |

**Table 22-1** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA (*continued*)

| Variable                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{opt}{tmpath}          | <p>Defines the location where a working directory is created to store temporary files and the packages that are needed during the install. The default location is /var/tmp.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p> |
| CFG{opt}{logpath}         | <p>Mentions the location where the log files are to be copied. The default location is /opt/VRTS/install/logs.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                               |
| CFG{opt}{upgrade}         | <p>Upgrades all packages installed, without configuration.</p> <p>List or scalar: list</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                     |
| CFG{mirrordgname}{system} | <p>If the root dg is encapsulated and you select split mirror is selected:</p> <p>Splits the target disk group name for a system.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                            |
| CFG{splitmirror}{system}  | <p>If the root dg is encapsulated and you select split mirror is selected:</p> <p>Indicates the system where you want a split mirror backup disk group created.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>              |

**Table 22-1** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA (*continued*)

| Variable                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{opt}{disable_dmp_native_support} | <p>If it is set to 1, Dynamic Multi-pathing support for the native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools is disabled after upgrade. Retaining Dynamic Multi-pathing support for the native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools during upgrade increases package upgrade time depending on the number of LUNs and native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools configured on the system.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p> |
| CFG{opt}{hotfix_path}                | <p>Defines the path of a hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed .</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| CFG{opt}{hotfix2_path}               | <p>Defines the path of a second hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| CFG{opt}{hotfix3_path}               | <p>Defines the path of a third hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| CFG{opt}{hotfix4_path}               | <p>Defines the path of a fourth hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                                                                                        |

**Table 22-1** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA (*continued*)

| Variable               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{opt}{hotfix5_path} | Defines the path of a fifth hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: optional |

## Sample response file for SFHA upgrade

The following example shows a response file for upgrading Storage Foundation High Availability.

```
our %CFG;
$CFG{accepteula}=1;
$CFG{client_vxfen_warning}=1;
$CFG{fencing_cps}=[qw(10.198.92.157 10.198.92.158)];
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.92.157"}=443;
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.92.158"}=443;
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.92.157"}=[qw(10.198.92.157)];
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.92.158"}=[qw(10.198.92.158)];
$CFG{opt}{noipc}=1;
$CFG{opt}{updatekeys}=1;
$CFG{opt}{upgrade}=1;
$CFG{systems}=[qw(cdclab-p51a-03 cdclab-p51a-04)];
$CFG{vcs_allowcomms}=1;
1;
```

The `vcs_allowcomms` variable is set to 0 if it is a single-node cluster, and the `llt` and `gdb` processes are not started before upgrade.

## Performing rolling upgrade of SFHA using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform SFHA upgrade on one system to upgrade SFHA on other systems.

You can also create a response file using the `makeresponsefile` option of the installer.

**To perform automated SFHA rolling upgrade**

- 1 Make sure the systems where you want to upgrade SFHA meet the upgrade requirements.
- 2 Make sure the pre-upgrade tasks are completed.
- 3 Copy the response file to the systems where you want to launch the installer.  
See [“Sample response file for SFHA using rolling upgrade”](#) on page 372.
- 4 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.  
See [“Response file variables to upgrade SFHA using rolling upgrade”](#) on page 371.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the folder that contains the installation program.
- 6 Start the upgrade from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
./installer -responsefile /tmp/response_file
./installsfha -responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where /tmp/response\_file is the response file’s full path name.

## Response file variables to upgrade SFHA using rolling upgrade

[Table 22-2](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to upgrade SFHA using rolling upgrade.

**Table 22-2** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA using rolling upgrade

| Variable       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{phase1}{0} | <p>A series of \$CFG{phase1}{N} items define sub-cluster division. The index N indicates the order to do RU phase1. The index starts from 0. Each item has a list of node(at least 1).</p> <p>List or scalar: list</p> <p>Optional or required: conditional required</p> <p>Required if rolling upgrade phase1 needs to be performed.</p> |

**Table 22-2** Response file variables for upgrading SFHA using rolling upgrade  
*(continued)*

| Variable                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{rollingupgrade_phase2} | <p>The CFG{rollingupgrade_phase2} option is used to perform rolling upgrade Phase 2. In the phase, VCS and other agent packages upgrade to the latest version. Product kernel drivers are rolling-upgraded to the latest protocol version.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: conditional required</p> <p>Required if rolling upgrade phase 2 needs to be performed.</p> |
| CFG{rolling_upgrade}       | <p>Starts a rolling upgrade. Using this option, the installer detects the rolling upgrade status on cluster systems automatically without the need to specify rolling upgrade Phase 1 or Phase 2 explicitly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| CFG{systems}               | <p>List of systems on which the product is to be installed or uninstalled.</p> <p>List or scalar: list</p> <p>Optional or required: required</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| CFG{opt}{upgrade}          | <p>Upgrades all packages installed, without configuration.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: optional</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| CFG{accepteula}            | <p>Specifies whether you agree with the EULA.pdf file on the media.</p> <p>List or scalar: scalar</p> <p>Optional or required: required</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## Sample response file for SFHA using rolling upgrade

The following example shows a response file for SFHA using Rolling Upgrade.

```
our %CFG;
$CFG{accepteula}=1;
$CFG{client_vxfen_warning}=1;
$CFG{fencing_cps}=[qw(10.198.90.6)];
$CFG{fencing_cps_ports}{"10.198.90.6"}=50006;
$CFG{fencing_cps_vips}{"10.198.90.6"}=[qw(10.198.90.6)];
$CFG{opt}{gco}=1;
$CFG{opt}{noipc}=1;
$CFG{opt}{rolling_upgrade}=1;
$CFG{opt}{rollingupgrade_phase2}=1;
$CFG{opt}{updatekeys}=1;
$CFG{opt}{upgrade}=1;
$CFG{opt}{vr}=1;
$CFG{phase1}{"0"}=[qw(sys3 sys2)];
$CFG{phase1}{"1"}=[qw(sys1)];
$CFG{systems}=[qw(sys1 sys2 sys3)];
$CFG{vcs_allowcomms}=1;
1;
```

# Upgrading SFHA using Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Live Upgrade](#)
- [About ZFS Boot Environment \(BE\) upgrade](#)
- [Supported upgrade paths for Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade](#)
- [Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems](#)
- [Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems](#)
- [About Live Upgrade in a Volume Replicator \(VVR\) environment](#)

## About Live Upgrade

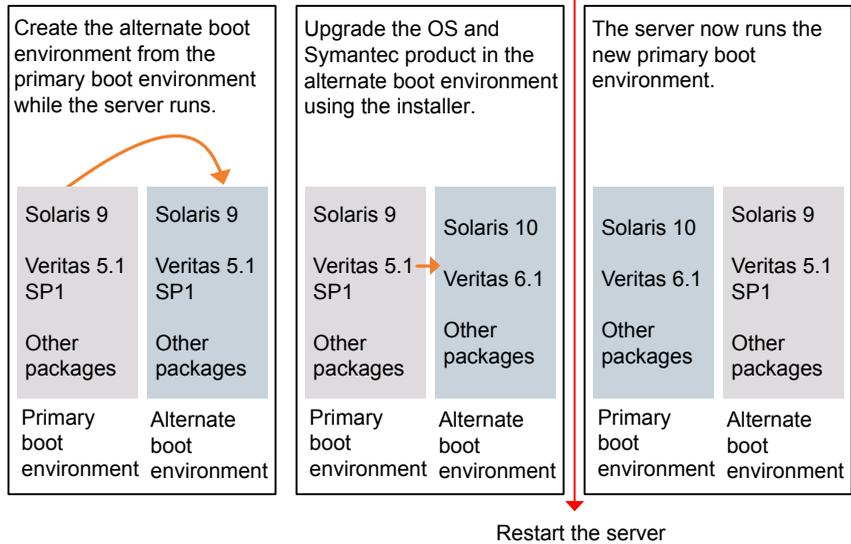
Solaris Live Upgrade provides a method of upgrading a system while the system continues to operate. This is done by creating an alternate boot environment (ABE) from the current boot environment and then upgrading the ABE. Once the ABE is upgraded, you can activate the ABE and then reboot the system.

On Solaris 10 or previous releases, you can use Live Upgrade technology to reduce downtime associated with the OS upgrade and SFHA product upgrade by creating a boot environment on an alternate boot disk.

- See [“Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems”](#) on page 378.

Figure 23-1 illustrates an example of an upgrade of Symantec products from 5.1 SP1 to 6.1, and the operating system from Solaris 9 to Solaris 10 using Live Upgrade.

**Figure 23-1** Live Upgrade process



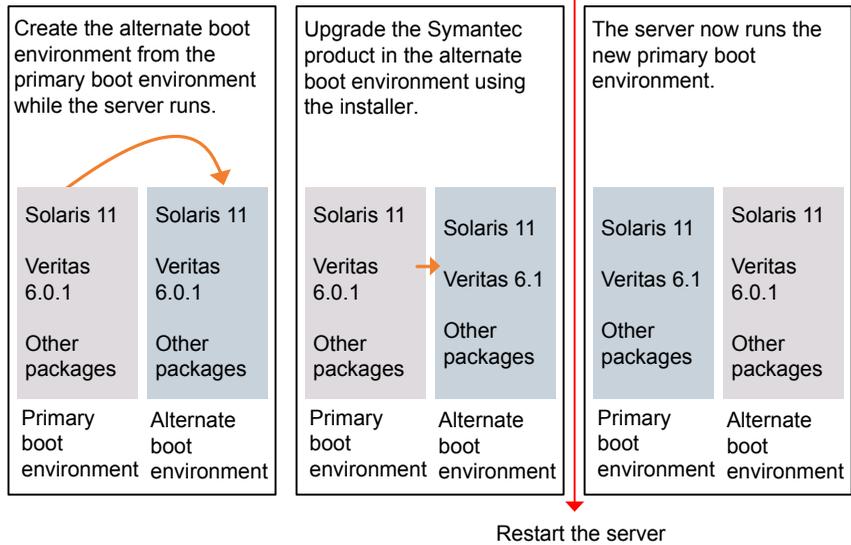
Some service groups (failover and parallel) may be online in this cluster and the Live Upgrade process does not affect them. Downtime is experienced only when the server is restarted to boot into the alternate boot environment.

## About ZFS Boot Environment (BE) upgrade

A Boot Environment (BE) is a bootable instance of the Oracle Solaris operating system image along with any other application software packages installed into that image. System administrators can maintain multiple BEs on their systems, and each BE can have different software versions installed. Upon the initial installation of the Oracle Solaris 11 release onto a system, a BE is created.

On Solaris 11, you can use the `beadm` utility to create and administer additional BEs on your system.

**Figure 23-2** Boot Environment upgrade process



## Supported upgrade paths for Live Upgrade and Boot Environment upgrade

The systems where you plan to use Live Upgrade must run Solaris 9 or Solaris 10. Boot environment upgrade can be used on Solaris 11 system only. You can upgrade from those systems that run Solaris 9, but SFHA 6.1 is not supported on Solaris 9.

For Live Upgrade method, existing SFHA version must be at least 5.0 MP3. For Boot Environment upgrade method, the SFHA version you are upgrading to must be at least 6.1.0.

Symantec requires that both global and non-global zones run the same version of Symantec products.

You can use Live Upgrade or Boot environment upgrade in the following virtualized environments:

**Table 23-1** Live Upgrade or Boot environment upgrade support in virtualized environments

| Environment                    | Procedure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Solaris native zones           | <p>Perform Live Upgrade or Boot Environment upgrade to upgrade both global and non-global zones.</p> <p>If you have a zone root that resides on a VxVM volume, use the following procedure.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Live Upgrade in a Solaris zone environment on Solaris 10”</a> on page 378.</p> <p>Use the standard procedure for the other standby nodes.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems”</a> on page 378.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems”</a> on page 389.</p> |
| Solaris branded zones (BrandZ) | <p>Perform Live Upgrade or Boot Environment upgrade to upgrade the global zone.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems”</a> on page 378.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems”</a> on page 389.</p> <p>Manually upgrade the branded zone separately.</p> <p>Note that while you can perform a Live Upgrade or Boot Environment upgrade in the presence of branded zones, the branded zones are not upgraded.</p>                                                                             |
| Oracle VM Server for SPARC     | <p>Use Live upgrade or Boot Environment upgrade procedure for Control domain as well as guest domains.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems”</a> on page 378.</p> <p>See <a href="#">“Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems”</a> on page 389.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## Performing Live Upgrade in a Solaris zone environment on Solaris 10

If you have a zone root that reside on a VxVM volume, for the purpose of Live Upgrade, create another VxVM volume of same or bigger size than that of the existing zone root for copying the file system contents to alternate boot environment. Use VxVM commands for creating the volume.

Use the standard procedure for the other standby nodes.

See [“Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems”](#) on page 378.

By default, Zone agent `BootState` is set to "multi-user." After you complete the upgrade, you may need to adjust this attribute to the appropriate value before you start your zone through VCS.

---

**Note:** Symantec recommends that you set `BootState` to "multi-user-server" to run applications inside non-global zones.

---

For Solaris 10, make sure that all non-global zones are either in the running or configured state before you use the Symantec product installer to upgrade the Storage Foundation products in the global zone. If the non-global zones are not mounted and running at the time of the upgrade, you must attach each non-global zone with update option manually after upgrade.

For Live Upgrade, if the alternative root environment also has a zone, you cannot install `VRTSodm`. You must remove the `VRTSodm` package first then install the Storage Foundation product. After you restart the alternative root, you can install `VRTSodm`.

## Performing Live Upgrade on Solaris 10 systems

Perform the Live Upgrade using the installer.

For SFHA, the nodes do not form a cluster until all of the nodes are upgraded. At the end of the Live Upgrade of the last node, all the nodes must boot from the alternate boot environment and join the cluster

**Table 23-2** Upgrading SFHA using Solaris 10 Live Upgrade

| Step   | Description                                                                                                                             |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 1 | Prepare to upgrade using Solaris Live Upgrade.<br>See <a href="#">“Before you upgrade SFHA using Solaris Live Upgrade”</a> on page 379. |

**Table 23-2** Upgrading SFHA using Solaris 10 Live Upgrade *(continued)*

| Step   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 2 | Create a new boot environment on the alternate boot disk.<br>See <a href="#">“Creating a new Solaris 10 boot environment on the alternate boot disk”</a> on page 380.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Step 3 | Upgrade SFHA using the installer.<br>See <a href="#">“Upgrading SFHA using the installer for Solaris 10 Live Upgrade”</a> on page 384.<br><hr/> To upgrade only Solaris<br>See the Oracle documentation on Solaris 10 operating system<br><b>Note:</b> If you choose to upgrade the operating system, the Solaris operating system on the alternate boot environment is upgraded. A new boot environment is created on the alternate boot disk by cloning the primary boot environment. |
| Step 4 | Switch the alternate boot environment to be the new primary.<br>See <a href="#">“Completing the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade”</a> on page 385.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Step 5 | Verify Live Upgrade of SFHA.<br>See <a href="#">“Verifying the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade of SFHA”</a> on page 387.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Before you upgrade SFHA using Solaris Live Upgrade

Before you upgrade, perform the following procedure.

### To prepare for the Live Upgrade

- 1 Make sure that the SFHA installation media and the operating system installation images are available and on hand.
- 2 On the primary boot disk, patch the operating system for Live Upgrade.  
 For upgrade from Solaris 9 to 10:
  - SPARC system: Patch 137447-01 or later is required.
 Verify that the patches are installed.
- 3 The version of the Live Upgrade packages must match the version of the operating system to which you want to upgrade on the alternate boot disk. If you upgrade the Solaris operating system, do the following steps:
  - Remove the installed Live Upgrade packages for the current operating system version:

All Solaris versions: `SUNWluu`, `SUNWlur` packages.

Solaris 10 update 7 or later also requires: `SUNWlucfg` package.

- From the new Solaris installation image, install the new versions of the following Live Upgrade packages:

All Solaris versions: `SUNWluu`, `SUNWlur`, and `SUNWlucfg` packages.

Solaris installation media comes with a script for this purpose named `liveupgrade20`. Find the script at

`/cdrom/solaris_release/Tools/Installers/liveupgrade20`. If scripting, you can use:

```
/cdrom/solaris_release/Tools/Installers/liveupgrade20 \
-nodisplay -noconsole
```

If the specified image has some missing patches that are installed on the primary boot disk, note the patch numbers. To ensure that the alternate boot disk is the same as the primary boot disk, you have to install any missing patches on the alternate boot disk.

- 4 If the specified image has some missing patches that are installed on the primary boot disk, note the patch numbers. To ensure that the alternate boot disk is the same as the primary boot disk, you need to install any missing patches on the alternate boot disk.

## Creating a new Solaris 10 boot environment on the alternate boot disk

Symantec provides the `vxlustart` script that runs a series of commands to create the alternate boot environment for the upgrade.

To preview the commands, specify the `vxlustart` script with the `-v` option.

Symantec recommends that you preview the commands with `-v` option to ensure there are no problems before beginning the Live Upgrade process. The `vxlustart` script is located in the `scripts` directory on the distribution media.

---

**Note:** This step can take several hours to complete. Do not interrupt the session as it may leave the boot environment unstable.

---

```
cd /cdrom/scripts
```

```
./vxlustart -v -u targetos_version -s osimage_path -d diskname
```

**Table 23-3**

| vxlustart option | Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -V               | <p>Lists the commands to be executed during the upgrade process without executing them and pre-checks the validity of the command.</p> <p>If the operating system is upgraded, the user is prompted to compare the patches that are installed on the image with the patches installed on the primary boot disk. This determines if any critical patches are not present from the new operating system image.</p> |
| -v               | <p>Indicates verbose, print commands before executing them.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -f               | <p>Forces the vtoc creation on the disk.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| -Y               | <p>Indicates a default yes with no questions asked.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -m               | <p>Uses the already existing vtoc on the disk.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| -D               | <p>Prints with debug option on, and is for debugging.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| -U               | <p>Specifies that only the Storage Foundation products are upgraded. The operating system is cloned from the primary boot disk.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| -g               | <p>Specifies the DG to which the rootdisk belongs. Optional.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| -d               | <p>Indicates the name of the alternate boot disk <code>c#t#d#s2</code> on which you intend to upgrade. The default disk is <code>mirrordisk</code>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -u               | <p>Specifies the operating system version for the upgrade on the alternate boot disk. For example, use <code>5.9</code> for Solaris 9 and <code>5.10</code> for Solaris 10.</p> <p>If you want to upgrade only SF products, specify the current OS version.</p>                                                                                                                                                  |
| -F               | <p>Specifies the root disk's file system, where the default is <code>ufs</code>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Table 23-3** (continued)

| vxlustart option | Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -S               | Specifies the path to the Solaris image. It can be a network/directory path. If the installation uses the CD, this option must not be specified. See <i>Solaris Live Upgrade installation guide</i> for more information about the path. |
| -r               | Specifies that if the computer crashes or restarts before the <code>vxlufinish</code> command is run, the alternate disk is remounted using this option.                                                                                 |
| -k               | Specifies the location of file containing auto-registration information. This file is required by <code>luupgrade (1M)</code> for OS upgrade to Solaris 10 9/10 or a later release.                                                      |
| -x               | Excludes file from newly created BE. ( <code>lucreate -x</code> option)                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -X               | Excludes file list from newly created BE. ( <code>lucreate -f</code> option)                                                                                                                                                             |
| -i               | Includes file from newly created BE. ( <code>lucreate -y</code> option)                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -I               | Includes file list from newly created BE. ( <code>lucreate -Y</code> option)                                                                                                                                                             |
| -z               | Filters file list from newly created BE. ( <code>lucreate -z</code> option)                                                                                                                                                              |
| -w               | Specifies additional mount points. ( <code>lucreate -m</code> option)                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -W               | Specifies additional mount points in a file ( <code>lucreate -M</code> option)                                                                                                                                                           |

If the `-U` option is specified, you can omit the `-s` option. The operating system is cloned from the primary boot disk.

For example, to preview the commands to upgrade only the Symantec product:

```
./vxlustart -v -u 5.10 -U -d disk_name
```

For example, to preview the commands for an upgrade to Solaris 10 update 6:

```
./vxlustart -V -u 5.10 -s /mnt/Solaris_10u6 -d c0t1d0s2
```

In the procedure examples, the primary or current boot environment resides on Disk0 (c0t0d0s2) and the alternate or inactive boot environment resides on Disk1 (c0t1d0s2).

At the end of the process:

- A new boot environment is created on the alternate boot disk by cloning the primary boot environment.
- The Solaris operating system on the alternate boot disk is upgraded, if you have chosen to upgrade the operating system.

### To create a new boot environment on the alternate boot disk

Perform the steps in this procedure on each node in the cluster.

- 1 View the list of VxVM disks on which you want to create the new boot environment.

```
vxdisk list
```

- 2 Before you upgrade, make sure that you exclude the file system mount points on a shared storage that applications use from getting copied to the new boot environment. To prevent these shared mount points from being copied to the new boot environment, create a temporary file containing the file system mountpoints that need to be excluded.

```
cat /var/tmp/file_list
- /ora_mnt
- /sap_mnt
```

Where `/var/tmp/file_list` is a temporary file that contains the list of mount points to be excluded from the new boot environment. The items in the file list are preceded either by a '+' or '-' symbol. The '+' symbol indicates that the mount point is included in the new boot environment. The '-' symbol indicates that the mount point is excluded from the new boot environment.

Apart from file system mount points, you may choose to include or exclude other files. If you have non-global zone in running state in the current boot environment and zone root path is on a shared storage, setup another disk of same or more size for each zone root in alternate boot environment.

- 3 Run one of the following commands to create the alternate boot environment.

For example: To upgrade the operating system:

```
./vxlustart -v -u 5.10 -s /mnt/sol10u9 -d
c0t1d0s2 -z /var/tmp/file_list
```

Where `/mnt/sol10u9` is the path to the operating system image that contains the `.cdtoc` file.

To clone the operating system of current boot environment:

```
./vxlustart -v -u 5.10 -U -d c0t1d0s2 -z /var/tmp/file_list
```

If you have non-global zone with zone root path on shard storage, then to upgrade the OS:

```
./vxlustart -v -u 5.10 -U -d c0t1d0s2 -z /var/tmp/file_list -w
/zone1-rootpath:/dev/vx/dsk/rootpathdg_alt/ rootpathvol_alt:vxfs
```

Where `zone1-rootpath` is root path of zone in present boot environment.

- 4 Update the permissions, user name, and group name of the mount points (created on the ABE) to match that of the existing directories on the primary boot environment.
- 5 If zone root path is on shared storage, update the `/altroot.5.10/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf` file with new block device created in step 2 for all zones to reflect the ABE zone root paths.

- 6 Review the output and note the new mount points. If the system is restarted before completion of the upgrade or if the mounts become unmounted, you may need to remount the disks.

If you need to remount, run the command:

```
vxlustart -r -u targetos_version -d disk_name
```

- 7 After the alternate boot disk is created and mounted on `/altroot.5.10`, install any operating system patches or packages on the alternate boot disk that are required for the Symantec product installation.

```
pkgadd -R /altroot.5.10 -d pkg_dir
```

## Upgrading SFHA using the installer for Solaris 10 Live Upgrade

You can use the Symantec product installer to upgrade SFHA as part of the Live Upgrade.

On a node in the cluster, run the installer on the alternate boot disk to upgrade SFHA on all the nodes in the cluster. The program uninstalls the existing version of SFHA on the alternate boot disk during the process.

At the end of the process, Storage Foundation 6.1 is installed on the alternate boot disk.

### To perform Live Upgrade of SFHA using the installer

- 1 Insert the product disc with Storage Foundation 6.1 or access your copy of the software on the network.

- 2 Run the installer script specifying the root path as the alternate boot disk:

```
./installsfha -upgrade -rootpath /altroot.5.10
```

- 3 Enter the names of the nodes that you want to upgrade to Storage Foundation 6.1.

The installer displays the list of packages to be installed or upgraded on the nodes.

- 4 Press **Return** to continue with the installation.

During Live Upgrade, if the OS of the alternate boot disk is upgraded, the installer does not update the VCS configurations for Oracle, Netlsnr, and Sybase resources. If cluster configurations include these resources, you are prompted to run a list of commands to manually update the configurations after the cluster restarts from the alternate boot disks.

- 5 Verify that the version of the Veritas packages on the alternate boot disk is 6.1.

```
pkginfo -R /altroot.5.10 -l VRTSpkgname
```

For example:

```
pkginfo -R /altroot.5.10 -l VRTSvxvm
```

Review the installation logs at `/altroot.5.10/opt/VRTS/install/logs`.

## Completing the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade

At the end of the process:

- If the original primary boot disk was encapsulated, the alternate boot disk is encapsulated.
- The alternate boot environment is activated.
- The system is booted from the alternate boot disk.

## To complete the Live Upgrade

- 1 Complete the Live upgrade process using one of the following commands. You must enter the command on all nodes in the cluster.

If the primary root disk is not encapsulated, run the following command:

```
./vxlufinish -u target_os_version
Live Upgrade finish on the Solaris release <5.10>
```

If the primary root disk is encapsulated by VxVM, run the following command:

```
./vxlufinish -u target_os_version -g diskgroup
Live Upgrade finish on the Solaris release <5.10>
```

The Live Upgrade process encapsulates the alternate root disk if the primary root disk was encapsulated.

- 2 After the successful completion of `vxlustart`, if the system crashes or restarts before Live Upgrade completes successfully, you can remount the alternate disk using the following command:

```
./vxlustart -r -u target_os_version
```

Then, rerun the `vxlufinish` command from step 1

```
./vxlufinish -u target_os_version
```

If you have enabled VVR, See [“About Live Upgrade in a Volume Replicator \(VVR\) environment”](#) on page 395.

- 3 **Note:** Do not use the `reboot`, `halt`, or `uadmin` commands to restart the system. Use either the `init` or the `shutdown` commands to enable the system to boot using the alternate boot environment.

---

You can ignore the following error if it appears: Error: boot environment `<dest.13445>` already mounted on `</altroot.5.10>`.

```
shutdown -g0 -y -i6
```

- 4 If you want to upgrade the CP server systems that use VCS or SFHA to this version, make sure that you have upgraded all application clusters to this version. Then, upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems.

For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems, see the relevant Installation Guide.

## Verifying the Solaris 10 Live Upgrade of SFHA

To ensure that Live Upgrade has completed successfully, verify that all the nodes have booted from the alternate boot environment and joined the cluster.

### To verify that Live Upgrade completed successfully

- 1 Verify that the alternate boot environment is active.

```
lustatus
```

If the alternate boot environment fails to be active, you can revert to the primary boot environment.

See [“Reverting to the primary boot environment on a Solaris 10 system”](#) on page 387.

- 2 In a cluster environment, make sure that all the GAB ports are up. Note different ports appear for different products.

```
gabconfig -a
Port a gen c03c01 membership 0
Port h gen c03c03 membership 0
```

- 3 Perform other verification as required to ensure that the new boot environment is configured correctly.

## Administering boot environments in Solaris 10 Live Upgrade

Use the following procedures to perform relevant administrative tasks for boot environments.

### Reverting to the primary boot environment on a Solaris 10 system

If the alternate boot environment fails to start, you can revert to the primary boot environment.

On each node, start the system from the primary boot environment in the PROM monitor mode.

```
ok> boot disk0
```

where *disk0* is the primary boot disk.

## Switching the boot environment for Solaris SPARC

- 1 Display the status of Live Upgrade boot environments.

```
lustatus
```

| Boot Environment Name | Is Complete | Active Now | Active On Reboot | Can Delete | Copy Status |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------|------------------|------------|-------------|
| source.2657           | yes         | yes        | yes              | no         | -           |
| dest.2657             | yes         | no         | no               | yes        | -           |

In this example, the primary boot environment is currently (source.2657). You want to activate the alternate boot environment (dest.2657).

- 2 Unmount any file systems that are mounted on the alternate boot environment (dest.2657).

```
lufslist dest.2657
```

```
boot environment name: dest.2657
```

| Filesystem        | fstype | device      | size | Mounted on | Mount Options |
|-------------------|--------|-------------|------|------------|---------------|
| /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1 | swap   | 4298342400  | -    | -          | -             |
| /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0 | ufs    | 15729328128 | /    | -          | -             |
| /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s5 | ufs    | 8591474688  | /var | -          | -             |
| /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s3 | ufs    | 5371625472  | /vxf | -          | -             |

```
luumount dest.2657
```

- 3 Activate the Live Upgrade boot environment.

```
luactivate dest.2657
```

- 4 Restart the system.

```
shutdown -g0 -i6 -y
```

The system automatically selects the boot environment entry that was activated.

# Performing Boot Environment upgrade on Solaris 11 systems

Perform the BE upgrade manually or use the installer. For SFHA, the nodes do not form a cluster until all of the nodes are upgraded. At the end of the BE upgrade of the last node, all the nodes must boot from the alternate BE and join the cluster.

**Table 23-4** Upgrading SFHA using BE upgrade

| Step   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 1 | Create a new BE on the primary boot disk.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Creating a new Solaris 11 BE on the primary boot disk”</a> on page 389.                                                                                                               |
| Step 2 | Upgrade SFHA using the installer.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Upgrading SFHA using the installer for upgrading BE on Solaris 11”</a> on page 390.<br><br>To upgrade only Solaris<br><br>See the Oracle documentation on Oracle Solaris 11 operating system. |
| Step 3 | Switch the alternate BE to be the new primary.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Completing the SFHA upgrade on BE on Solaris 11”</a> on page 392.                                                                                                                |
| Step 4 | Verify BE upgrade of SFHA.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Verifying Solaris 11 BE upgrade”</a> on page 392.                                                                                                                                                    |

## Creating a new Solaris 11 BE on the primary boot disk

Run the `beadm create` command on each node in the cluster to create a new BE on the primary boot disk.

At the end of the process, a new BE is created on the primary boot disk by cloning the primary BE.

### To create a new BE on the primary boot disk

Perform the steps in this procedure on each node in the cluster.

- 1 View the list of BE in the primary disk.  

```
beadm list
```
- 2 If you have solaris brand zones in running state for which zone root is on shared storage, set `AutoStart` to 0 for the service group containing zone resource.  

```
hagrps -modify <group> AutoStart 0
```

```
haconf -dump
```
- 3 Create a new BE in the primary boot disk.  

```
beadm create beName
```

```
beadm mount beName mountpoint
```
- 4 Reset `AutoStart` to 1 for the service group containing zone resource in step [2](#).  

```
hagrps -modify <group> AutoStart 1
```

```
haconf -dump
```

If VVR is configured, it is recommended that `<beName>` should have the value `altroot.5.11` and `<mountpoint>` should have the value `/altroot.5.11`.

## Upgrading SFHA using the installer for upgrading BE on Solaris 11

You can use the Symantec product installer to upgrade SFHA on a BE.

On a node in the cluster, run the installer on the primary boot disk to upgrade SFHA on all the nodes in the cluster.

At the end of the process, the Storage Foundation 6.1 is installed on the alternate BE.

### To perform BE upgrade of SFHA using the installer

- 1 Insert the product disc with Storage Foundation 6.1 or access your copy of the software on the network.
- 2 If you had solaris brand zones in running state in the present BE when you created alternate BE, set the publisher for package repository for BEs of each of the zones.

```
/usr/bin/pkg -R /altrootpath/zone-root/root
set-publisher -g /<path>/VRTSpkgs.p5p Symantec
```

For example:

```
/usr/bin/pkg -R /altroot.5.11/export/home/zone1/root
set-publisher -g /mnt/VRTSpkgs.p5p Symantec
```

- 3 Run the installer script specifying the root path as the alternate BE:  

```
./installsfha -upgrade -rootpath /altroot.5.11
```
- 4 Enter the names of the nodes that you want to upgrade to Storage Foundation 6.1.

The installer displays the list of packages to be installed or upgraded on the nodes.

- 5 Press **Return** to continue with the installation.

During BE upgrade, if the OS of the alternate BE is upgraded, the installer does not update the VCS configurations for Oracle, Netlsnr, and Sybase resources. If cluster configurations include these resources, you are prompted to run a list of commands to manually update the configurations after the cluster restarts from the alternate BE.

- 6 Verify that the version of the Veritas packages on the alternate BE is 6.1.

```
pkg -R /altroot.5.11 list VRTS*
```

Review the installation logs at `/altroot.5.11/opt/VRTS/install/logs`.

- 7 Unset the publisher set in step 2.

```
/usr/bin/pkg -R /altrootpath/zone-root/root
unset-publisher Symantec
```

## Completing the SFHA upgrade on BE on Solaris 11

At the end of the process:

- The alternate BE is activated.
- The system is booted from the alternate BE.

### To complete the BE upgrade

- 1 Activate the alternate BE.

```
beadm activate altroot.5.11
```

- 2 Stop application and VCS on all nodes.

```
hastop -all
```

If you have enabled VVR,

See [“About Live Upgrade in a Volume Replicator \(VVR\) environment”](#) on page 395.

- 3 Restart all the nodes in the cluster. The BE on the alternate disk is activated when you restart the nodes.

---

**Note:** Do not use the `reboot`, `halt`, or `uadmin` commands to restart the system. Use either the `init` or the `shutdown` commands to enable the system to boot using the alternate BE.

---

```
shutdown -g0 -y -i6
```

- 4 If you want to upgrade the CP server systems that use VCS or SFHA to this version, make sure that you upgrade all application clusters to this version. Then, upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems.

For instructions to upgrade VCS or SFHA on the CP server systems, see the *VCS or SFHA Installation Guide*.

## Verifying Solaris 11 BE upgrade

To ensure that BE upgrade has completed successfully, verify that all the nodes have booted from the alternate BE and joined the cluster.

### To verify that BE upgrade completed successfully

- 1 Verify that the alternate BE is active.

```
beadm list
```

If the alternate BE fails to be active, you can revert to the primary BE.

See [“Reverting to the primary BE on a Solaris 11 system”](#) on page 394.

- 2 In a cluster environment, make sure that all the GAB ports are up. Note that different ports appear for different products.

```
gabconfig -a
Port a gen c03c01 membership 0
Port h gen c03c03 membership 0
```

- 3 Perform other verification as required to ensure that the new BE is configured correctly.

If you have set `AutoStart` to 0 for the service group containing zone resource earlier, perform the following steps:

- Verify whether the zpool on which the root file system of the zone is residing is imported

```
zpool list
```

If not imported, `online` the zpool resource.

- Attach the zone.

```
zoneadm -z <zone> attach
```

- Reset `AutoStart` to 1 for the service group containing zone resource.

```
hagrps -modify <group> AutoStart 1
```

If you have solaris10 brand zone on your system, you must manually upgrade the packages inside the solaris10 brand zone with packages from Solaris 10 install media.

If you have installed `VRTSvxfs` or `VRTSodm` packages inside the zones, you need to manually upgrade these packages inside the zone.

## Administering BEs in Solaris 11 BE upgrade

Use the following procedures to perform relevant administrative tasks for BEs.

## Switching the BE for Solaris SPARC

### 1 Display the status of BEs.

```
beadm list

Boot Environment Active Mountpoint Space Policy Created
--
solaris NR / 13.08G static 2012-11-14 10:22
altroot.5.11 - - 3.68G static 2013-01-06 18:41
```

In this example, the primary boot disk is currently *solaris*. You want to activate the alternate boot disk *altroot.5.11*.

### 2 Activate the BE.

```
beadm activate altroot.5.11
```

### 3 Restart the system to complete the BE activation.

```
shutdown -g0 -i6 -y
```

The system automatically selects the BE entry that was activated.

### 4 You can destroy an existing BE.

```
beadm destroy altroot.5.11
```

## Reverting to the primary BE on a Solaris 11 system

Boot the system to `ok` prompt.

View the available BEs.

To view the BEs, enter the following:

```
ok> boot -L
```

Select the option of the original BE to which you need to boot.

To boot to the BE

```
boot -z <path to boot env>
```

For example:

```
{0} ok boot -L
Boot device: /virtual-devices@100/channel-devices@200/disk@0:a
File and args: -L
1 Oracle Solaris 11 11/11 SPARC
```

```
2 solaris-backup-1
Select environment to boot: [1 - 2]: 1
```

To boot the selected entry, enter the following:

```
boot [<root-device>] -Z rpool/ROOT/solaris
```

```
Program terminated
{0} ok boot -Z rpool/ROOT/solaris
```

## About Live Upgrade in a Volume Replicator (VVR) environment

This section provides an overview of the VVR upgrade process.

In an SFHA environment that uses Volume Replicator, the following scripts provide the means to upgrade the VVR configuration:

- `vvr_upgrade_lu_start`
- `vvr_upgrade_lu_finish`

The scripts are available in the `scripts` directory in the install media.

- Immediately before restarting the system to switch over to the alternate boot environment, run the `vvr_upgrade_lu_start` script.

---

**Note:** Use the `vvr_upgrade_lu_start` script only when the applications are stopped and the next step is to switch over to the alternate boot environment.

---

- After the `vvr_upgrade_lu_start` script completes successfully, restart the system. This restart results in the system booting from the alternate boot environment.
- After the objects are recovered, and the disk group version is upgraded (if desired), run the `vvr_upgrade_lu_finish` script.

# Performing post-upgrade tasks

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Optional configuration steps](#)
- [Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group](#)
- [Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade](#)
- [Post upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database](#)
- [Recovering VVR if automatic upgrade fails](#)
- [Post-upgrade tasks when VCS agents for VVR are configured](#)
- [Upgrading disk layout versions](#)
- [Upgrading VxVM disk group versions](#)
- [Updating variables](#)
- [Setting the default disk group](#)
- [Upgrading the Array Support Library](#)
- [Converting from QuickLog to Multi-Volume support](#)
- [About enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode](#)
- [Verifying the Storage Foundation and High Availability upgrade](#)

## Optional configuration steps

After the upgrade is complete, additional tasks may need to be performed.

You can perform the following optional configuration steps:

- If Volume Replicator (VVR) is configured, do the following steps in the order shown:
  - Reattach the RLINKs.
  - Associate the SRL.
- To encapsulate and mirror the boot disk, follow the procedures in the "Administering Disks" chapter of the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.
- To upgrade VxFS Disk Layout versions and VxVM Disk Group versions, follow the upgrade instructions.  
See ["Upgrading VxVM disk group versions"](#) on page 409.

## Re-joining the backup boot disk group into the current disk group

Perform this procedure to rejoin the backup boot disk if you split the mirrored boot disk during upgrade. After a successful upgrade and reboot, you no longer need to keep the boot disk group backup.

### To re-join the backup boot disk group

- ◆ Re-join the *backup\_bootdg* disk group to the boot disk group.

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxrootadm -Y join backup_bootdg
```

where the `-Y` option indicates a silent operation, and *backup\_bootdg* is the name of the backup boot disk group that you created during the upgrade.

## Reverting to the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade

Perform this procedure if your upgrade was unsuccessful and you split the mirrored boot disk to back it up during upgrade. You can revert to the backup that you created when you upgraded.

**To revert the backup boot disk group after an unsuccessful upgrade**

- 1 To determine the boot disk groups, look for the *rootvol* volume in the output of the `vxprint` command.

```
vxprint
```

- 2 Use the `vxdbg` command to find the boot disk group where you are currently booted.

```
vxdbg bootdg
```

- 3 Boot the operating system from the backup boot disk group.
- 4 Join the original boot disk group to the backup disk group.

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxrootadm -Y join original_bootdg
```

where the `-Y` option indicates a silent operation, and *original\_bootdg* is the boot disk group that you no longer need.

## Post upgrade tasks for migrating the SFDB repository database

Database Storage Checkpoints that have been created by using the SFDB tools before upgrade are visible using the `vxsfadm` CLI, and you can mount these Database Storage Checkpoints and roll back to them, if required. However, creating clones by using migrated Database Storage Checkpoints is not supported.

If you want to continue using previously created FlashSnap snapplans to take snapshots, you must validate them by using the `-o validate` option of the `vxsfadm` command.

- Rename startup script after upgrading from 5.0x and before migrating the SFDB repository  
 See [“After upgrading from 5.0.x and before migrating SFDB”](#) on page 404.
- Migrate from a 5.0x SFDB repository database to 6.1  
 See [“Migrating from a 5.0 repository database to 6.1”](#) on page 398.
- Migrate from a 5.1 or 5.1SP1 repository database to 6.1  
 See [“Migrating from a 5.1 or higher repository database to 6.1”](#) on page 401.

### Migrating from a 5.0 repository database to 6.1

Perform the following on one node only.

**To migrate from a 5.0 repository database to 6.1**

- 1** Rename the startup script NO\_S\*vxdbms3 to S\*vxdbms3.

See “[After upgrading from 5.0.x and before migrating SFDB](#)” on page 404.

- 2** As root, dump out the old Sybase ASA repository. If you are using SFHA or SF Oracle RAC, you only need to do this on one node.

```
/opt/VRTSdbed/migrate/sfua_rept_migrate
```

- 3** On the same node that you ran `sfua_rept_migrate` run the following command as Oracle user. For each Oracle instance, migrate the old repository data to the SQLite repository.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_update -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME -G \
Oracle_service_group
```

- 4** By default, the repository is created on the file system which contains the Oracle SYSTEM tablespace. If you need an alternative repository path, first verify the following requirements:

- Repository path has to be a directory writable by Oracle user.
- If you are using SFHA, the repository must be accessible by all nodes. You can put it in a resource group under VCS control so it can be failed over together with the Oracle database.
- The update commands will not be able to verify accessibility of the repository path and will fail if you have not set up the path correctly.

Create an alternate repository path.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_update -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME \
-G Oracle_service_group -R Alternate_path
```

- 5** If you are using Database Flashsnap for off-host processing, and if you have a repository on the secondary host that you need to migrate: perform the previous steps on the secondary host.

- 6** On the primary host, edit your snapplans to remove the "SNAPSHOT\_DG=SNAP\_\*" parameter and add "SNAPSHOT\_DG\_PREFIX=SNAP\_\*". The parameter can be any PREFIX value and not necessarily "SNAP\_\*".

For example:

```
$ /usr/oracle> more SNAPPLAN1
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=system1
SECONDARY_HOST=system1.example.com
PRIMARY_DG=system1_data
SNAPSHOT_DG=SNAP_system1_data
ORACLE_SID=HN1
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/oracle/orahome/dbs/arch
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

```
$ /usr/oracle> more SNAPPLAN1
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=system1
SECONDARY_HOST=system1.example.com
PRIMARY_DG=judge_data
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_system1_data
ORACLE_SID=HN1
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/oracle/orahome/dbs/arch
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

- 7 On the primary host, revalidate your snapshots using the following command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/vxsfadm -s flashsnap \
-a oracle -c SNAPPLAN -o validate
```

This completes the migration of the repository for Database Storage Checkpoints and Database Tiered Storage parameters.

---

**Note:** While you revalidate the snapshot configuration file (`snapplan`) from an older release, use the `vxsfadm -c <configfile>` option to avoid the default values from overriding the old values.

---

To begin using the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools:  
 see *Storage Foundation: Storage and Availability Management for Oracle Databases*.

## Migrating from a 5.1 or higher repository database to 6.1

Perform the following on one node only.

### To migrate from a 5.1 or higher repository database to 6.1

- 1 Run the following command as Oracle user. For each Oracle instance, migrate the old repository data to the SQLite repository.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_update -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME -G \
Oracle_service_group
```

- 2 By default, the repository is created on the file system which contains the Oracle SYSTEM tablespace. If you need an alternative repository path, first verify the following requirements:

- Repository path has to be a directory writable by Oracle user.
- If you are using SFHA, the repository must be accessible by all nodes. You can put it in a resource group under VCS control so it can be failed over together with the Oracle database.
- The update commands will not be able to verify accessibility of the repository path and will fail if you have not set up the path correctly.

Create an alternate repository path.

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/dbed_update -S $ORACLE_SID -H $ORACLE_HOME \
-G Oracle_service_group -R Alternate_path
```

- 3** If you are using Database Flashsnap for off-host processing, and if you have a repository on the secondary host that you need to migrate: perform the previous steps on the secondary host.

- 4 On the primary host, edit your snapplans to remove the "SNAPSHOT\_DG=SNAP\_\*" parameter and add "SNAPSHOT\_DG\_PREFIX=SNAP\_\*". The parameter can be any PREFIX value and not necessarily "SNAP\_\*".

For example:

```
$ /usr/oracle> more SNAPPLAN1
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=system1
SECONDARY_HOST=system1.example.com
PRIMARY_DG=system1_data
SNAPSHOT_DG=SNAP_system1_data
ORACLE_SID=HN1
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/oracle/orahome/dbs/arch
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

```
$ /usr/oracle> more SNAPPLAN1
SNAPSHOT_VERSION=5.0
PRIMARY_HOST=system1
SECONDARY_HOST=system1.example.com
PRIMARY_DG=judge_data
SNAPSHOT_DG_PREFIX=SNAP_system1_data
ORACLE_SID=HN1
ARCHIVELOG_DEST=/oracle/orahome/dbs/arch
SNAPSHOT_ARCHIVE_LOG=yes
SNAPSHOT_MODE=online
SNAPSHOT_PLAN_FOR=database
SNAPSHOT_PLEX_TAG=dbed_flashsnap
SNAPSHOT_VOL_PREFIX=SNAP_
ALLOW_REVERSE_RESYNC=no
SNAPSHOT_MIRROR=1
```

- 5 On the primary host, revalidate your snapshots using the following command:

```
$ /opt/VRTS/bin/vxsfadm -s flashsnap \
-a oracle -c SNAPPLAN -o validate
```

This completes the migration of the repository for Database Storage Checkpoints and Database Tiered Storage parameters.

---

**Note:** While you revalidate the snapshot configuration file (`snapplan`) from an older release, use the `vxsfadm -c <configfile>` option to avoid the default values from overriding the old values.

---

To begin using the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools:

See *Storage Foundation: Storage and Availability Management for Oracle Databases*

## After upgrading from 5.0.x and before migrating SFDB

When upgrading from SFHA version 5.0 to SFHA 6.1 the `S*vxdbs3` startup script is renamed to `NO_S*vxdbs3`. The `S*vxdbs3` startup script is required by `sfua_rept_migrate`. Thus when `sfua_rept_migrate` is run, it is unable to find the `S*vxdbs3` startup script and gives the error message:

```
/etc/rc.d/rc2.d/S*vxdbs3 not found
SFORA sfua_rept_migrate ERROR V-81-3558 File: is missing.
SFORA sfua_rept_migrate ERROR V-81-9160 Failed to mount repository.
```

### To prevent `S*vxdbs3` startup script error

- ◆ Rename the startup script `NO_S*vxdbs3` to `S*vxdbs3`.

## Recovering VVR if automatic upgrade fails

If the upgrade fails during the configuration phase, after displaying the VVR upgrade directory, the configuration needs to be restored before the next attempt. Run the scripts in the upgrade directory in the following order to restore the configuration:

```
restoresrl
adddcn
srlprot
attrlink
start.rvg
```

After the configuration is restored, the current step can be retried.

# Post-upgrade tasks when VCS agents for VVR are configured

The following lists post-upgrade tasks with VCS agents for VVR:

- [Unfreezing the service groups](#)
- [Restoring the original configuration when VCS agents are configured](#)

## Unfreezing the service groups

This section describes how to unfreeze services groups and bring them online.

### To unfreeze the service groups

- 1 On any node in the cluster, make the VCS configuration writable:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Edit the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf` file to remove the deprecated attributes, SRL and RLinks, in the RVG and RVGShared resources.

- 3 Verify the syntax of the main.cf file, using the following command:

```
hacf -verify
```

- 4 Unfreeze all service groups that you froze previously. Enter the following command on any node in the cluster:

```
hagrps -unfreeze service_group -persistent
```

- 5 Save the configuration on any node in the cluster.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

- 6 If you are upgrading in a shared disk group environment, bring online the RVGShared groups with the following commands:

```
hagrps -online RVGShared -sys masterhost
```

- 7 Bring the respective IP resources online on each node.

See “[Preparing for the upgrade when VCS agents are configured](#)” on page 307.

Type the following command on any node in the cluster.

```
hares -online ip_name -sys system
```

This IP is the virtual IP that is used for replication within the cluster.

- 8 In shared disk group environment, online the virtual IP resource on the master node.

## Restoring the original configuration when VCS agents are configured

This section describes how to restore a configuration with VCS configured agents.

---

**Note:** Restore the original configuration only after you have upgraded VVR on all nodes for the Primary and Secondary cluster.

---

### To restore the original configuration

- 1 Import all the disk groups in your VVR configuration.

```
vxdg -t import diskgroup
```

Each disk group should be imported onto the same node on which it was online when the upgrade was performed. The reboot after the upgrade could result in another node being online; for example, because of the order of the nodes in the AutoStartList. In this case, switch the VCS group containing the disk groups to the node on which the disk group was online while preparing for the upgrade.

```
hagrps -switch grpname -to system
```

- 2 Recover all the disk groups by typing the following command on the node on which the disk group was imported in step 1.

```
vxrecover -bs
```

- 3 Upgrade all the disk groups on all the nodes on which VVR has been upgraded:

```
vxdg upgrade diskgroup
```

- 4 On all nodes that are Secondary hosts of VVR, make sure the data volumes on the Secondary are the same length as the corresponding ones on the Primary. To shrink volumes that are longer on the Secondary than the Primary, use the following command on each volume on the Secondary:

```
vxassist -g diskgroup shrinkto volume_name volume_length
```

where *volume\_length* is the length of the volume on the Primary.

---

**Note:** Do not continue until you complete this step on all the nodes in the Primary and Secondary clusters on which VVR is upgraded.

---

- 5 Restore the configuration according to the method you used for upgrade:

If you upgraded with the VVR upgrade scripts

Complete the upgrade by running the `vvr_upgrade_finish` script on all the nodes on which VVR was upgraded. We recommend that you first run the `vvr_upgrade_finish` script on each node that is a Secondary host of VVR.

Perform the following tasks in the order indicated:

- To run the `vvr_upgrade_finish` script, type the following command:

```
/disc_path/scripts/vvr_upgrade_finish
```

where *disc\_path* is the location where the Veritas software disc is mounted.

- Attach the RLINKs on the nodes on which the messages were displayed:

```
vxrlink -g diskgroup -f att rlink_name
```

If you upgraded with the product installer

Use the Veritas product installer and select Start an Installed Product. Or use the installation script with the `-start` option.

- 6 Bring online the RVGLogowner group on the master:

```
hagrpd -online RVGLogownerGrp -sys masterhost
```

- 7 If you plan on using IPv6, you must bring up IPv6 addresses for virtual replication IP on primary/secondary nodes and switch from using IPv4 to IPv6 host names or addresses, enter:

```
vradm changeip newpri=v6 newsec=v6
```

where v6 is the IPv6 address.

- 8 Restart the applications that were stopped.

## Upgrading disk layout versions

In this release, you can create and mount only file systems with disk layout Version 7, 8, 9, and 10. You can only local mount disk layout Version 6 only to upgrade to a later disk layout version.

---

**Note:** If you plan to use 64-bit quotas, you must upgrade to the latest disk layout Version 10. The use of 64-bit quota on earlier disk layout versions is deprecated in this release.

---

Disk layout Version 6 has been deprecated and you cannot cluster mount an existing file system that has disk layout Version 6. To upgrade a cluster file system with disk layout Version 6, you must local mount the file system and then upgrade the file system using the `vxupgrade` utility to a later version.

### To upgrade the disk layout versions

- ◆ To get to disk layout Version 10 from Version 6. You must incrementally upgrade the disk layout of this file system. For example:

```
vxupgrade -n 7 /mnt
vxupgrade -n 8 /mnt
vxupgrade -n 9 /mnt
vxupgrade -n 10 /mnt
```

See the `vxupgrade(1M)` manual page.

Support for disk layout Version 4 and 5 has been removed. You must upgrade any existing file systems with disk layout Version 4 or 5 to disk layout Version 7 or later using the `vxfsconvert` command.

See the `vxfsconvert(1M)` manual page.

---

**Note:** Symantec recommends that you upgrade existing file systems to the highest supported disk layout version prior to upgrading to this release. Once a disk layout version has been upgraded, it is not possible to downgrade to the previous version.

---

You can check which disk layout version your file system has by using the following command:

```
fstyp -v /dev/vx/dsk/dg1/vol1 | grep -i version
```

For more information about disk layout versions, see the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

## Upgrading VxVM disk group versions

All Veritas Volume Manager disk groups have an associated version number. Each VxVM release supports a specific set of disk group versions. VxVM can import and perform tasks on disk groups with those versions. Some new features and tasks work only on disk groups with the current disk group version. Before you can perform the tasks or use the features, upgrade the existing disk groups.

For 6.1, the Veritas Volume Manager disk group version is different than in previous VxVM releases. Symantec recommends that you upgrade the disk group version if you upgraded from a previous VxVM release.

After upgrading to SFHA 6.1, you must upgrade any existing disk groups that are organized by ISP. Without the version upgrade, configuration query operations continue to work fine. However, configuration change operations will not function correctly.

For more information about ISP disk groups, refer to the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

Use the following command to find the version of a disk group:

```
vxdg list diskgroup
```

To upgrade a disk group to the current disk group version, use the following command:

```
vxdg upgrade diskgroup
```

For more information about disk group versions, see the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

## Updating variables

In `/etc/profile`, update the `PATH` and `MANPATH` variables as needed.

`MANPATH` can include `/opt/VRTS/man` and `PATH` can include `/opt/VRTS/bin`.

## Setting the default disk group

You may find it convenient to create a system-wide default disk group. The main benefit of creating a default disk group is that VxVM commands default to the default disk group. You do not need to use the `-g` option.

You can set the name of the default disk group after installation by running the following command on a system:

```
vxdtl defaultdg diskgroup
```

See the *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

## Upgrading the Array Support Library

VxVM provides support for new disk arrays in the form of Array Support Library (ASL) software package.

### Adding JBOD support for storage arrays for which there is not an ASL available

If an array is of type `A/A-A`, `A/P` or `ALUA` and a suitable ASL is not available, the array must be claimed as a JBOD of type `A/P`. This is to prevent path delays and I/O failures arising. As JBODs are assumed to be type `A/A` by default, you must create appropriate JBOD entries for such arrays.

#### To configure an `A/A-A`, `A/P` or `ALUA` array as a JBOD

- 1 Stop all applications, such as databases, from accessing the VxVM volumes that are configured on the array, and unmount all VxFS file systems and Storage Checkpoints that are configured on the array.
- 2 Add the array as a JBOD of type `A/P`:

```
vxddladm addjbod vid=SUN pid=T300 policy=ap
```

- 3** If you have not already done so, upgrade the Storage Foundation or VxVM software to 6.1. Device discovery is performed during the upgrade, and the array is claimed as a JBOD of appropriate type.

If you have already upgraded your system to 6.1, run the following command to perform device discovery:

```
vxdctl enable
```

- 4** Verify that the array has been added with the policy set to APdisk:

```
vxdldadm listjbod
VID PID Opcode Page Code Page Offset SNO length Policy
=====
SUN T300 18 -1 36 12 APdisk
```

- 5** Check that the correct devices are listed for the array:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
APdisk_0 auto:cdsdisk - - online invalid
APdisk_1 auto:cdsdisk - - online invalid
APdisk_2 auto:cdsdisk - - online invalid
...
```

## Unsuppressing DMP for EMC PowerPath disks

This section is only applicable if you want to upgrade a system that includes EMC PowerPath disks.

In releases of VxVM before 4.1, a combination of DMP subpaths and the controllers of DMP subpaths were usually suppressed to prevent interference between DMP and the EMC PowerPath multi-pathing driver. Suppression has the effect of hiding these subpaths and their controllers from DMP, and as a result VxVM cannot see the disks on these subpaths and controllers.

VxVM 4.1 and later releases have the ability to discover EMCpower disks, and configure them as autodiscovered disks that DMP recognizes are under the control of a separate multi-pathing driver. This has the benefit of allowing such disks to be reconfigured in cluster-shareable disk groups. Before upgrading to VxVM 6.1, you must remove the suppression of the subpaths and controllers so that DMP can determine the association between EMCpower metadevices and `c#t#d#` disk devices.

In the following scenarios, you may need to unsuppress DMP subpaths and controllers:

- Converting a foreign disk  
See [“Converting a foreign disk to auto:simple”](#) on page 412.
- Converting a defined disk  
See [“Converting a defined disk to auto:simple”](#) on page 414.
- Converting a powervxvm disk  
See [“Converting a powervxvm disk to auto:simple”](#) on page 417.

Because EMCpower disks are auto-discovered, the `powervxvm` script should be disabled and removed from the startup script. To remove the `powervxvm` script, use the command:

```
powervxvm remove
```

## Converting a foreign disk to auto:simple

Release 4.0 of VxVM provides the `vxddladm addforeign` command to configure foreign disks with default disk offsets for the private regions and public regions, and to define them as simple disks. A foreign disk must be manually converted to `auto:simple` format before you upgrade to VxVM 6.1.

If the foreign disk is defined on a slice other than `s2`, you must copy the partition entry for that slice to that for `s0` and change the tag. If the tag of the original slice is changed, the status of the disk is seen as `online:aliased` after the upgrade.

The following example is used to illustrate the procedure. The `vxdisk list` command can be used to display the EMCpower disks that are known to VxVM:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d1l2s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcpower10c simple fdisk fdg online
...
```

The `vxprint` command is used to display information about the disk group, `fdg`:

```
vxprint
Disk group: fdg
TY NAME ASSOC KSTATE LENGTH PLOFFS STATE TUTILO PUTILO
dg fdg fdg - - - - -
dm fdisk emcpower10c - 17673456 - - -
...
```

## To convert a foreign disk to `auto:simple` format

- 1 Stop all the volumes in the disk group, and then deport it:

```
vxvol -g fdg stopall
vxdg deport fdg
```

- 2 Use the `vxddladm` command to remove definitions for the foreign devices:

```
vxddladm rmforeign blockpath=/dev/dsk/emcpower10c \
 charpath=/dev/rdisk/emcpower10c
```

If you now run the `vxdisk list` command, the EMCpower disk is no longer displayed:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
...
```

- 3 Run the `vxprtvtoc` command to retrieve the partition table entry for the device:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxprtvtoc -f /tmp/vtoc /dev/rdisk/emcpower10c
```

- 4 Use the `vxedvtoc` command to modify the partition tag and update the VTOC:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxedvtoc -f /tmp/vtoc /dev/rdisk/emcpower10c
```

```
THE ORIGINAL PARTITIONING IS AS FOLLOWS:
```

```
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
0 0x0 0x201 0 0
1 0x0 0x200 0 0
2 0x5 0x201 0 17675520
```

```
THE NEW PARTITIONING WILL BE AS FOLLOWS:
```

```
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
0 0xf 0x201 0 17675520
1 0x0 0x200 0 0
2 0x5 0x201 0 17675520
```

```
DO YOU WANT TO WRITE THIS TO THE DISK ? [Y/N] :Y
```

```
WRITING THE NEW VTOC TO THE DISK #
```

- 5 Upgrade to VxVM 6.1 using the appropriate upgrade procedure.

- 6 After upgrading VxVM, use the `vxdisk list` command to validate the conversion to `auto:simple` format:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcpower10s2 auto:simple - - online
...
```

To display the physical device that is associated with the metadvice, `emcpower10s2`, enter the following command:

```
vxddmpadm getsubpaths dmpnodename=emcpower10s2
```

- 7 Import the disk group and start the volumes:

```
vxdg import fdg
vxvol -g fdg startall
```

You can use the `vxdisk list` command to confirm that the disk status is displayed as `online:simple`:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcpower10s2 auto:simple fdisk fdg online
```

## Converting a defined disk to auto:simple

In VxVM 4.0, and particularly in prior releases, EMCpower disks could be defined by a persistent disk access record (`darec`), and identified as simple disks. If an EMCpower disk is defined with a persistent `darec`, it must be manually converted to `auto:simple` format before upgrading to VxVM 6.1.

If the defined disk is defined on a slice other than `s2`, you must copy the partition entry for that slice to that for `s0` and change the tag. If the tag of the original slice is changed, the status of the disk is seen as `online:aliased` after the upgrade.

The following example is used to illustrate the procedure. The `ls` command shows the mapping of the EMC disks to persistent disk access records:

```
ls -l /dev/vx/dmp/emcdisk1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root other 36 Sep 24 17:59 /dev/vx/dmp/emcdisk1->
/dev/dsk/c6t0d11s5
ls -l /dev/vx/rdmp/emcdisk1
```

```
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root other 40Sep 24 17:59 /dev/vx/rdmp/emcdisk1->
/dev/dsk/c6t0d11s5
```

Here the fifth partition of `c6t0d11s5` is defined as the persistent disk access record `emcdisk1`.

The `vxdisk list` command can be used to display the EMCpower disks that are known to VxVM:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcdisk1 simple fdisk fdg online
...
```

The `vxprint` command is used to display information about the disk group, `fdg`:

```
vxprint
Disk group: fdg
TY NAME ASSOC KSTATE LENGTH PLOFFS STATE TUTILO PUTILO
dg fdg fdg - - - - - -
dm fdisk emcdisk1 - 17673456 - - - -
...
```

## To convert a disk with a persistent disk access record to auto:simple format

- 1 Stop all the volumes in the disk group, and then deport it:

```
vxvol -g fdg stopall
vxdg deport fdg
```

- 2 Use the `vxdisk rm` command to remove the persistent record definitions:

```
vxdisk rm emcdisk1
```

If you now run the `vxdisk list` command, the EMCpower disk is no longer displayed:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
...
```

- 3 Use the `vxprtvtoc` command to retrieve the partition table entry for the device:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxprtvtoc -f /tmp/hdisk /dev/rdisk/c6t0d11s2
```

**4** Use the `vxedvtoc` command to modify the partition tag and update the VTOC:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxedvtoc -f /tmp/hdisk /dev/rdisk/c6t0d11s2

THE ORIGINAL PARTITIONING IS AS FOLLOWS:
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
4 0x0 0x200 0 0
5 0x0 0x200 3591000 2100375
6 0x0 0x200 0 0

THE NEW PARTITIONING WILL BE AS FOLLOWS:
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
4 0x0 0x200 0 0
5 0xf 0x200 3591000 2100375
6 0x0 0x200 0 0

DO YOU WANT TO WRITE THIS TO THE DISK ? [Y/N] :Y
WRITING THE NEW VTOC TO THE DISK #
```

**5** Upgrade to VxVM 6.1 using the appropriate upgrade procedure.

- 6 After upgrading VxVM, use the `vxdisk list` command to validate the conversion to `auto:simple` format:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcpower10s2 auto:simple - - online:aliased
...
```

To display the physical device that is associated with the metadvice, `emcpower10s2`, enter the following command:

```
vxddmpadm getsubpaths dmpnodename=emcpower10s2
```

- 7 Import the disk group and start the volumes:

```
vxdg import fdg
vxvol -g fdg startall
```

You can use the `vxdisk list` command to confirm that the disk status is displayed as `online:simple`:

```
vxdisk list
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c6t0d12s2 auto:sliced - - online
emcpower10s2 auto:simple fdisk fdg online:aliased
```

To allow DMP to receive correct enquiry data, the common Serial Number (C-bit) Symmetrix Director parameter must be set to enabled.

## Converting a powervxvm disk to auto:simple

In VxVM 4.0, and particularly in previous releases, EMCpower disks can be defined by a persistent disk access record (darec) using `powervxvm` script, and identified as simple disks. If an EMCpower disk is used using `powervxvm`, it must be manually converted to `auto:simple` format before you upgrade to VxVM 6.1.

If there are any controllers or devices that are suppressed from VxVM as `powervxvm` requirement, then such controllers or disks must be unsuppressed. This is required for Veritas DMP to determine the association between PowerPath metanodes and their subpaths. After the conversion to `auto:simple` is complete, the `powervxvm` script is no longer useful, and should be disabled from startup script.

The following example is used to illustrate the procedure. The `ls` command shows the mapping of the EMC disks to persistent disk access records:

```
ls -l /dev/vx/rdmp/
crw----- 1 root root 260, 76 Feb 7 02:36 emcpower0c
```

```
vxdisk list
```

| DEVICE     | TYPE        | DISK    | GROUP | STATUS |
|------------|-------------|---------|-------|--------|
| c6t0d12s2  | auto:sliced | -       | -     | online |
| emcpower0c | simple      | ppdsk01 | ppdg  | online |

```
vxprint
```

```
Disk group: fdg
```

| TY | NAME    | ASSOC      | KSTATE | LENGTH  | PLOFFS | STATE | TUTILO | PUTILO |
|----|---------|------------|--------|---------|--------|-------|--------|--------|
| dg | ppdg    | ppdg       | -      | -       | -      | -     | -      | -      |
| dm | ppdsk01 | emcpower0c | -      | 2094960 | -      | -     | -      | -      |

**To convert an EMCpower disk (defined using `powervxvm`) to `auto:simple` format**

**1** Stop all the volumes in the disk group, and then deport it:

```
vxvol -g ppdg stopall
vxdg deport ppdg
```

**2** Use the `vxdisk rm` command to remove all emcpower disks from VxVM:

```
vxdisk rm emcpower0c
```

If you now run the `vxdisk list` command, the EMCpower disk is no longer displayed:

```
vxdisk list
```

| DEVICE    | TYPE        | DISK | GROUP | STATUS |
|-----------|-------------|------|-------|--------|
| c6t0d12s2 | auto:sliced | -    | -     | online |

**3** Use the `vxprtvtoc` command to retrieve the partition table entry for this device:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxprtvtoc -f /tmp/vtoc /dev/vx/rdmp/emcpower0c
```

**4 Use the `vxedvtoc` command to modify the partition tag and update the VTOC:**

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxedvtoc -f /tmp/vtoc /dev/vx/rdmp/emcpower0c
THE ORIGINAL PARTITIONING IS AS FOLLOWS:
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
0 0x0 0x201 0 0
1 0x0 0x200 0 0
2 0x5 0x201 0 17675520

THE NEW PARTITIONING WILL BE AS FOLLOWS:
SLICE TAG FLAGS START SIZE
0 0xf 0x201 0 17675520
1 0x0 0x200 0 0
2 0x5 0x201 0 17675520

DO YOU WANT TO WRITE THIS TO THE DISK ? [Y/N] :Y
WRITING THE NEW VTOC TO THE DISK #
```

**5 Upgrade to VxVM 6.1 using the appropriate upgrade procedure.**

**6 After upgrading VxVM, use the `vxdisk list` command to validate the conversion to auto:simple format:**

```
vxdisk list
```

| DEVICE      | TYPE        | DISK | GROUP | STATUS |
|-------------|-------------|------|-------|--------|
| c6t0d12s2   | auto:sliced | -    | -     | online |
| emcpower0s2 | auto:simple | -    | -     | online |

**7 Import the disk group and start the volumes.**

```
vxdg import ppdg
vxvol -g ppdg startall
vxdisk list
```

| DEVICE      | TYPE        | DISK     | GROUP | STATUS |
|-------------|-------------|----------|-------|--------|
| c6t0d12s2   | auto:sliced | -        | -     | online |
| emcpower0s2 | auto:simple | ppdisk01 | ppdg  | online |

# Converting from QuickLog to Multi-Volume support

The 4.1 release of the Veritas File System is the last major release to support QuickLog. The Version 6 and later disk layouts do not support QuickLog. The functionality provided by the Veritas Multi-Volume Support (MVS) feature replaces most of the functionality provided by QuickLog.

The following procedure describes how to convert from QuickLog to MVS. Unlike QuickLog, which allowed logging of up to 31 VxFS file systems to one device, MVS allows intent logging of only one file system per device. Therefore, the following procedure must be performed for each file system that is logged to a QuickLog device if the Version 6 or later disk layout is used.

The QuickLog device did not need to be related to the file system. For MVS, the log volume and the file system volume must be in the same disk group.

## To convert Quicklog to MVS

- 1 Select a QuickLog-enabled file system to convert to MVS and unmount it.

```
umount myfs
```

- 2 Detach one of the QuickLog volumes from the QuickLog device that the file system had been using. This volume will be used as the new intent log volume for the file system.

```
qllogdetach -g diskgroup log_vol
```

- 3 Create the volume set.

```
vxvset make myvset myfs_volume
```

- 4 Mount the volume set.

```
mount -F vxfs /dev/vx/dsk/rootdg/myvset /mnt1
```

- 5 Upgrade the volume set's file system to the Version 7 or later disk layout.

For example:

```
vxupgrade -n 9 /mnt1
```

- 6 Add the log volume from step 2 to the volume set.

```
vxvset addvol myvset log_vol
```

- 7 Add the log volume to the file system. The size of the volume must be specified.

```
fsvoladm add /mnt1 log_vol 50m
```

- 8 Move the log to the new volume.

```
fsadm -o logdev=log_vol,logsize=16m /mnt1
```

## About enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode

Symantec Product Authentication Service (AT) supports LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) user authentication through a plug-in for the authentication broker. AT supports all common LDAP distributions such as OpenLDAP and Windows Active Directory.

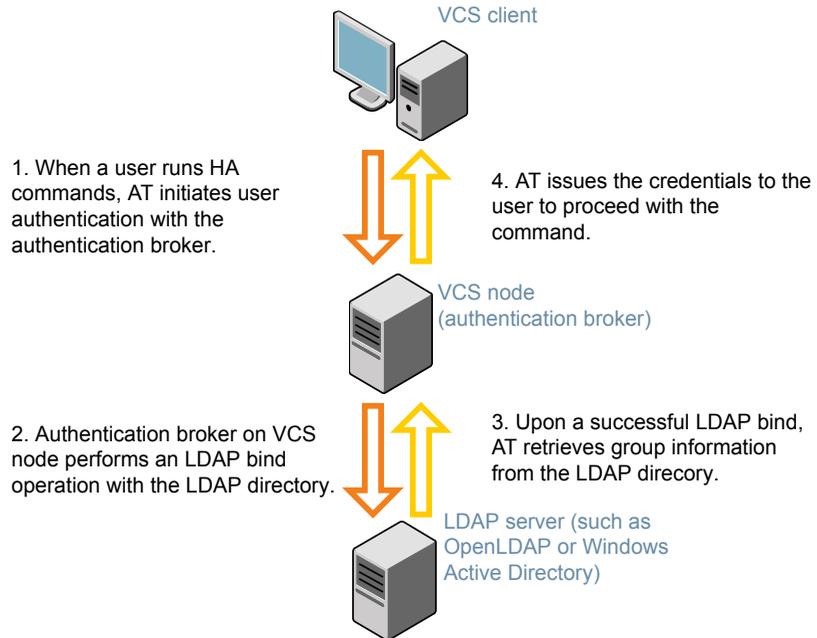
For a cluster that runs in secure mode, you must enable the LDAP authentication plug-in if the VCS users belong to an LDAP domain.

If you have not already added VCS users during installation, you can add the users later.

See the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions to add VCS users.

[Figure 24-1](#) depicts the SFHA cluster communication with the LDAP servers when clusters run in secure mode.

**Figure 24-1** Client communication with LDAP servers



The LDAP schema and syntax for LDAP commands (such as `ldapadd`, `ldapmodify`, and `ldapsearch`) vary based on your LDAP implementation.

Before adding the LDAP domain in Symantec Product Authentication Service, note the following information about your LDAP environment:

- The type of LDAP schema used (the default is RFC 2307)
  - UserObjectClass (the default is `posixAccount`)
  - UserObject Attribute (the default is `uid`)
  - User Group Attribute (the default is `gidNumber`)
  - Group Object Class (the default is `posixGroup`)
  - GroupObject Attribute (the default is `cn`)
  - Group GID Attribute (the default is `gidNumber`)
  - Group Membership Attribute (the default is `memberUid`)
- URL to the LDAP Directory
- Distinguished name for the user container (for example, `UserBaseDN=ou=people,dc=comp,dc=com`)

**About enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode**

- Distinguished name for the group container (for example, GroupBaseDN=ou=group,dc=comp,dc=com)

## Enabling LDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode

The following procedure shows how to enable the plug-in module for LDAP authentication. This section provides examples for OpenLDAP and Windows Active Directory LDAP distributions.

Before you enable the LDAP authentication, complete the following steps:

- Make sure that the cluster runs in secure mode.

```
haclus -value SecureClus
```

The output must return the value as 1.

- Make sure that the AT version is 6.1.6.0 or later.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vssat showversion
vssat version: 6.1.6.0
```

### To enable OpenLDAP authentication for clusters that run in secure mode

- 1 Run the LDAP configuration tool `atldapconf` using the `-d` option. The `-d` option discovers and retrieves an LDAP properties file which is a prioritized attribute list.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/atldapconf \
-d -s domain_controller_name_or_ipaddress -u domain_user
```

Attribute list file name not provided, using AttributeList.txt

Attribute file created.

You can use the `cat` command to view the entries in the attributes file.

- 2 Run the LDAP configuration tool `atldapconf` using the `-c` option. The `-c` option creates a CLI file to add the LDAP domain.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/atldapconf \
-c -d LDAP_domain_name
```

Attribute list file not provided, using default AttributeList.txt

CLI file name not provided, using default CLI.txt

CLI for addldapdomain generated.

- 3 Run the LDAP configuration tool `atldapconf` using the `-x` option. The `-x` option reads the CLI file and executes the commands to add a domain to the AT.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/atldapconf -x
```

```
Using default broker port 14149
```

```
CLI file not provided, using default CLI.txt
```

```
Looking for AT installation...
```

```
AT found installed at ./vssat
```

```
Successfully added LDAP domain.
```

- 4 Check the AT version and list the LDAP domains to verify that the Windows Active Directory server integration is complete.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vssat showversion
vssat version: 6.1.12.8

/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vssat listldapdomains
Domain Name : mydomain.com
Server URL : ldap://192.168.20.32:389
SSL Enabled : No
User Base DN : CN=people,DC=mydomain,DC=com
User Object Class : account
User Attribute : cn
User GID Attribute : gidNumber
Group Base DN : CN=group,DC=symantecdomain,DC=com
Group Object Class : group
Group Attribute : cn
Group GID Attribute : cn
Auth Type : FLAT
Admin User :
Admin User Password :
Search Scope : SUB
```

- 5 Check the other domains in the cluster.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vssat showdomains -p vx
```

The command output lists the number of domains that are found, with the domain names and domain types.

**6** Generate credentials for the user.

```
unset EAT_LOG

/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vssat authenticate \
-d ldap:LDAP_domain_name -p user_name -s user_password -b \
localhost:14149
```

**7** Add non-root users as applicable.

```
useradd user1

passwd pw1

Changing password for "user1"

user1's New password:

Re-enter user1's new password:

su user1

bash

id

uid=204(user1) gid=1(staff)

pwd

mkdir /home/user1

chown user1 /home/ user1
```

**8** Log in as non-root user and run VCS commands as LDAP user.

```
cd /home/user1

ls

cat .vcspwd

101 localhost mpise LDAP_SERVER ldap

unset VCS_DOMAINTYPE

unset VCS_DOMAIN

/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/hasys -state

#System Attribute Value

cluster1:sysA SysState FAULTED

cluster1:sysB SysState FAULTED

cluster2:sysC SysState RUNNING

cluster2:sysD SysState RUNNING
```

# Verifying the Storage Foundation and High Availability upgrade

Refer to the section about verifying the installation to verify the upgrade.

See [“Verifying that the products were installed”](#) on page 434.

# Post-installation tasks

- [Chapter 25. Performing post-installation tasks](#)
- [Chapter 26. Verifying the SFHA installation](#)

# Performing post-installation tasks

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Changing root user into root role](#)
- [Switching on Quotas](#)

## Changing root user into root role

On Oracle Solaris 11, you need to create root user to perform installation. This means that a local user cannot assume the root role. After installation, you may want to turn root user into root role for a local user, who can log in as root.

1. Log in as root user.
2. Change the root account into role.

```
rolemod -K type=role root

getent user_attr root

root:::type=role;auths=solaris.*;profiles=All;audit_flags=lo\
:no;lock_after_retries=no;min_label=admin_low;clearance=admin_high
```

3. Assign the root role to a local user who was unassigned the role.

```
usermod -R root admin
```

For more information, see the Oracle documentation on Oracle Solaris 11 operating system.

# Switching on Quotas

This turns on the group and user quotas once all the nodes are upgraded to 6.1, if it was turned off earlier.

## To turn on the group and user quotas

- ◆ Switch on quotas:

```
vxquotaon -av
```

# Verifying the SFHA installation

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Upgrading the disk group version](#)
- [Performing a postcheck on a node](#)
- [Verifying that the products were installed](#)
- [Installation log files](#)
- [Starting and stopping processes for the Symantec products](#)
- [Checking Veritas Volume Manager processes](#)
- [Checking Veritas File System installation](#)
- [Verifying the LLT, GAB, and VCS configuration files](#)
- [Verifying LLT, GAB, and cluster operation](#)

## Upgrading the disk group version

After you upgrade from previous versions to 6.1, you have to upgrade the disk group version manually.

To upgrade disk group version, you have to first upgrade the cluster protocol version using the `vxctl upgrade` command.

```
vxctl list
Volboot file
version: 3/1
seqno: 0.1
```

```
cluster protocol version: 120
hostid: sys1
hostguid: {fca678ac-e0ef-11e2-b22c-5e26fd3b6f13}
#
vxctl upgrade
#

vxctl list

Volboot file
version: 3/1
seqno: 0.2
cluster protocol version: 130
hostid: sys1
hostguid: {fca678ac-e0ef-11e2-b22c-5e26fd3b6f13}
```

Verify if the cluster protocol version shows 130 and disk group version is upgraded to 190.

```
vx dg list dg_name |grep version

version: 130
#
vx dg upgrade dg_name
#
vx dg list dg_name |grep version

version: 190
```

## Performing a postcheck on a node

The installer's `postcheck` command can help you to determine installation-related problems and provide troubleshooting information.

See [“About using the postcheck option”](#) on page 508.

### To run the postcheck command on a node

- 1 Run the installer with the `-postcheck` option.

```
./installer -postcheck system_name
```

- 2 Review the output for installation-related information.

## Verifying that the products were installed

Verify that the SFHA products are installed.

Use `pkginfo` (Solaris 10) or `pkg info` (Solaris 11) command to check which packages have been installed.

Solaris 10:

```
pkginfo -l VRTSvlic package_name package_name ...
```

Solaris 11:

```
pkg info -l VRTSvlic package_name package_name
```

You can verify the version of the installed product. Use the following command:

```
/opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version>
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

Use the following sections to further verify the product installation.

## Installation log files

After every product installation, the installer creates three text files:

- Installation log file
- Response file
- Summary file

The name and location of each file is displayed at the end of a product installation, and are always located in the `/opt/VRTS/install/logs` directory. It is recommended that you keep the files for auditing, debugging, and future use.

### Using the installation log file

The installation log file contains all commands executed during the procedure, their output, and errors generated by the commands. This file is for debugging installation problems and can be used for analysis by Symantec Support.

### Using the summary file

The summary file contains the results of the installation by the installer or product installation scripts. The summary includes the list of the packages, and the status

(success or failure) of each package. The summary also indicates which processes were stopped or restarted during the installation. After installation, refer to the summary file to determine whether any processes need to be started.

## Starting and stopping processes for the Symantec products

After the installation and configuration is complete, the Symantec product installer starts the processes that the installed products use. You can use the product installer to stop or start the processes, if required.

### To stop the processes

- ◆ Use the `-stop` option to stop the product installation script.

For example, to stop the product's processes, enter the following command:

```
./installer -stop
```

or

```
/opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -stop
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

### To start the processes

- ◆ Use the `-start` option to start the product installation script.

For example, to start the product's processes, enter the following command:

```
./installer -start
```

or

```
/opt/VRTS/install/installsfha<version> -start
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

## Checking Veritas Volume Manager processes

Use the following procedure to verify that Volume Manager processes are running.

**To confirm that key Volume Manager processes are running**

- ◆ Type the following command:

```
ps -ef | grep vx
```

Entries for the `vxconfigd`, `vxnotify`, `vxesd`, `vxrelocd`, `vxcached`, and `vxconfigbackupd` processes should appear in the output from this command. If you disable hot-relocation, the `vxrelocd` and `vxnotify` processes are not displayed.

For more details on hot relocation, see *Symantec Storage Foundation Administrator's Guide*.

# Checking Veritas File System installation

The Veritas File System package consists of a kernel component and administrative commands.

## Verifying Veritas File System kernel installation

To ensure that the file system driver is loaded, enter:

```
modinfo | grep vxfs
```

The `modinfo` command displays information about all modules loaded on the system. If the `vxfs` module is loaded, you will see an entry corresponding to `vxfs`. If not, follow the instructions load and then unload the file system module to complete the process.

## Verifying command installation

[Table 26-1](#) lists the directories with Veritas File System commands.

**Table 26-1** VxFS command locations

| Location                          | Contents                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/etc/fs/vxfs</code>         | Contains the Symantec <code>mount</code> command and QuickLog commands required to mount file systems. |
| <code>/usr/lib/fs/vxfs/bin</code> | Contains the VxFS type-specific switch-out commands.                                                   |
| <code>/opt/VRTSvxfs/sbin</code>   | Contains the Symantec-specific commands.                                                               |
| <code>/opt/VRTS/bin</code>        | Contains symbolic links to all Symantec-specific commands installed in the directories listed above.   |

Determine whether these subdirectories are present:

```
ls /etc/fs/vxfs
ls /usr/lib/fs/vxfs/bin
ls /opt/VRTSvxfs/sbin
ls /opt/VRTS/bin
```

Make sure you have adjusted the environment variables accordingly.

See [“Setting environment variables”](#) on page 68.

## Verifying the LLT, GAB, and VCS configuration files

Make sure that the LLT, GAB, and VCS configuration files contain the information you provided during VCS installation and configuration.

### To verify the LLT, GAB, and VCS configuration files

1 Navigate to the location of the configuration files:

- LLT  
/etc/llthosts  
/etc/llttab
- GAB  
/etc/gabtab
- VCS  
/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf

2 Verify the content of the configuration files.

See [“About the LLT and GAB configuration files”](#) on page 524.

See [“About the VCS configuration files”](#) on page 528.

## Verifying LLT, GAB, and cluster operation

Verify the operation of LLT, GAB, and the cluster using the VCS commands.

### To verify LLT, GAB, and cluster operation

- 1 Log in to any node in the cluster as superuser.
- 2 Make sure that the PATH environment variable is set to run the VCS commands.

- 3 Verify LLT operation.  
See “[Verifying LLT](#)” on page 438.
- 4 Verify GAB operation.
- 5 Verify the cluster operation.  
See “[Verifying the cluster](#)” on page 440.

## Verifying LLT

Use the `lltstat` command to verify that links are active for LLT. If LLT is configured correctly, this command shows all the nodes in the cluster. The command also returns information about the links for LLT for the node on which you typed the command.

Refer to the `lltstat(1M)` manual page for more information.

### To verify LLT

- 1 Log in as superuser on the node `sys1`.
- 2 Run the `lltstat` command on the node `sys1` to view the status of LLT.

```
lltstat -n
```

The output on `sys1` resembles:

```
LLT node information:
 Node State Links
 *0 sys1 OPEN 2
 1 sys2 OPEN 2
```

Each node has two links and each node is in the OPEN state. The asterisk (\*) denotes the node on which you typed the command.

If LLT does not operate, the command does not return any LLT links information: If only one network is connected, the command returns the following LLT statistics information:

```
LLT node information:
 Node State Links
 * 0 sys1 OPEN 2
 1 sys2 OPEN 2
 2 sys5 OPEN 1
```

- 3 Log in as superuser on the node `sys2`.
- 4 Run the `lltstat` command on the node `sys2` to view the status of LLT.

```
lltstat -n
```

The output on sys2 resembles:

```
LLT node information:
Node State Links
 0 sys1 OPEN 2
 *1 sys2 OPEN 2
```

- 5** To view additional information about LLT, run the `lltstat -nvv` command on each node.

For example, run the following command on the node `sys1` in a two-node cluster:

```
lltstat -nvv active
```

The output on `sys1` resembles the following:

- For Solaris SPARC:

| Node    | State | Link        | Status | Address           |
|---------|-------|-------------|--------|-------------------|
| *0 sys1 | OPEN  | <i>bge1</i> | UP     | 08:00:20:93:0E:34 |
|         |       | <i>bge2</i> | UP     | 08:00:20:93:0E:38 |
| 1 sys2  | OPEN  | <i>bge1</i> | UP     | 08:00:20:8F:D1:F2 |
|         |       | <i>bge2</i> | DOWN   |                   |

The command reports the status on the two active nodes in the cluster, `sys1` and `sys2`.

For each correctly configured node, the information must show the following:

- A state of OPEN
- A status for each link of UP
- An address for each link

However, the output in the example shows different details for the node `sys2`. The private network connection is possibly broken or the information in the `/etc/llttab` file may be incorrect.

- 6** To obtain information about the ports open for LLT, type `lltstat -p` on any node.

For example, type `lltstat -p` on the node `sys1` in a two-node cluster:

```
lltstat -p
```

The output resembles:

```
LLT port information:
Port Usage Cookie
0 gab 0x0
 opens: 0 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 ... 60 61 62 63
 connects: 0 1
7 gab 0x7
 opens: 0 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 ... 60 61 62 63
 connects: 0 1
31 gab 0x1F
 opens: 0 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 ... 60 61 62 63
 connects: 0 1
```

## Verifying the cluster

Verify the status of the cluster using the `hastatus` command. This command returns the system state and the group state.

Refer to the `hastatus(1M)` manual page.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for a description of system states and the transitions between them.

### To verify the cluster

**1** To verify the status of the cluster, type the following command:

```
hastatus -summary
```

The output resembles:

```
-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen

A sys1 RUNNING 0
A sys2 RUNNING 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State
```

**2** Review the command output for the following information:

- The system state

If the value of the system state is `RUNNING`, the cluster is successfully started.

## Verifying the cluster nodes

Verify the information of the cluster systems using the `hasys -display` command. The information for each node in the output should be similar.

Refer to the `hasys(1M)` manual page.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for information about the system attributes for VCS.

### To verify the cluster nodes

- ◆ On one of the nodes, type the `hasys -display` command:

```
hasys -display
```

The example in the following procedure is for SPARC and it shows the output when the command is run on the node `sys1`. The list continues with similar information for `sys2` (not shown) and any other nodes in the cluster.

```
#System Attribute Value
sys1 AgentsStopped 0
sys1 AvailableCapacity 100
sys1 CPUBinding BindTo None CPUNumber 0
sys1 CPUThresholdLevel Critical 90 Warning 80 Note 70
Info 60
sys1 CPUUsage 0
sys1 CPUUsageMonitoring Enabled 0 ActionThreshold 0
ActionTimeLimit 0 Action NONE
NotifyThreshold 0 NotifyTimeLimit 0
sys1 Capacity 100
sys1 ConfigBlockCount 130
sys1 ConfigChecksum 46688
sys1 ConfigDiskState CURRENT
sys1 ConfigFile /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config
sys1 ConfigInfoCnt 0
sys1 ConfigModDate Mon Sep 03 07:14:23 CDT 2012
```

```

sys1 ConnectorState Up
sys1 CurrentLimits
sys1 DiskHbStatus
sys1 DynamicLoad 0
sys1 EngineRestarted 0
sys1 EngineVersion 6.1.00.0
sys1 FencingWeight 0
sys1 Frozen 0
sys1 GUIIPAddr
sys1 HostUtilization CPU 0 Swap 0
sys1 LLTNodeId 0
sys1 LicenseType PERMANENT_SITE
sys1 Limits
sys1 LinkHbStatus bge1 UP bge2 UP
sys1 LoadTimeCounter 0
sys1 LoadTimeThreshold 600
sys1 LoadWarningLevel 80
sys1 NoAutoDisable 0
sys1 NodeId 0
sys1 OnGrpCnt 7
sys1 PhysicalServer
sys1 ShutdownTimeout 600
sys1 SourceFile ./main.cf
sys1 SwapThresholdLevel Critical 90 Warning 80 Note 70
 Info 60
sys1 SysInfo Solaris:sys1,Generic_
 118558-11,5.9,SUN4u

```

```

sys1 SysName sys1
sys1 SysState RUNNING
sys1 SystemLocation
sys1 SystemOwner
sys1 SystemRecipients
sys1 TFrozen 0
sys1 TRSE 0
sys1 UpDownState Up
sys1 UserInt 0
sys1 UserStr
sys1 VCSFeatures DR
sys1 VCSType VCS

```

# Uninstallation of SFHA

- [Chapter 27. Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Chapter 28. Uninstalling SFHA using response files](#)

# Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About removing Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Preparing to uninstall](#)
- [Disabling VCS agents for VVR the agents on a system](#)
- [Removing the Replicated Data Set](#)
- [Uninstalling SFHA packages using the script-based installer](#)
- [Uninstalling SFHA with the web-based installer](#)
- [Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability using the pkgm or pkg uninstall command](#)
- [Manually uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability packages on non-global zones on Solaris 11](#)
- [Removing the CP server configuration using the installer program](#)
- [Removing the Storage Foundation for Databases \(SFDB\) repository after removing the product](#)

# About removing Storage Foundation and High Availability

This section covers uninstallation requirements and steps to uninstall the Veritas software.

Only users with superuser privileges can uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability.

---

**Warning:** Failure to follow the instructions in the following sections may result in unexpected behavior.

---

## Preparing to uninstall

Review the following before removing the Veritas software.

### Preparing to remove Veritas Volume Manager

This section describes the steps you need to take before you remove Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) to preserve the contents of the volumes.

---

**Warning:** Failure to follow the preparations in this section might result in unexpected behavior.

---

On Solaris 11, the SMF service `vxvm-configure` must be online in order to uninstall `VRTSvxvm` successfully.

#### To verify that the `vxvm-configure` service is online

- 1 Check the state of the `vxvm-configure` service:

```
svcs -a | grep vxvm-configure
```

- 2 If the service is in disabled or maintenance state, use the following command to display information including the service log location:

```
svcs -xv vxvm-configure
```

- 3 If there are no issues, use the following command to bring the `vxvm-configure` service online:

```
svcadm enable vxvm-configure
```

## Moving volumes from an encapsulated root disk

Use the following procedure to move volumes from an encapsulated root disk.

**To uninstall VxVM if `root`, `swap`, `usr`, or `var` is a volume under Volume Manager control**

- 1 Ensure that the `rootvol`, `swapvol`, `usr`, and `var` volumes have only one associated plex each.

The plex must be contiguous, non-striped, non-spanned, and non-sparse. To obtain this information, enter the following:

```
vxprint -ht rootvol swapvol usr var
```

If any of these volumes have more than one associated plex, remove the unnecessary plexes using the following command:

```
vxplex -g diskgroup -o rm dis plex_name
```

- 2 Run the `vxunroot` command:

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxunroot
```

The `vxunroot` command changes the volume entries in `/etc/vfstab` to the underlying disk partitions for `rootvol`, `swapvol`, `usr`, and `var`. It also modifies `/etc/system` and prompts for a restart so that disk partitions are mounted instead of volumes for `root`, `swap`, `usr`, and `var`.

- 3 Once you have changed the `root`, `swap`, `usr`, and `var` volumes, move all remaining volumes to disk partitions.

You can do this using one of the following procedures:

- Back up the entire system to tape and then recover from tape.
- Back up each file system individually and then recover them all after you create new file systems on disk partitions.
- Move volumes incrementally to disk partitions.  
See [“Moving volumes to disk partitions”](#) on page 447.  
Otherwise, shut down VxVM.

## Moving volumes to disk partitions

Use the following procedure to move volumes incrementally to disk partitions.

### To move volumes incrementally to disk partitions

- 1 Evacuate disks using the `vxdiskadm` command, the VOM GUI, or the `vxevac` utility.

Evacuation moves subdisks from the specified disks to target disks. The evacuated disks provide the initial free disk space for volumes to be moved to disk partitions.

- 2 Remove the evacuated disks from VxVM control by entering:

```
vxdg rmdisk diskname
vxdisk rm devname
```

- 3 Decide which volume to move first, and if the volume is mounted, unmount it.
- 4 If the volume is used as a raw partition for database applications, make sure that the application does not update the volume. Also make sure that you have applied the `sync` command to the data on the volume.
- 5 Create a partition on free disk space of the same size as the volume using the `format` command.

If there is not enough free space for the partition, add a new disk to the system for the first volume removed. Subsequent volumes can use the free space that the removal of this first volume generates.

- 6 Copy the data on the volume onto the newly created disk partition using a command such as `dd`.

```
dd if=/dev/vx/dsk/diskgroup/lhome of=/dev/dsk/c2t2d2s7
```

where `c2t2d2` is the disk outside of Volume Manager and `s7` is the newly created partition.

- 7 Replace the entry for that volume (if present) in `/etc/vfstab` with an entry for the newly created partition.
- 8 Mount the disk partition if the corresponding volume was previously mounted.
- 9 Stop and remove the volume from VxVM using the commands.

```
vxvol -g diskgroup stop volume_name
vxedit -rf -g diskgroup rm volume_name
```

- 10** Remove any free disks (those disks that have no subdisks defined on them) by removing the volumes from VxVM control.

To check if there are still some subdisks remaining on a particular disk, use the `vxprint` command.

```
vxprint -g diskgroup -F '%sdnum' diskname
```

If the output is not 0, there are still some subdisks on this disk that you need to remove. If the output is 0, remove the disk from VxVM control.

```
vxdg rmdisk diskname
vxdisk rm devname
```

Use the free space that is created for adding the data from the next volume you want to remove.

- 11** After you successfully convert all volumes into disk partitions, restart the system.
- 12** After the restart, make sure that none of the volumes are open by using the `vxprint` command.

```
vxprint -Aht -e v_open
```

- 13** If any volumes remain open, repeat the steps.

## Example of moving volumes to disk partitions on Solaris

This example shows how to move the data on a volume to a disk partition. In the example, there are three disks: `disk1` and `disk2` are subdisks on volume `vol101` and `disk3` is a free disk. The data on `vol101` is copied to `disk3` using the `vxevac` command.

These are the contents of the disk group `voldg` before the data on `vol101` is copied to `disk3`.

```
vxprint -g voldg -ht
DG NAME NCONFIG NLOG MINORS GROUP-ID
DM NAME DEVICE TYPE PRIVLEN PUBLLEN STATE
RV NAME RLINK_CNT KSTATE STATE PRIMARY DATAVOLS SRL
RL NAME RVG KSTATE STATE REM_HOST REM_DG REM_RLNK
V NAME RVG KSTATE STATE LENGTH READPOL PREFPLEX UTYPE
PL NAME VOLUME KSTATE STATE LENGTH LAYOUT NCOL/WID MODE
SD NAME PLEX DISK DISKOFFS LENGTH [COL/]OFF DEVICE MODE
SV NAME PLEX VOLNAME NVOLLAYR LENGTH [COL/]OFF AM/NM MODE
DC NAME PARENTVOL LOGVOL
SP NAME SNAPVOL DCO
```

```
dg voldg default default 115000
1017856044.1141.hostname.veritas.com
```

```
dm disk1 c1t12d0s2 sliced 2591 17900352 -
dm disk2 c1t14d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
dm disk3 c1t3d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
```

```
v vol1 - ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 ROUND - fsgen
pl pl1 vol1 ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 CONCAT - RW
sd sd1 pl1 disk1 0 2098224 0 c1t12d0 ENA
sd sd2 pl1 disk2 0 2098224 2098224 c1t14d0 ENA
```

Evacuate disk1 to disk3.

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxevac -g voldg disk1 disk3
vxprint -g voldg -ht
```

```
DG NAME NCONFIG NLOG MINORS GROUP-ID
DM NAME DEVICE TYPE PRIVLEN PUBLN STATE
RV NAME RLINK_CNT KSTATE STATE PRIMARY DATAVOLS SRL
RL NAME RVG KSTATE STATE REM_HOST REM_DG REM_RLNK
V NAME RVG KSTATE STATE LENGTH READPOL PREFPLEX UTYPE
PL NAME VOLUME KSTATE STATE LENGTH LAYOUT NCOL/WID MODE
SD NAME PLEX DISK DISKOFFS LENGTH [COL/]OFF DEVICE MODE
SV NAME PLEX VOLNAME NVOLLAYR LENGTH [COL/]OFF AM/NM MODE
DC NAME PARENTVOL LOGVOL
SP NAME SNAPVOL DCO
```

```
dg voldg default default 115000
1017856044.1141.hostname.veritas.com
```

```
dm disk1 c1t12d0s2 sliced 2591 17900352 -
dm disk2 c1t14d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
dm disk3 c1t3d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
```

```
v vol1 - ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 ROUND - fsgen
pl pl1 vol1 ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 CONCAT - RW
sd disk3-0111 disk3 0 2098224 0 c1t3d0 ENA
sd sd2 pl1 disk2 0 2098224 2098224 c1t14d0 ENA
```

Evacuate disk2 to disk3.

```
/etc/vx/bin/vxevac -g voldg disk2 disk3
vxprint -g voldg -ht
```

```
DG NAME NCONFIG NLOG MINORS GROUP-ID
DM NAME DEVICE TYPE PRIVLEN PUBLEN STATE
RV NAME RLINK_CNT KSTATE STATE PRIMARY DATAVOLS SRL
RL NAME RVG KSTATE STATE REM_HOST REM_DG REM_RLNK
V NAME RVG KSTATE STATE LENGTH READPOL PREFPLEX UTYPE
PL NAME VOLUME KSTATE STATE LENGTH LAYOUT NCOL/WID MODE
SD NAME PLEX DISK DISKOFFS LENGTH [COL/]OFF DEVICE MODE
SV NAME PLEX VOLNAME NVOLLAYR LENGTH [COL/]OFF AM/NM MODE
DC NAME PARENTVOL LOGVOL
SP NAME SNAPVOL DCO
```

```
dg voldg default default 115000
1017856044.1141.hostname.veritas.com
```

```
dm disk1 c1t12d0s2 sliced 2591 17900352 -
dm disk2 c1t14d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
dm disk3 c1t3d0s2 sliced 2591 17899056 -
```

```
v voll - ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 ROUND - fsgen
pl pl1 voll ENABLED ACTIVE 4196448 CONCAT - RW
sd disk3-01 pl1 disk3 0 2098224 0 c1t3d0 ENA
sd disk3-02 pl1 disk3 2098224 2098224 2098224 c1t3d0 ENA
```

Remove the evacuated disks from VxVM control.

```
vxdisk -g voldg list
```

```
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c1t3d0s2 sliced disk3 voldg online
c1t12d0s2 sliced disk1 voldg online
c1t14d0s2 sliced disk2 voldg online
```

```
vxdg rmdisk disk1
vxdg rmdisk disk2
vxdisk rm c1t12d0
vxdisk rm c1t14d0
```

Verify that the evacuated disks have been removed from VxVM control.

```
vxdisk -g voldg list
```

```
DEVICE TYPE DISK GROUP STATUS
c1t3d0s2 sliced disk3 voldg online
```

Check to see whether the volume you want to move first is mounted.

```
mount | grep voll
/voll on /dev/vx/dsk/voldg/voll
read/write/setuid/log/nolargefiles/dev=l2dc138 on Wed Apr
3 10:13:11 2002
```

Create a partition on free disk space of the same size as the volume. In this example, a 2G partition is created on `disk1 (clt12d0s1)`.

```
format
Searching for disks...done

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
 0. c0t0d0 <SUN9.0G cyl 4924 alt 2 hd 27 sec 133>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000/sd@0,0
 1. clt3d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@3,0
 2. clt9d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@9,0
 3. clt10d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@a,0
 4. clt11d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@b,0
 5. clt12d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@c,0
 6. clt14d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@e,0
 7. clt15d0 <QUANTUM-ATLASIV9SCA-0808 cyl 13814 alt 2 hd 4 sec 324>
 /sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@2,8800000/sd@f,0

Specify disk (enter its number): 5
selecting clt12d0
[disk formatted]

FORMAT MENU:
disk - select a disk
type - select (define) a disk type
partition - select (define) a partition table
current - describe the current disk
format - format and analyze the disk
repair - repair a defective sector
label - write label to the disk
analyze - surface analysis
defect - defect list management
```

```

 backup - search for backup labels
 verify - read and display labels
 save - save new disk/partition definitions
 inquiry - show vendor, product and revision
 volname - set 8-character volume name
 !<cmd> - execute <cmd>, then return
 quit
format> p

PARTITION MENU:
 0 - change '0' partition
 1 - change '1' partition
 2 - change '2' partition
 3 - change '3' partition
 4 - change '4' partition
 5 - change '5' partition
 6 - change '6' partition
 7 - change '7' partition
 select - select a predefined table
 modify - modify a predefined partition table
 name - name the current table
 print - display the current table
 label - write partition map and label to the disk
 !<cmd> - execute <cmd>, then return
 quit

partition> 1
Part Tag Flag Cylinders Size Blocks
 1 unassigned wm 0 0 (0/0/0) 0
Enter partition id tag[unassigned]:
Enter partition permission flags[wm]:
Enter new starting cyl[0]:
Enter partition size[0b, 0c, 0.00mb, 0.00gb]: 2.00gb
partition> 1
Ready to label disk, continue? y

partition> p
Current partition table (unnamed):
Total disk cylinders available: 13814 + 2 (reserved cylinders)
Part Tag Flag Cylinders Size Blocks
 0 unassigned wm 0 0 (0/0/0) 0
 1 unassigned wm 0 - 3236 2.00GB (3237/0/0) 4195152
partition> q

```

Copy the data on `vol101` to the newly created disk partition.

```
dd if=/dev/vx/dsk/voldg/vol101 of=/dev/dsk/c1t12d0s1
```

In the `/etc/vfstab` file, remove the following entry.

```
/dev/vx/dsk/voldg/vol1 /dev/vx/rdisk/voldg/vol1 /vol1 vxfs 4 yes rw
```

Replace it with an entry for the newly created partition.

```
/dev/dsk/c1t12d0s1 /dev/rdisk/c1t12d0s1 /vol101 vxfs 4 yes rw
```

Mount the disk partition.

```
mount -F vxfs /dev/dsk/c1t12d0s1 /vol101
```

Remove `vol101` from VxVM.

```
vxdedit -rf -g voldg rm /dev/vx/dsk/voldg/vol101
```

To complete the procedure, follow the remaining steps.

## Preparing to remove Veritas File System

The `VRTSvxfs` package cannot be removed if there are any mounted VxFS file systems or Storage Checkpoints. Unmount the VxFS file systems and Storage Checkpoints before uninstalling Symantec Storage Foundation. After you remove the `VRTSvxfs` package, VxFS file systems are not mountable or accessible until another `VRTSvxfs` package is installed.

### To unmount a file system

- 1 Check if any VxFS file systems are mounted.

```
cat /etc/mnttab | grep vxfs
```

- 2 Unmount any file systems.

```
umount special | mount_point
```

Specify the file system to be unmounted as a `mount_point` or `special` (the device on which the file system resides). See the `umount_vxfs(1M)` manual page for more information about this command and its available options.

You can use the `-a` option to unmount all file systems except `/`, `/usr`, `/usr/kvm`, `/var`, `/proc`, `/dev/fd`, and `/tmp`.

**To unmount a Storage Checkpoint**

- 1 Check if any Storage Checkpoints are mounted.

```
cat /etc/mnttab | grep vxfs
```

- 2 Unmount any Storage Checkpoints.

```
umount /checkpoint_name
```

## Disabling VCS agents for VVR the agents on a system

This section explains how to disable a VCS agent for VVR on a system. To disable an agent, you must change the service group containing the resource type of the agent to an OFFLINE state. Then, you can stop the application or switch the application to another system.

**To disable the agents**

- 1 Check whether any service group containing the resource type of the agent is online by typing the following command:

```
hagr -state service_group -sys system_name
```

If none of the service groups is online, skip to 3.

- 2 If the service group is online, take it offline.

To take the service group offline without bringing it online on any other system in the cluster, enter:

```
hagr -offline service_group -sys system_name
```

- 3 Stop the agent on the system by entering:

```
haagent -stop agent_name -sys system_name
```

When you get the message `Please look for messages in the log file`, check the file `/var/VRTSvcs/log/engine_A.log` for a message confirming that each agent has stopped.

You can also use the `ps` command to confirm that the agent is stopped.

- 4 Remove the system from the `SystemList` of the service group. If you disable the agent on all the systems in the `SystemList`, you can also remove the service groups and resource types from the VCS configuration.

Read information on administering VCS from the command line.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

## Removing the Replicated Data Set

If you use VVR, you need to perform the following steps. This section gives the steps to remove a Replicated Data Set (RDS) when the application is either active or stopped.

### To remove the Replicated Data Set

- 1 Verify that all RLINKs are up-to-date:

```
vxrlink -g diskgroup status rlink_name
```

If the Secondary is not required to be up-to-date, proceed to [2](#) and stop replication using the `-f` option with the `vradmin stoprep` command.

- 2 Stop replication to the Secondary by issuing the following command on any host in the RDS:

The `vradmin stoprep` command fails if the Primary and Secondary RLINKs are not up-to-date. Use the `-f` option to stop replication to a Secondary even when the RLINKs are not up-to-date.

```
vradmin -g diskgroup stoprep local_rvgname sec_hostname
```

The argument `local_rvgname` is the name of the RVG on the local host and represents its RDS.

The argument `sec_hostname` is the name of the Secondary host as displayed in the output of the `vradmin printrvg` command.

- 3 Remove the Secondary from the RDS by issuing the following command on any host in the RDS:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup delsec local_rvgname sec_hostname
```

The argument `local_rvgname` is the name of the RVG on the local host and represents its RDS.

The argument `sec_hostname` is the name of the Secondary host as displayed in the output of the `vradmin printrvg` command.

- 4 Remove the Primary from the RDS by issuing the following command on the Primary:

```
vradmin -g diskgroup delpri local_rvgname
```

When used with the `-f` option, the `vradmin delpri` command removes the Primary even when the application is running on the Primary.

The RDS is removed.

- 5 If you want to delete the SRLs from the Primary and Secondary hosts in the RDS, issue the following command on the Primary and all Secondaries:

```
vxedit -r -g diskgroup rm srl_name
```

## Uninstalling SFHA packages using the script-based installer

Use the following procedure to remove SFHA products.

Not all packages may be installed on your system depending on the choices that you made when you installed the software.

---

**Note:** After you uninstall the product, you cannot access any file systems you created using the default disk layout version in SFHA 6.1 with a previous version of SFHA.

---

Language packages are uninstalled when you uninstall the English language packages.

**To shut down and remove the installed SFHA packages**

- 1 Comment out or remove any Veritas File System (VxFS) entries from the file system table `/etc/vfstab`. Failing to remove these entries could result in system boot problems later.

- 2 Unmount all mount points for VxFS file systems.

```
umount /mount_point
```

- 3 If the VxVM package (`VRTSvxvm`) is installed, read and follow the uninstallation procedures for VxVM.

See [“Preparing to remove Veritas Volume Manager”](#) on page 446.

- 4 Make sure you have performed all of the prerequisite steps.

- 5 In an HA configuration, stop VCS processes on either the local system or all systems.

To stop VCS processes on the local system:

```
hastop -local
```

To stop VCS processes on all systems:

```
hastop -all
```

- 6 Move to the `/opt/VRTS/install` directory and run the uninstall script.

```
cd /opt/VRTS/install
```

```
./uninstallsfha<version>
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

Or, if you are using rsh, use the following:

```
./uninstallsfha<version> -rsh
```

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

- 7 The uninstall script prompts for the system name. Enter one or more system names, separated by a space, from which to uninstall SFHA, for example, `sys1`:

```
Enter the system names separated by spaces: [q?] sys1 sys2
```

- 8 The uninstall script prompts you to stop the product processes. If you respond yes, the processes are stopped and the packages are uninstalled.

The uninstall script creates log files and displays the location of the log files.

- 9 Most packages have kernel components. In order to ensure complete removal, a system reboot is recommended after all packages have been removed.
- 10 To verify the removal of the packages, use the following commands:

Solaris 10:

```
pkginfo | grep VRTS
```

Solaris 11:

```
pkg list VRTS*
```

## Uninstalling SFHA with the web-based installer

This section describes how to uninstall using the web-based installer.

---

**Note:** After you uninstall the product, you cannot access any file systems you created using the default disk layout version in SFHA 6.1 with a previous version of SFHA.

---

### To uninstall SFHA

- 1 Perform the required steps to save any data that you want to preserve. For example, take backups of configuration files.
- 2 Start the web-based installer.  
See [“Starting the web-based installer”](#) on page 171.
- 3 On the Select a task and a product page, select **Uninstall a Product** from the Task drop-down list.
- 4 Select **Storage Foundation High Availability** from the Product drop-down list, and click **Next**.
- 5 Indicate the systems on which to uninstall. Enter one or more system names, separated by spaces. Click **Next**.
- 6 After the validation completes successfully, click **Next** to uninstall SFHA on the selected system.
- 7 If there are any processes running on the target system, the installer stops the processes. Click **Next**.

**Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability using the `pkgrm` or `pkg uninstall` command**

- 8 After the installer stops the processes, the installer removes the products from the specified system.

Click **Next**.

- 9 After the uninstall completes, the installer displays the location of the summary, response, and log files. If required, view the files to confirm the status of the removal.

- 10 Click **Finish**.

Most packages have kernel components. To ensure their complete removal, a system restart is recommended after all the packages have been removed.

## Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability using the `pkgrm` or `pkg uninstall` command

Use the following procedure to uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability using the `pkgrm` command.

If you want to uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability using the `pkgrm` command, the packages must be removed in a specific order, or else the uninstallation fails. Removing the packages out of order results in some errors, including possible core dumps, although the packages are still removed.

### To uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability

- 1 Unmount all mount points for file systems and Storage Checkpoints.

```
umount /mount_point
```

---

**Note:** Comment out or remove any Veritas File System (VxFS) entries from the file system table `/etc/vfstab`. Failing to remove these entries can result in system boot problems later.

---

- 2 Stop all applications from accessing VxVM volumes, and close all volumes.

**Uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability using the `pkgrm` or `pkg uninstall` command**

- 3 For Solaris 11.1 or later, if DMP native support is enabled, DMP controls the ZFS root pool. Turn off native support before removing Storage Foundation and High Availability.

```
vxddmpadm settune dmp_native_support=off
```

---

**Note:** If you do not disable native support, the system cannot be restarted after you remove DMP.

---

- 4 Stop any Veritas daemons that are running.
- 5 Remove the packages in the following order:

- For Storage Foundation and High Availability (Solaris 10):

```
pkgrm VRTSodm VRTSdbed VRTSvcswiz \
VRTSvbs VRTSvcsea VRTSvcscag VRTScps VRTSvc VRTSamf \
VRTSvxfen VRTSgab VRTSllt VRTSfssdk VRTSfsadv VRTSvxfs \
VRTSsfmh VRTSaslapm VRTSvxvm VRTSspt \
VRTSsfcp<version> VRTSvlic VRTSperl
```

- For Storage Foundation and High Availability (Solaris 11):

```
pkg uninstall VRTSodm VRTSdbed VRTSvcswiz \
VRTSvbs VRTSvcsea VRTSvcscag VRTScps VRTSvc VRTSamf VRTSvxfen \
VRTSgab VRTSllt VRTSfssdk VRTSfsadv VRTSvxfs VRTSsfmh VRTSaslapm \
VRTSvxvm VRTSspt VRTSsfcp<version> \
VRTSvlic VRTSperl
```

## Uninstalling the language packages using the `pkgrm` command

If you want to remove only the language packages, you can do so with the `pkgrm` command.

If you use the product installer menu or the uninstallation script, you can remove the language packages along with the English packages.

**To remove the language packages**

- ◆ Use the `pkgrm` command to remove the appropriate packages.

See “[Chinese language packages](#)” on page 555.

See “[Japanese language packages](#)” on page 555.

```
pkgrm package_name package_name ...
```

Because the packages do not contain any dependencies, you can remove them in any order.

## Manually uninstalling Storage Foundation and High Availability packages on non-global zones on Solaris 11

- 1 Log on to the non-global zone as a super user.
- 2 Uninstall SFHA packages from Solaris brand zones.

```
pkg uninstall VRTSperl VRTSvlic VRTSvcsc VRTSvcscag VRTSvcsea
VRTSvxfs
```

- 3 Uninstall SFHA packages from Solaris 10 brand zones.

```
pkgrm VRTSperl VRTSvlic VRTSvcsc VRTSvcscag VRTSvcsea
```

---

**Note:** If you have SFHA packages installed inside non-global zones, perform the steps mentioned above to uninstall them from non-global zone before attempting to uninstall the packages from global zone.

---

## Removing the CP server configuration using the installer program

This section describes how to remove the CP server configuration from a node or a cluster that hosts the CP server.

---

**Warning:** Ensure that no SFHA cluster (application cluster) uses the CP server that you want to unconfigure. Run the `# cpsadm -s CPS_VIP -p CPS_Port -a list_nodes` to know if any application cluster is using the CP server.

---

### To remove the CP server configuration

- 1 To run the configuration removal script, enter the following command on the node where you want to remove the CP server configuration:

```
root@cps1.symantecexample.com
/opt/VRTS/install/installvcsversion -configcps
```

- 2 Select option 3 from the menu to unconfigure the CP server.

```
[1] Configure Coordination Point Server on single node VCS system
[2] Configure Coordination Point Server on SFHA cluster
[3] Unconfigure Coordination Point Server
```

- 3 Review the warning message and confirm that you want to unconfigure the CP server.

```
Unconfiguring coordination point server stops the vxcpserv process.
VCS clusters using this server for coordination purpose will have
one less coordination point.
Are you sure you want to take the CP server offline? [y,n,q] (n) y
```

- 4 Review the screen output as the script performs the following steps to remove the CP server configuration:
  - Stops the CP server
  - Removes the CP server from VCS configuration
  - Removes resource dependencies
  - Takes the the CP server service group (CPSSG) offline, if it is online
  - Removes the CPSSG service group from the VCS configuration
  - Successfully unconfigured the Veritas Coordination Point Server

**Removing the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after removing the product**

The CP server database is not being deleted on the shared storage. It can be re-used if CP server is reconfigured on the cluster. The same database location can be specified during CP server configuration.

**5** Decide if you want to delete the CP server configuration file.

```
Do you want to delete the CP Server configuration file
(/etc/vxcps.conf) and log files
(in /var/VRTScps)? [y,n,q] (n) y
```

```
Deleting /etc/vxcps.conf and log files on sys1.... Done
Deleting /etc/vxcps.conf and log files on sys2... Done
```

**6** Confirm if you want to send information about this installation to Symantec to help improve installation in the future.

```
Would you like to send the information about this installation
to Symantec to help improve installation in the future? [y,n,q,?] (y)
```

Upload completed successfully.

## Removing the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after removing the product

After removing the product, you can remove the SFDB repository file and any backups.

Removing the SFDB repository file disables the SFDB tools.

### To remove the SFDB repository

- 1 Identify the SFDB repositories created on the host.

```
cat /var/vx/vxdba/rep_loc
```

Oracle:

```
{
 "sfae_rept_version" : 1,
 "oracle" : {
 "SFAEDB" : {
 "location" : "/data/sfaedb/.sfae",
 "old_location" : "",
 "alias" : [
 "sfaedb"
]
 }
 }
}
```

- 2 Remove the directory identified by the `location` key.

Oracle:

```
rm -rf /data/sfaedb/.sfae
```

- 3 Remove the repository location file.

```
rm -rf /var/vx/vxdba/rep_loc
```

This completes the removal of the SFDB repository.

# Uninstalling SFHA using response files

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Uninstalling SFHA using response files](#)
- [Response file variables to uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability](#)
- [Sample response file for SFHA uninstallation](#)

## Uninstalling SFHA using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates after you perform SFHA uninstallation on one cluster to uninstall SFHA on other clusters.

### To perform an automated uninstallation

- 1 Make sure that you meet the prerequisites to uninstall SFHA.
- 2 Copy the response file to the system where you want to uninstall SFHA.
- 3 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.
- 4 Start the uninstallation from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
/opt/VRTS/install/uninstallsfha<version>
-responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where *<version>* is the specific release version, and */tmp/response\_file* is the response file's full path name.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

# Response file variables to uninstall Storage Foundation and High Availability

[Table 28-1](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to configure SFHA.

**Table 28-1** Response file variables for uninstalling SFHA

| Variable            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CFG{systems}        | List of systems on which the product is to be installed or uninstalled.<br><br>List or scalar: list<br><br>Optional or required: required                                                                                                     |
| CFG{prod}           | Defines the product to be installed or uninstalled.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: required                                                                                                                       |
| CFG{opt}{keyfile}   | Defines the location of an ssh keyfile that is used to communicate with all remote systems.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: optional                                                                               |
| CFG{opt}{tmppath}   | Defines the location where a working directory is created to store temporary files and the packages that are needed during the install. The default location is /var/tmp.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: optional |
| CFG{opt}{logpath}   | Mentions the location where the log files are to be copied. The default location is /opt/VRTS/install/logs.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: optional                                                               |
| CFG{opt}{uninstall} | Uninstalls SFHA packages.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: optional                                                                                                                                                 |

## Sample response file for SFHA uninstallation

The following example shows a response file for uninstalling Storage Foundation High Availability.

```
our %CFG;

$CFG{opt}{redirect}=1;
$CFG{opt}{uninstall}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA61";
$CFG{systems}=[qw(cdgv240a cdgv240b)];

1;
```

# Adding and removing nodes

- [Chapter 29. Adding a node to SFHA clusters](#)
- [Chapter 30. Removing a node from SFHA clusters](#)

# Adding a node to SFHA clusters

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About adding a node to a cluster](#)
- [Before adding a node to a cluster](#)
- [Adding a node to a cluster using the SFHA installer](#)
- [Adding a node using the web-based installer](#)
- [Adding the node to a cluster manually](#)
- [Adding a node using response files](#)
- [Configuring server-based fencing on the new node](#)
- [After adding the new node](#)
- [Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases \(SFDB\) repository after adding a node](#)

## About adding a node to a cluster

After you install SFHA and create a cluster, you can add and remove nodes from the cluster. You can create clusters of up to 64 nodes.

You can add a node:

- Using the product installer
- Using the web installer
- Manually

The following table provides a summary of the tasks required to add a node to an existing SFHA cluster.

**Table 29-1**      Tasks for adding a node to a cluster

| Step                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Complete the prerequisites and preparatory tasks before adding a node to the cluster.                        | See <a href="#">“Before adding a node to a cluster”</a> on page 471.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Add a new node to the cluster.                                                                               | See <a href="#">“Adding a node to a cluster using the SFHA installer”</a> on page 473.<br>See <a href="#">“Adding a node using the web-based installer”</a> on page 476.<br>See <a href="#">“Adding the node to a cluster manually”</a> on page 477. |
| If you are using the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools, you must update the repository database. | See <a href="#">“Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after adding a node”</a> on page 485.                                                                                                                               |

The example procedures describe how to add a node to an existing cluster with two nodes.

## Before adding a node to a cluster

Before preparing to add the node to an existing SFHA cluster, perform the required preparations.

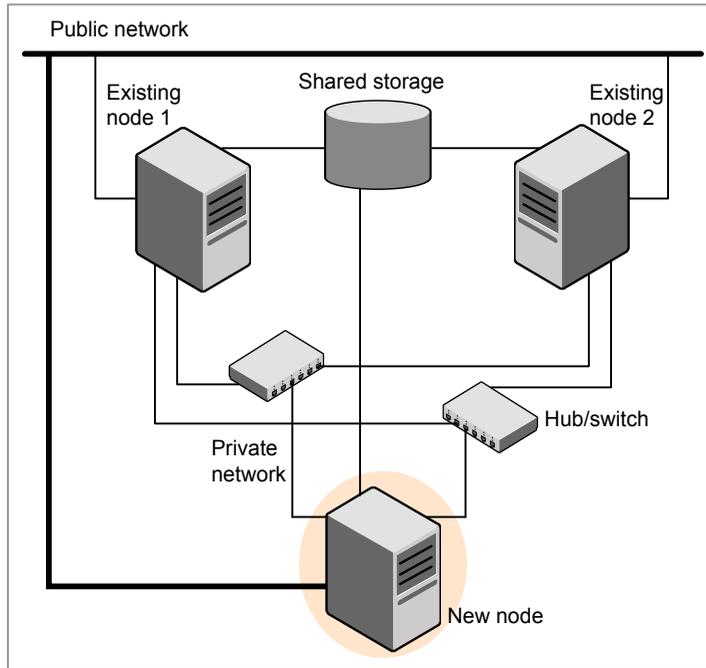
- Verify hardware and software requirements are met.
- Set up the hardware.
- Prepare the new node.

### To verify hardware and software requirements are met

- 1 Review hardware and software requirements for SFHA.
- 2 Verify the new system has the same identical operating system versions and patch levels as that of the existing cluster
- 3 Verify the existing cluster is a SFHA cluster and that SFHA is running on the cluster.

Before you configure a new system on an existing cluster, you must physically add the system to the cluster as illustrated in [Figure 29-1](#).

**Figure 29-1** Adding a node to a two-node cluster using two switches



### To set up the hardware

**1** Connect the SFHA private Ethernet controllers.

Perform the following tasks as necessary:

- When you add nodes to a cluster, use independent switches or hubs for the private network connections. You can only use crossover cables for a two-node cluster, so you might have to swap out the cable for a switch or hub.
- If you already use independent hubs, connect the two Ethernet controllers on the new node to the independent hubs.

Figure 29-1 illustrates a new node being added to an existing two-node cluster using two independent hubs.

**2** Make sure that you meet the following requirements:

- The node must be connected to the same shared storage devices as the existing nodes.
- The node must have private network connections to two independent switches for the cluster.

For more information, see the *Symantec Cluster Server Installation Guide*.

- The network interface names used for the private interconnects on the new node must be the same as that of the existing nodes in the cluster.

Complete the following preparatory steps on the new node before you add it to an existing SFHA cluster.

### To prepare the new node

- 1 Navigate to the folder that contains the `installsfha` program. Verify that the new node meets installation requirements. Verify that the new node meets installation requirements.

```
cd cdrom_root/storage_foundation_high_availability/
./installsfha -precheck
```

You can also use the web-based installer for the precheck.

- 2 Install SFHA packages only without configuration on the new system. Make sure all the VRTS packages available on the existing nodes are also available on the new node.

```
./installsfha
```

Do not configure SFHA when prompted.

```
Would you like to configure SFHA on sys5? [y,n,q]? n
```

## Adding a node to a cluster using the SFHA installer

You can add a node to a cluster using the `-addnode` option with the SFHA installer.

The SFHA installer performs the following tasks:

- Verifies that the node and the existing cluster meet communication requirements.
- Verifies the products and packages installed but not configured on the new node.
- Discovers the network interfaces on the new node and checks the interface settings.
- Creates the following files on the new node:

```
/etc/llttab
/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sysname
```

- Copies the following files on the new node:
  - `/etc/llthosts`
  - `/etc/gabtab`
  - `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf`
- Copies the following files from the existing cluster to the new node
  - `/etc/vxfenmode`
  - `/etc/vxfendg`
  - `/etc/vx/.uuids/clusuuid`
  - `/etc/default/llt`
  - `/etc/default/gab`
  - `/etc/default/vxfen`
- Generate security credentials on the new node if the CPS server of existing cluster is secure
- Configures disk-based or server-based fencing depending on the fencing mode in use on the existing cluster.

At the end of the process, the new node joins the SFHA cluster.

---

**Note:** If you have configured server-based fencing on the existing cluster, make sure that the CP server does not contain entries for the new node. If the CP server already contains entries for the new node, remove these entries before adding the node to the cluster, otherwise the process may fail with an error.

---

### To add the node to an existing cluster using the installer

- 1 Log in as the root user on one of the nodes of the existing cluster.
- 2 Run the SFHA installer with the `-addnode` option.

```
cd /opt/VRTS/install

./installsfha<version> -addnode
```

Where `<version>` is the specific release version.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

The installer displays the copyright message and the location where it stores the temporary installation logs.

- 3 Enter the name of a node in the existing SFHA cluster.

The installer uses the node information to identify the existing cluster.

```
Enter one node of the SFHA cluster to which
you would like to add one or more new nodes: sys1
```

- 4 Review and confirm the cluster information.
- 5 Enter the name of the systems that you want to add as new nodes to the cluster.

```
Enter the system names separated by spaces
to add to the cluster: sys5
```

Confirm if the installer prompts if you want to add the node to the cluster.

The installer checks the installed products and packages on the nodes and discovers the network interfaces.

- 6 Enter the name of the network interface that you want to configure as the first private heartbeat link.

```
Enter the NIC for the first private heartbeat
link on sys5: [b,q,?] bge1
```

```
Enter the NIC for the second private heartbeat
link on sys5: [b,q,?] bge2
```

---

**Note:** At least two private heartbeat links must be configured for high availability of the cluster.

---

- 7 Depending on the number of LLT links configured in the existing cluster, configure additional private heartbeat links for the new node.  
The installer verifies the network interface settings and displays the information.
- 8 Review and confirm the information.
- 9 If you have configured SMTP, SNMP, or the global cluster option in the existing cluster, you are prompted for the NIC information for the new node.

```
Enter the NIC for VCS to use on sys5: bge3
```

- 10 If the existing cluster uses server-based fencing in secure mode, the installer will configure server-based fencing in secure mode on the new nodes.  

The installer then starts all the required Veritas processes and joins the new node to cluster.

The installer indicates the location of the log file, summary file, and response file with details of the actions performed.
- 11 Confirm that the new node has joined the SFHA cluster using `lltstat -n` and `gabconfig -a` commands.

## Adding a node using the web-based installer

You can use the web-based installer to add a node to a cluster.

### To add a node to a cluster using the web-based installer

- 1 From the Task pull-down menu, select **Add a Cluster node**.  

From the product pull-down menu, select the product.

Click the **Next** button.
- 2 Click **OK** to confirm the prerequisites to add a node.
- 3 In the System Names field enter a name of a node in the cluster where you plan to add the node and click **OK**.  

The installer program checks inter-system communications and compatibility. If the node fails any of the checks, review the error and fix the issue.

If prompted, review the cluster's name, ID, and its systems. Click the **Yes** button to proceed.
- 4 In the System Names field, enter the names of the systems that you want to add to the cluster as nodes. Separate system names with spaces. Click the **Next** button.  

The installer program checks inter-system communications and compatibility. If the system fails any of the checks, review the error and fix the issue.

Click the **Next** button. If prompted, click the **Yes** button to add the system and to proceed.
- 5 From the heartbeat NIC pull-down menus, select the heartbeat NICs for the cluster. Click the **Next** button.
- 6 Once the addition is complete, review the log files. Optionally send installation information to Symantec. Click the **Finish** button to complete the node's addition to the cluster.

# Adding the node to a cluster manually

Perform this procedure after you install SFHA only if you plan to add the node to the cluster manually.

**Table 29-2** Procedures for adding a node to a cluster manually

| Step                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Description                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Start the Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) on the new node.                                                                                                                                                                         | See <a href="#">“Starting Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) on the new node”</a> on page 477. |
| Configure the cluster processes on the new node.                                                                                                                                                                                 | See <a href="#">“Configuring cluster processes on the new node”</a> on page 478.          |
| If the CPS server of existing cluster is secure, generate security credentials on the new node.                                                                                                                                  | See <a href="#">“Setting up the node to run in secure mode”</a> on page 480.              |
| Configure fencing for the new node to match the fencing configuration on the existing cluster.<br><br>If the existing cluster is configured to use server-based I/O fencing, configure server-based I/O fencing on the new node. | See <a href="#">“Starting fencing on the new node”</a> on page 480.                       |
| Start VCS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | See <a href="#">“To start VCS on the new node”</a> on page 485.                           |
| If the ClusterService group is configured on the existing cluster, add the node to the group.                                                                                                                                    | See <a href="#">“Configuring the ClusterService group for the new node”</a> on page 481.  |

## Starting Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) on the new node

Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) uses license keys to control access. As you run the `vxinstall` utility, answer **n** to prompts about licensing. You installed the appropriate license when you ran the `installsfha` program.

**To start VxVM on the new node**

- 1 To start VxVM on the new node, use the `vxinstall` utility:

```
vxinstall
```

- 2 Enter `n` when prompted to set up a system wide disk group for the system. The installation completes.

- 3 Verify that the daemons are up and running. Enter the command:

```
vxdisk list
```

Make sure the output displays the shared disks without errors.

## Configuring cluster processes on the new node

Perform the steps in the following procedure to configure cluster processes on the new node.

- 1 Edit the `/etc/llthosts` file on the existing nodes. Using `vi` or another text editor, add the line for the new node to the file. The file resembles:

```
0 sys1
1 sys2
2 sys5
```

- 2 Copy the `/etc/llthosts` file from one of the existing systems over to the new system. The `/etc/llthosts` file must be identical on all nodes in the cluster.
- 3 Create an `/etc/llttab` file on the new system. For example:

```
set-node sys5
set-cluster 101

link bge1 /dev/bge:1 - ether - -
link bge2 /dev/bge:2 - ether - -
```

Except for the first line that refers to the node, the file resembles the `/etc/llttab` files on the existing nodes. The second line, the cluster ID, must be the same as in the existing nodes.

- 4 Use vi or another text editor to create the file `/etc/gabtab` on the new node. This file must contain a line that resembles the following example:

```
/sbin/gabconfig -c -nN
```

Where N represents the number of systems in the cluster including the new node. For a three-system cluster, N would equal 3.

- 5 Edit the `/etc/gabtab` file on each of the existing systems, changing the content to match the file on the new system.
- 6 Use vi or another text editor to create the file `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sysname` on the new node. This file must contain the name of the new node added to the cluster.

For example:

```
sys5
```

- 7 Create the Unique Universal Identifier file `/etc/vx/.uuids/clusuuid` on the new node:

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/uuidconfig.pl -rsh -clus -copy \
-from_sys sys1 -to_sys sys5
```

- 8 Start the LLT, GAB, and ODM drivers on the new node:

```
svcadm enable llt

svcadm enable gab

svcadm restart vxodm
```

- 9 On the new node, verify that the GAB port memberships are a and d:

```
gabconfig -a
GAB Port Memberships
=====
```

```
Port a gen df204 membership 012
Port b gen df20a membership 012
Port d gen df207 membership 012
```

## Setting up the node to run in secure mode

You must follow this procedure only if you are adding a node to a cluster that is running in secure mode. If you are adding a node to a cluster that is not running in a secure mode, proceed with configuring LLT and GAB.

[Table 29-3](#) uses the following information for the following command examples.

**Table 29-3** The command examples definitions

| Name | Fully-qualified host name (FQHN) | Function                                         |
|------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| sys5 | sys5.nodes.example.com           | The new node that you are adding to the cluster. |

### Setting up SFHA related security configuration

Perform the following steps to configure SFHA related security settings.

#### Setting up SFHA related security configuration

- 1 Start `/opt/VRTSat/bin/vxatd` process.
- 2 Create `HA_SERVICES` domain for SFHA.
 

```
vssat createpd --pdrtype ab --domain HA_SERVICES
```
- 3 Add SFHA and webserver principal to AB on node `sys5`.
 

```
vssat addprpl --pdrtype ab --domain HA_SERVICES --prplname \
webserver_VCS_prplname --password new_password --prpltype \
service --can_proxy
```
- 4 Create `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/.secure` file:
 

```
touch /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/.secure
```

## Starting fencing on the new node

Perform the following steps to start fencing on the new node.

**To start fencing on the new node**

- 1 For disk-based fencing on at least one node, copy the following files from one of the nodes in the existing cluster to the new node:

```
/etc/default/vxfen
/etc/vxfendg
/etc/vxfenmode
```

If you are using pure CP server-based fencing on the existing cluster, then only the `/etc/vxfenmode` file needs to be copied on the new node.

- 2 Start fencing on the new node:

```
svcadm enable vxfen
```

## Configuring the ClusterService group for the new node

If the ClusterService group is configured on the existing cluster, add the node to the group by performing the steps in the following procedure on one of the nodes in the existing cluster.

**To configure the ClusterService group for the new node**

- 1 On an existing node, for example `sys1`, write-enable the configuration:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Add the node `sys5` to the existing ClusterService group.

```
hagrps -modify ClusterService SystemList -add sys5 2
hagrps -modify ClusterService AutoStartList -add sys5
```

- 3 Modify the IP address and NIC resource in the existing group for the new node.

```
haress -modify gcoip Device bge0 -sys sys5
haress -modify gconic Device bge0 -sys sys5
```

- 4 Save the configuration by running the following command from any node.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

# Adding a node using response files

Typically, you can use the response file that the installer generates on one system to add nodes to an existing cluster.

### To add nodes using response files

- 1 Make sure the systems where you want to add nodes meet the requirements.
- 2 Make sure all the tasks required for preparing to add a node to an existing SFHA cluster are completed.
- 3 Copy the response file to one of the systems where you want to add nodes.  
 See [“Sample response file for adding a node to a SFHA cluster”](#) on page 483.
- 4 Edit the values of the response file variables as necessary.  
 See [“Response file variables to add a node to a SFHA cluster”](#) on page 482.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the folder that contains the installation program.
- 6 Start adding nodes from the system to which you copied the response file. For example:

```
./installer -responsefile /tmp/response_file
./installsfha -responsefile /tmp/response_file
```

Where `/tmp/response_file` is the response file's full path name.

Depending on the fencing configuration in the existing cluster, the installer configures fencing on the new node. The installer then starts all the required Symantec processes and joins the new node to cluster. The installer indicates the location of the log file and summary file with details of the actions performed.

## Response file variables to add a node to a SFHA cluster

[Table 29-4](#) lists the response file variables that you can define to add a node to an SFHA cluster.

**Table 29-4** Response file variables for adding a node to an SFHA cluster

| Variable            | Description                                                                                             |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| \$CFG{opt}{addnode} | Adds a node to an existing cluster.<br><br>List or scalar: scalar<br><br>Optional or required: required |

**Table 29-4** Response file variables for adding a node to an SFHA cluster  
*(continued)*

| Variable        | Description                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| \$CFG{newnodes} | Specifies the new nodes to be added to the cluster.<br><br>List or scalar: list<br><br>Optional or required: required |

## Sample response file for adding a node to a SFHA cluster

The following example shows a response file for upgrading SFHA.

```
our %CFG;

$CFG{clustersystems}=[qw(sys1)];
$CFG{newnodes}=[qw(sys5)];
$CFG{nic_add_ip_to_files}=1;
$CFG{opt}{addnode}=1;
$CFG{opt}{configure}=1;
$CFG{opt}{vr}=1;
$CFG{prod}="SFHA60";
$CFG{sys5}{bge1}{haipip}="192.168.12.3";
$CFG{sys5}{bge1}{hostname_for_haip}="sys5-haip1";
$CFG{sys5}{bge2}{haipip}="192.168.13.3";
$CFG{sys5}{bge2}{hostname_for_haip}="sys5-haip2";
$CFG{systems}=[qw(sys1 sys5)];
$CFG{vcs_allowcomms}=1;
$CFG{vcs_clusterid}=101;
$CFG{vcs_clustername}="clus1";
$CFG{vcs_lltlink1}{sys5}="bge1";
$CFG{vcs_lltlink2}{sys5}="bge2";

1;
```

## Configuring server-based fencing on the new node

This section describes the procedures to configure server-based fencing on a new node. Depending on whether server-based fencing is configured in secure or non-secure mode on the existing cluster, perform the tasks in one of the following procedures:

- Server-based fencing in non-secure mode:  
[To configure server-based fencing in non-secure mode on the new node](#)
- Server-based fencing in secure mode:  
[To configure server-based fencing with security on the new node](#)

**To configure server-based fencing in non-secure mode on the new node**

- 1 Log in to each CP server as the root user.
- 2 Update each CP server configuration with the new node information:

```
cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com \
-a add_node -c clus1 -h sys5 -n2
```

```
Node 2 (sys5) successfully added
```

- 3 Verify that the new node is added to the CP server configuration:

```
cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com \
-a list_nodes
```

The new node must be listed in the command output.

- 4 Add the VCS user cpsclient@sys5 to each CP server:

```
cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com \
-a add_user -e cpsclient@sys5 \
-f cps_operator -g vx
```

```
User cpsclient@sys5 successfully added
```

**To configure server-based fencing with security on the new node**

- 1 Log in to each CP server as the root user.
- 2 Update each CP server configuration with the new node information:

```
cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com \
-a add_node -c clus1 -h sys5 -n2
```

```
Node 2 (sys5) successfully added
```

- 3 Verify that the new node is added to the CP server configuration:

```
cpsadm -s cps1.symantecexample.com -a list_nodes
```

The new node must be listed in the output.

## Adding the new node to the vxfen service group

Perform the steps in the following procedure to add the new node to the vxfen service group.

### To add the new node to the vxfen group using the CLI

- 1 On one of the nodes in the existing SF HA cluster, set the cluster configuration to read-write mode:

```
haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Add the node sys5 to the existing vxfen group.

```
hagrps -modify vxfen SystemList -add sys5 2
```

- 3 Save the configuration by running the following command from any node in the SF HA cluster:

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

## After adding the new node

Start VCS on the new node.

### To start VCS on the new node

- ◆ Start VCS on the new node:

```
hastart
```

## Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after adding a node

If you are using Database Storage Checkpoints, Database FlashSnap, or SmartTier for Oracle in your configuration, update the SFDB repository to enable access for the new node after it is added to the cluster.

**Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after adding a node****To update the SFDB repository after adding a node**

- 1** Copy the `/var/vx/vxdba/rep_loc` file from one of the nodes in the cluster to the new node.
- 2** If the `/var/vx/vxdba/auth/user-authorizations` file exists on the existing cluster nodes, copy it to the new node.

If the `/var/vx/vxdba/auth/user-authorizations` file does not exist on any of the existing cluster nodes, no action is required.

This completes the addition of the new node to the SFDB repository.

# Removing a node from SFHA clusters

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Removing a node from a SFHA cluster](#)

## Removing a node from a SFHA cluster

[Table 30-1](#) specifies the tasks that are involved in removing a node from a cluster. In the example procedure, the cluster consists of nodes sys1, sys2, and sys5; node sys5 is to leave the cluster.

**Table 30-1** Tasks that are involved in removing a node

| Task                                                                                                                                                                                | Reference                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Back up the configuration file.</li> <li>■ Check the status of the nodes and the service groups.</li> </ul>                                | See <a href="#">“Verifying the status of nodes and service groups”</a> on page 488.     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Switch or remove any SFHA service groups on the node departing the cluster.</li> <li>■ Delete the node from SFHA configuration.</li> </ul> | See <a href="#">“Deleting the departing node from SFHA configuration”</a> on page 489.  |
| Modify the llthosts(4) and gabtab(4) files to reflect the change.                                                                                                                   | See <a href="#">“Modifying configuration files on each remaining node”</a> on page 492. |
| For a cluster that is running in a secure mode, remove the security credentials from the leaving node.                                                                              | See <a href="#">“Removing security credentials from the leaving node”</a> on page 494.  |

**Table 30-1** Tasks that are involved in removing a node (*continued*)

| Task                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Reference                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>On the node departing the cluster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Modify startup scripts for LLT, GAB, and SFHA to allow reboot of the node without affecting the cluster.</li> <li>■ Unconfigure and unload the LLT and GAB utilities.</li> <li>■ Remove the SFHA packages.</li> </ul> | <p>See <a href="#">“Unloading LLT and GAB and removing VCS on the departing node”</a> on page 495.</p> |

## Verifying the status of nodes and service groups

Start by issuing the following commands from one of the nodes to remain in the cluster node sys1 or node sys2 in our example.

## To verify the status of the nodes and the service groups

- 1 Make a backup copy of the current configuration file, main.cf.

```
cp -p /etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf \
/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config/main.cf.goodcopy
```

- 2 Check the status of the systems and the service groups.

```
hastatus -summary
```

```
-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen
A sys1 RUNNING 0
A sys2 RUNNING 0
A sys5 RUNNING 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State
B grp1 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp1 sys2 Y N OFFLINE
B grp2 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp3 sys2 Y N OFFLINE
B grp3 sys5 Y N ONLINE
B grp4 sys5 Y N ONLINE
```

The example output from the `hastatus` command shows that nodes `sys1`, `sys2`, and `sys5` are the nodes in the cluster. Also, service group `grp3` is configured to run on node `sys2` and node `sys5`, the departing node. Service group `grp4` runs only on node `sys5`. Service groups `grp1` and `grp2` do not run on node `sys5`.

## Deleting the departing node from SFHA configuration

Before you remove a node from the cluster you need to identify the service groups that run on the node.

You then need to perform the following actions:

- Remove the service groups that other service groups depend on, or
- Switch the service groups to another node that other service groups depend on.

**To remove or switch service groups from the departing node**

- 1 Switch failover service groups from the departing node. You can switch grp3 from node sys5 to node sys2.

```
hagrps -switch grp3 -to sys2
```

- 2 Check for any dependencies involving any service groups that run on the departing node; for example, grp4 runs only on the departing node.

```
hagrps -dep
```

- 3 If the service group on the departing node requires other service groups—if it is a parent to service groups on other nodes—unlink the service groups.

```
haconf -makerw
hagrps -unlink grp4 grp1
```

These commands enable you to edit the configuration and to remove the requirement grp4 has for grp1.

- 4 Stop SFHA on the departing node:

```
hastop -sys sys5
```

To stop VCS using SMF, run the following command:

```
svcadm disable vcs
```

- 5 Check the status again. The state of the departing node should be EXITED. Make sure that any service group that you want to fail over is online on other nodes.

```
hastatus -summary

-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen
A sys1 RUNNING 0
A sys2 RUNNING 0
A sys5 EXITED 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State
B grp1 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp1 sys2 Y N OFFLINE
B grp2 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp3 sys2 Y N ONLINE
B grp3 sys5 Y Y OFFLINE
B grp4 sys5 Y N OFFLINE
```

- 6 Delete the departing node from the SystemList of service groups grp3 and grp4.

```
haconf -makerw
hagrps -modify grp3 SystemList -delete sys5
hagrps -modify grp4 SystemList -delete sys5
```

---

**Note:** If sys5 was in the autostart list, then you need to manually add another system in the autostart list so that after reboot, the group comes online automatically.

---

- 7 For the service groups that run only on the departing node, delete the resources from the group before you delete the group.

```
hagrps -resources grp4
 processx_grp4
 processy_grp4
hares -delete processx_grp4
hares -delete processy_grp4
```

- 8** Delete the service group that is configured to run on the departing node.

```
hagr -delete grp4
```

- 9** Check the status.

```
hastatus -summary
-- SYSTEM STATE
-- System State Frozen
A sys1 RUNNING 0
A sys2 RUNNING 0
A sys5 EXITED 0

-- GROUP STATE
-- Group System Probed AutoDisabled State
B grp1 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp1 sys2 Y N OFFLINE
B grp2 sys1 Y N ONLINE
B grp3 sys2 Y N ONLINE
```

- 10** Delete the node from the cluster.

```
hasys -delete sys5
```

- 11** Save the configuration, making it read only.

```
haconf -dump -makero
```

## Modifying configuration files on each remaining node

Perform the following tasks on each of the remaining nodes of the cluster.

### To modify the configuration files on a remaining node

- 1 If necessary, modify the `/etc/gabtab` file.

No change is required to this file if the `/sbin/gabconfig` command has only the argument `-c`. Symantec recommends using the `-nN` option, where *N* is the number of cluster systems.

If the command has the form `/sbin/gabconfig -c -nN`, where *N* is the number of cluster systems, make sure that *N* is not greater than the actual number of nodes in the cluster. When *N* is greater than the number of nodes, GAB does not automatically seed.

Symantec does not recommend the use of the `-c -x` option for `/sbin/gabconfig`.

- 2 Modify `/etc/llhosts` file on each remaining nodes to remove the entry of the departing node.

For example, change:

```
0 sys1
1 sys2
2 sys5
```

To:

```
0 sys1
1 sys2
```

## Removing the node configuration from the CP server

After removing a node from a SFHA cluster, perform the steps in the following procedure to remove that node's configuration from the CP server.

---

**Note:** The `cpsadm` command is used to perform the steps in this procedure. For detailed information about the `cpsadm` command, see the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

---

**To remove the node configuration from the CP server**

1 Log into the CP server as the root user.

2 View the list of VCS users on the CP server.

If the CP server is configured to use HTTPS-based communication, run the following command:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -a list_users
```

If the CP server is configured to use IPM-based communication, run the following command:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -p 14250 -a list_users
```

Where *cp\_server* is the virtual IP/ virtual hostname of the CP server.

3 Remove the VCS user associated with the node you previously removed from the cluster.

For CP server in non-secure mode:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -a rm_user \
-e cpsclient@sys5 -f cps_operator -g vx
```

4 Remove the node entry from the CP server:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -a rm_node -h sys5 -c clus1 -n 2
```

5 View the list of nodes on the CP server to ensure that the node entry was removed:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -a list_nodes
```

## Removing security credentials from the leaving node

If the leaving node is part of a cluster that is running in a secure mode, you must remove the security credentials from node sys5. Perform the following steps.

**To remove the security credentials**

1 Stop the AT process.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsauth/vcsauthserver/bin/vcsauthserver.sh \
stop
```

2 Remove the credentials.

```
rm -rf /var/VRTSvcs/vcsauth/data/
```

## Unloading LLT and GAB and removing VCS on the departing node

Perform the tasks on the node that is departing the cluster.

You can use script-based installer to uninstall VCS on the departing node or perform the following manual steps.

If you have configured Storage Foundation and High Availability as part of the Storage Foundation and High Availability products, you may have to delete other dependent packages before you can delete all of the following ones.

### To unconfigure and unload LLT and GAB and remove SFHA

- 1 If you had configured I/O fencing in enabled mode, then stop I/O fencing.

```
svcadm disable -t vxfen
```

- 2 Unconfigure GAB and LLT:

```
/sbin/gabconfig -U
/sbin/lltconfig -U
```

- 3 Unload the GAB and LLT modules from the kernel.

- Determine the kernel module IDs:

```
modinfo | grep gab
modinfo | grep llt
```

The module IDs are in the left-hand column of the output.

- Unload the module from the kernel:

```
modunload -i gab_id
modunload -i llt_id
```

- 4 Disable the startup files to prevent LLT, GAB, or SFHA from starting up:

```
/usr/sbin/svcadm disable -t lltd
/usr/sbin/svcadm disable -t gab
/usr/sbin/svcadm disable -t vcs
```

- 5 To determine the packages to remove, enter:

```
pkginfo | grep VRTS
```

- 6 To permanently remove the SFHA packages from the system, use the `pkgrm` command. Start by removing the following packages, which may have been optionally installed, in the order shown below.

On Solaris10:

```
pkgrm VRTSvcsea
pkgrm VRTSat
pkgrm VRTSvcstag
pkgrm VRTScps
pkgrm VRTSvcsc
pkgrm VRTSamf
pkgrm VRTSvxfen
pkgrm VRTSgab
pkgrm VRTSllt
pkgrm VRTSspt
pkgrm VRTSsfcp161
pkgrm VRTSvlic
pkgrm VRTSperl
```

On Solaris 11:

```
pkg uninstall VRTSvcsea VRTSsat VRTSvcstag
VRTScps VRTSvcsc VRTSamf VRTSvxfen VRTSgab VRTSllt VRTSspt
VRTSsfcp161 VRTSperl VRTSvlic
```

- 7 Remove the LLT and GAB configuration files.

```
rm /etc/llttab
rm /etc/gabtab
rm /etc/llthosts
```

- 8 Remove the language packages and patches.

## Updating the Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) repository after removing a node

After removing a node from a cluster, you do not need to perform any steps to update the SFDB repository.

For information on removing the SFDB repository after removing the product:

See [“Removing the Storage Foundation for Databases \(SFDB\) repository after removing the product”](#) on page 464.

# Installation reference

- [Appendix A. SFHA services and ports](#)
- [Appendix B. Installation scripts](#)
- [Appendix C. Tunable files for installation](#)
- [Appendix D. Configuration files](#)
- [Appendix E. Configuring the secure shell or the remote shell for communications](#)
- [Appendix F. Storage Foundation and High Availability components](#)
- [Appendix G. Troubleshooting installation issues](#)
- [Appendix H. Troubleshooting cluster installation](#)
- [Appendix I. Sample SF HA cluster setup diagrams for CP server-based I/O fencing](#)
- [Appendix J. Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks](#)
- [Appendix K. Configuring LLT over UDP](#)
- [Appendix L. Compatibility issues when installing Storage Foundation High Availability with other products](#)

# SFHA services and ports

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [About SFHA services and ports](#)

## About SFHA services and ports

If you have configured a firewall, ensure that the firewall settings allow access to the services and ports used by SFHA.

[Table A-1](#) lists the services and ports used by SFHA .

---

**Note:** The port numbers that appear in bold are mandatory for configuring SFHA.

---

**Table A-1** SFHA services and ports

| Port Number | Protocol | Description                                                            | Process            |
|-------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 4145        | TCP/UDP  | VVR Connection Server<br>VCS Cluster Heartbeats                        | vxio.sys           |
| 4888        | TCP      | Veritas Scheduler Service<br>Use to launch the<br>configured schedule. | VxSchedService.exe |
| 5634        | HTTPS    | Symantec Storage<br>Foundation Messaging<br>Service                    | xprtld.exe         |

**Table A-1** SFHA services and ports (*continued*)

| Port Number          | Protocol | Description                                                                                                                                    | Process                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7419                 | TCP      | Symantec Plugin Host Service<br><br>Solutions Configuration Center (SFWConfigPanel.exe)<br><br>CCF Engine (CEngineDriver.exe)                  | pluginHost.exe                                                                                                                                  |
| 8199                 | TCP      | Volume Replicator Administrative Service                                                                                                       | vras.dll                                                                                                                                        |
| 8989                 | TCP      | VVR Resync Utility                                                                                                                             | vxreserver.exe                                                                                                                                  |
| 14141                | TCP      | Symantec High Availability Engine<br><br>Veritas Cluster Manager (Java console) (ClusterManager.exe)<br><br>VCS Agent driver (VCSAgDriver.exe) | had                                                                                                                                             |
| 14144                | TCP/UDP  | VCS Notification                                                                                                                               | Notifier.exe                                                                                                                                    |
| 14149                | TCP/UDP  | VCS Authentication                                                                                                                             | vcsauthserver                                                                                                                                   |
| 14150                | TCP      | Veritas Command Server                                                                                                                         | CmdServer                                                                                                                                       |
| 14153, 15550 - 15558 | TCP/UDP  | VCS Cluster Simulator                                                                                                                          | hasim.exe<br><br>For more information about the ports used by the VCS Simulator, see the <i>Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i> . |
| 14155                | TCP/UDP  | VCS Global Cluster Option (GCO)                                                                                                                | wac                                                                                                                                             |
| 14156                | TCP/UDP  | VCS Steward for GCO                                                                                                                            | steward                                                                                                                                         |
| 443                  | TCP      | Coordination Point Server                                                                                                                      | Vxcpserv                                                                                                                                        |

**Table A-1** SFHA services and ports (*continued*)

| Port Number | Protocol | Description               | Process                                                           |
|-------------|----------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 49152-65535 | TCP/UDP  | Volume Replicator Packets | User configurable ports created at kernel level by vxio .sys file |

# Installation scripts

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Installation script options](#)
- [About using the postcheck option](#)

## Installation script options

[Table B-1](#) shows command line options for the installation script. For an initial install or upgrade, options are not usually required. The installation script options apply to all Symantec Storage Foundation product scripts, except where otherwise noted.

See [“About the script-based installer”](#) on page 75.

**Table B-1** Available command line options

| Command Line Option | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -addnode            | Adds a node to a high availability cluster.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -allpkgs            | Displays all packages required for the specified product. The packages are listed in correct installation order. The output can be used to create scripts for command line installs, or for installations over a network.                                    |
| -comcleanup         | The <code>-comcleanup</code> option removes the secure shell or remote shell configuration added by installer on the systems. The option is only required when installation routines that performed auto-configuration of the shell are abruptly terminated. |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option                | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -comsetup                          | The <code>-comsetup</code> option is used to set up the ssh or rsh communication between systems without requests for passwords or passphrases.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| -configure                         | Configures the product after installation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| -fencing                           | Configures I/O fencing in a running cluster.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -hostfile <i>full_path_to_file</i> | Specifies the location of a file that contains a list of hostnames on which to install.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| -disable_dmp_native_support        | Disables Dynamic Multi-pathing support for the native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools during upgrade. Retaining Dynamic Multi-pathing support for the native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools during upgrade increases package upgrade time depending on the number of LUNs and native LVM volume groups and ZFS pools configured on the system. |
| -hotfix_path                       | Defines the path of a hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed .                                                                                                                                                                         |
| -hotfix2_path                      | Defines the path of a second hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -hotfix3_path                      | Defines the path of a third hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -hotfix4_path                      | Defines the path of a fourth hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -hotfix5_path                      | Defines the path of a fifth hot fix level release to be integrated with a base or a maintenance level release in order for multiple releases to be simultaneously installed.                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option                | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-installallpkgs</code>       | The <code>-installallpkgs</code> option is used to select all packages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>-installrecpkgs</code>       | The <code>-installrecpkgs</code> option is used to select the recommended packages set.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>-installminpkgs</code>       | The <code>-installminpkgs</code> option is used to select the minimum packages set.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>-ignorepatchreqs</code>      | The <code>-ignorepatchreqs</code> option is used to allow installation or upgrading even if the prerequisite packages or patches are missed on the system.                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>-jumpstart dir_path</code>   | Produces a sample finish file for Solaris JumpStart installation. The <code>dir_path</code> indicates the path to the directory in which to create the finish file.                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>-keyfile ssh_key_file</code> | Specifies a key file for secure shell (SSH) installs. This option passes <code>-I ssh_key_file</code> to every SSH invocation.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>-license</code>              | Registers or updates product licenses on the specified systems.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>-logpath log_path</code>     | Specifies a directory other than <code>/opt/VRTS/install/logs</code> as the location where installer log files, summary files, and response files are saved.                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>-makeresponsefile</code>     | Use the <code>-makeresponsefile</code> option only to generate response files. No actual software installation occurs when you use this option.                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>-minpkgs</code>              | Displays the minimal packages required for the specified product. The packages are listed in correct installation order. Optional packages are not listed. The output can be used to create scripts for command line installs, or for installations over a network. See <code>allpkgs</code> option. |
| <code>-noipc</code>                | Disables the installer from making outbound networking calls to Symantec Operations Readiness Tool (SORT) in order to automatically obtain hot fix and release information updates.                                                                                                                  |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option          | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -nolic                       | Allows installation of product packages without entering a license key. Licensed features cannot be configured, started, or used when this option is specified.                                                                                                                                          |
| -pkginfo                     | Displays a list of packages and the order of installation in a human-readable format. This option only applies to the individual product installation scripts. For example, use the -pkginfo option with the installvcs script to display VCS packages.                                                  |
| -pkgpath <i>package_path</i> | Designates the path of a directory that contains all packages to install. The directory is typically an NFS-mounted location and must be accessible by all specified installation systems.                                                                                                               |
| -pkgset                      | Discovers and displays the package group (minimum, recommended, all) and packages that are installed on the specified systems.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| -pkgtable                    | Displays product's packages in correct installation order by group.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| -postcheck                   | Checks for different HA and file system-related processes, the availability of different ports, and the availability of cluster-related service groups.                                                                                                                                                  |
| -precheck                    | Performs a preinstallation check to determine if systems meet all installation requirements. Symantec recommends doing a precheck before installing a product.                                                                                                                                           |
| -prod                        | Specifies the product for operations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -recpkgs                     | Displays the recommended packages required for the specified product. The packages are listed in correct installation order. Optional packages are not listed. The output can be used to create scripts for command line installs, or for installations over a network. See <code>allpkgs</code> option. |
| -redirect                    | Displays progress details without showing the progress bar.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| -require                     | Specifies an installer hot fix file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option                | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -requirements                      | The <code>-requirements</code> option displays required OS version, required packages and patches, file system space, and other system requirements in order to install the product.                                                                                                                                                       |
| -responsefile <i>response_file</i> | Automates installation and configuration by using system and configuration information stored in a specified file instead of prompting for information. The <i>response_file</i> must be a full path name. You must edit the response file to use it for subsequent installations. Variable field definitions are defined within the file. |
| -rolling_upgrade                   | Starts a rolling upgrade. Using this option, the installer detects the rolling upgrade status on cluster systems automatically without the need to specify rolling upgrade phase 1 or phase 2 explicitly.                                                                                                                                  |
| -rollingupgrade_phase1             | The <code>-rollingupgrade_phase1</code> option is used to perform rolling upgrade Phase-I. In the phase, the product kernel packages get upgraded to the latest version.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -rollingupgrade_phase2             | The <code>-rollingupgrade_phase2</code> option is used to perform rolling upgrade Phase-II. In the phase, VCS and other agent packages upgrade to the latest version. Product kernel drivers are rolling-upgraded to the latest protocol version.                                                                                          |
| -rootpath <i>root_path</i>         | Specifies an alternative root directory on which to install packages.<br><br>On Solaris operating systems, <code>-rootpath</code> passes <code>-R path</code> to <code>pkgadd</code> command.                                                                                                                                              |
| -rsh                               | Specify this option when you want to use RSH and RCP for communication between systems instead of the default SSH and SCP.<br><br>See <a href="#">“About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products”</a> on page 543.                                                                         |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option                 | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -serial                             | Specifies that the installation script performs install, uninstall, start, and stop operations on each system in a serial fashion. If this option is not specified, these operations are performed simultaneously on all systems.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -setrunables                        | Specify this option when you want to set tunable parameters after you install and configure a product. You may need to restart processes of the product for the tunable parameter values to take effect. You must use this option together with the <code>-runablesfile</code> option.                                                                                                                              |
| -start                              | Starts the daemons and processes for the specified product.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| -stop                               | Stops the daemons and processes for the specified product.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -timeout                            | The <code>-timeout</code> option is used to specify the number of seconds that the script should wait for each command to complete before timing out. Setting the <code>-timeout</code> option overrides the default value of 1200 seconds. Setting the <code>-timeout</code> option to 0 prevents the script from timing out. The <code>-timeout</code> option does not work with the <code>-serial</code> option. |
| -tmpath <i>tmp_path</i>             | Specifies a directory other than <code>/var/tmp</code> as the working directory for the installation scripts. This destination is where initial logging is performed and where packages are copied on remote systems before installation.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| -runables                           | Lists all supported runables and create a runables file template.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -runables_file <i>runables_file</i> | Specify this option when you specify a runables file. The runables file should include runnable parameters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| -upgrade                            | Specifies that an existing version of the product exists and you plan to upgrade it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**Table B-1** Available command line options (*continued*)

| Command Line Option | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -version            | Checks and reports the installed products and their versions. Identifies the installed and missing packages and patches where applicable for the product. Provides a summary that includes the count of the installed and any missing packages and patches where applicable. Lists the installed patches, hot fixes, and available updates for the installed product if an Internet connection is available. |

## About using the postcheck option

You can use the installer's post-check to determine installation-related problems and to aid in troubleshooting.

---

**Note:** This command option requires downtime for the node.

---

When you use the `postcheck` option, it can help you troubleshoot the following VCS-related issues:

- The heartbeat link does not exist.
- The heartbeat link cannot communicate.
- The heartbeat link is a part of a bonded or aggregated NIC.
- A duplicated cluster ID exists (if LLT is not running at the check time).
- The VRTSIlt pkg version is not consistent on the nodes.
- The Ilt-linkinstall value is incorrect.
- The llthosts(4) or llttab(4) configuration is incorrect.
- the `/etc/gabtab` file is incorrect.
- The incorrect GAB linkinstall value exists.
- The VRTSgab pkg version is not consistent on the nodes.
- The `main.cf` file or the `types.cf` file is invalid.
- The `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sysname` file is not consistent with the hostname.
- The cluster UUID does not exist.

- The `uuidconfig.pl` file is missing.
- The `VRTSvcs` pkg version is not consistent on the nodes.
- The `/etc/vxfenmode` file is missing or incorrect.
- The `/etc/vxfendg` file is invalid.
- The `vxfen` link-install value is incorrect.
- The `VRTSvxfen` pkg version is not consistent.

The `postcheck` option can help you troubleshoot the following SFHA or SFCFSHA issues:

- Volume Manager cannot start because the `/etc/vx/reconfig.d/state.d/install-db` file has not been removed.
- Volume Manager cannot start because the `volboot` file is not loaded.
- Volume Manager cannot start because no license exists.
- Cluster Volume Manager cannot start because the CVM configuration is incorrect in the `main.cf` file. For example, the `Autostartlist` value is missing on the nodes.
- Cluster Volume Manager cannot come online because the node ID in the `/etc/llthosts` file is not consistent.
- Cluster Volume Manager cannot come online because `Vxfen` is not started.
- Cluster Volume Manager cannot start because `gab` is not configured.
- Cluster Volume Manager cannot come online because of a CVM protocol mismatch.
- Cluster Volume Manager group name has changed from "cvm", which causes CVM to go offline.

You can use the installer's post-check option to perform the following checks:

General checks for all products:

- All the required packages are installed.
- The versions of the required packages are correct.
- There are no verification issues for the required packages.

Checks for Volume Manager (VM):

- Lists the daemons which are not running (`vxattachd`, `vxconfigbackupd`, `vxesd`, `vxrelocd` ...).
- Lists the disks which are not in 'online' or 'online shared' state (`vxdisk list`).
- Lists the diskgroups which are not in 'enabled' state (`vxdg list`).

- Lists the volumes which are not in 'enabled' state (`vxprint -g <dgname>`).
- Lists the volumes which are in 'Unstartable' state (`vxinfo -g <dgname>`).
- Lists the volumes which are not configured in `/etc/vfstab`.

Checks for File System (FS):

- Lists the VxFS kernel modules which are not loaded (`vxfs/fdd/vxportal`).
- Whether all VxFS file systems present in `/etc/vfstab` file are mounted.
- Whether all VxFS file systems present in `/etc/vfstab` are in disk layout 6 or higher.
- Whether all mounted VxFS file systems are in disk layout 6 or higher.

Checks for Cluster File System:

- Whether FS and ODM are running at the latest protocol level.
- Whether all mounted CFS file systems are managed by VCS.
- Whether cvm service group is online.

See [“Performing a postcheck on a node”](#) on page 433.

# Tunable files for installation

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [About setting tunable parameters using the installer or a response file](#)
- [Setting tunables for an installation, configuration, or upgrade](#)
- [Setting tunables with no other installer-related operations](#)
- [Setting tunables with an un-integrated response file](#)
- [Preparing the tunables file](#)
- [Setting parameters for the tunables file](#)
- [Tunables value parameter definitions](#)

## About setting tunable parameters using the installer or a response file

You can set non-default product and system tunable parameters using a tunables file. With the file, you can set tunables such as the I/O policy or toggle native multi-pathing. The tunables file passes arguments to the installer script to set tunables. With the file, you can set the tunables for the following operations:

- When you install, configure, or upgrade systems.

```
./installer -tunablesfile tunables_file_name
```

See [“Setting tunables for an installation, configuration, or upgrade”](#) on page 512.

- When you apply the tunables file with no other installer-related operations.

```
./installer -tunablesfile tunables_file_name -set tunables [
sys1 sys2 ...]
```

See [“Setting tunables with no other installer-related operations”](#) on page 513.

- When you apply the tunables file with an un-integrated response file.

```
./installer -responsefile response_file_name -tunablesfile
tunables_file_name
```

See [“Setting tunables with an un-integrated response file”](#) on page 514.

See [“About response files”](#) on page 49.

You must select the tunables that you want to use from this guide.

See [“Tunables value parameter definitions”](#) on page 516.

## Setting tunables for an installation, configuration, or upgrade

You can use a tunables file for installation procedures to set non-default tunables. You invoke the installation script with the `tunablesfile` option. The tunables file passes arguments to the script to set the selected tunables. You must select the tunables that you want to use from this guide.

See [“Tunables value parameter definitions”](#) on page 516.

---

**Note:** Certain tunables only take effect after a system reboot.

---

### To set the non-default tunables for an installation, configuration, or upgrade

- 1 Prepare the tunables file.  
See [“Preparing the tunables file”](#) on page 515.
- 2 Make sure the systems where you want to install SFHA meet the installation requirements.
- 3 Complete any preinstallation tasks.
- 4 Copy the tunables file to one of the systems where you want to install, configure, or upgrade the product.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the directory that contains the installation program.

- 6 Start the installer for the installation, configuration, or upgrade. For example:

```
./installer -tunablesfile /tmp/tunables_file
-settunables [sys1 sys2 ...]
```

Where `/tmp/tunables_file` is the full path name for the tunables file.

- 7 Proceed with the operation. When prompted, accept the tunable parameters.  
Certain tunables are only activated after a reboot. Review the output carefully to determine if the system requires a reboot to set the tunable value.
- 8 The installer validates the tunables. If an error occurs, exit the installer and check the tunables file.

## Setting tunables with no other installer-related operations

You can use the installer to set tunable parameters without any other installer-related operations. You must use the parameters described in this guide. Note that many of the parameters are product-specific. You must select the tunables that you want to use from this guide.

See [“Tunables value parameter definitions”](#) on page 516.

---

**Note:** Certain tunables only take effect after a system reboot.

---

### To set tunables with no other installer-related operations

- 1 Prepare the tunables file.  
See [“Preparing the tunables file”](#) on page 515.
- 2 Make sure the systems where you want to install SFHA meet the installation requirements.
- 3 Complete any preinstallation tasks.
- 4 Copy the tunables file to one of the systems that you want to tune.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the directory that contains the installation program.
- 6 Start the installer with the `-settunables` option.

```
./installer -tunablesfile tunables_file_name -settunables [
sys123 sys234 ...]
```

Where `/tmp/tunables_file` is the full path name for the tunables file.

- 7 Proceed with the operation. When prompted, accept the tunable parameters.  
Certain tunables are only activated after a reboot. Review the output carefully to determine if the system requires a reboot to set the tunable value.
- 8 The installer validates the tunables. If an error occurs, exit the installer and check the tunables file.

## Setting tunables with an un-integrated response file

You can use the installer to set tunable parameters with an un-integrated response file. You must use the parameters described in this guide. Note that many of the parameters are product-specific. You must select the tunables that you want to use from this guide.

See [“Tunables value parameter definitions”](#) on page 516.

---

**Note:** Certain tunables only take effect after a system reboot.

---

### To set tunables with an un-integrated response file

- 1 Make sure the systems where you want to install SFHA meet the installation requirements.
- 2 Complete any preinstallation tasks.
- 3 Prepare the tunables file.  
See [“Preparing the tunables file”](#) on page 515.
- 4 Copy the tunables file to one of the systems that you want to tune.
- 5 Mount the product disc and navigate to the directory that contains the installation program.
- 6 Start the installer with the `-responsefile` and `-tunablesfile` options.

```
./installer -responsefile response_file_name -tunablesfile
tunables_file_name
```

Where *response\_file\_name* is the full path name for the response file and *tunables\_file\_name* is the full path name for the tunables file.

- 7 Certain tunables are only activated after a reboot. Review the output carefully to determine if the system requires a reboot to set the tunable value.
- 8 The installer validates the tunables. If an error occurs, exit the installer and check the tunables file.

## Preparing the tunables file

A tunables file is a Perl module and consists of an opening and closing statement, with the tunables defined between. Use the hash symbol at the beginning of the line to comment out the line. The tunables file opens with the line "our %TUN;" and ends with the return true "1;" line. The final return true line only needs to appear once at the end of the file. Define each tunable parameter on its own line.

You can use the installer to create a tunables file template, or manually format tunables files you create.

### To create a tunables file template

- ◆ Start the installer with the `-tunables` option. Enter the following:

```
./installer -tunables
```

You see a list of all supported tunables, and the location of the tunables file template.

### To manually format tunables files

- ◆ Format the tunable parameter as follows:

```
$TUN{"tunable_name"}{"system_name"|"*"}=value_of_tunable;
```

For the *system\_name*, use the name of the system, its IP address, or a wildcard symbol. The *value\_of\_tunable* depends on the type of tunable you are setting. End the line with a semicolon.

The following is an example of a tunables file.

```

Tunable Parameter Values:

our %TUN;

$TUN{"tunable1"}{"*"}=1024;
$TUN{"tunable3"}{"sys123"}="SHA256";

1;
```

## Setting parameters for the tunables file

Each tunables file defines different tunable parameters. The values that you can use are listed in the description of each parameter. Select the tunables that you want to add to the tunables file and then configure each parameter.

See [“Tunables value parameter definitions”](#) on page 516.

Each line for the parameter value starts with \$TUN. The name of the tunable is in curly brackets and double-quotes. The system name is enclosed in curly brackets and double-quotes. Finally define the value and end the line with a semicolon, for example:

```
$TUN{"dmp_daemon_count"}{"node123"}=16;
```

In this example, you are changing the dmp\_daemon\_count value from its default of 10 to 16. You can use the wildcard symbol "\*" for all systems. For example:

```
$TUN{"dmp_daemon_count"}{"*"}=16;
```

## Tunables value parameter definitions

When you create a tunables file for the installer you can only use the parameters in the following list.

Prior to making any updates to the tunables, refer to the *Symantec Storage Foundation Cluster File System High Availability Administrator's Guide* for detailed information on product tunable ranges and recommendations.

[Table C-1](#) describes the supported tunable parameters that can be specified in a tunables file.

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters

| Tunable             | Description                                                                                                                |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| autoreminor         | (Veritas Volume Manager) Enable reminoring in case of conflicts during disk group import.                                  |
| autostartvolumes    | (Veritas Volume Manager) Enable the automatic recovery of volumes.                                                         |
| dmp_cache_open      | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the first open on a device performed by an array support library (ASL) is cached. |
| dmp_daemon_count    | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The number of kernel threads for DMP administrative tasks.                                |
| dmp_delayq_interval | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The time interval for which DMP delays the error processing if the device is busy.        |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| dmp_fast_recovery       | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether DMP should attempt to obtain SCSI error information directly from the HBA interface. This tunable must be set after Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing is started.                      |
| dmp_health_time         | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The time in seconds for which a path must stay healthy.                                                                                                                                     |
| dmp_log_level           | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The level of detail to which DMP console messages are displayed.                                                                                                                            |
| dmp_low_impact_probe    | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the low impact path probing feature is enabled.                                                                                                                                     |
| dmp_lun_retry_timeout   | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The retry period for handling transient errors.                                                                                                                                             |
| dmp_monitor_fabric      | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the Event Source daemon ( <i>vxesd</i> ) uses the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) HBA API. This tunable must be set after Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing is started. |
| dmp_monitor_osevent     | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the Event Source daemon ( <i>vxesd</i> ) monitors operating system events.                                                                                                          |
| dmp_monitor_ownership   | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the dynamic change in LUN ownership is monitored.                                                                                                                                   |
| dmp_native_multipathing | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether DMP will intercept the I/Os directly on the raw OS paths or not.                                                                                                                    |
| dmp_native_support      | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether DMP does multi-pathing for native devices.                                                                                                                                          |
| dmp_path_age            | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The time for which an intermittently failing path needs to be monitored before DMP marks it as healthy.                                                                                     |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                   | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| dmp_pathswitch_blks_shift | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The default number of contiguous I/O blocks sent along a DMP path to an array before switching to the next available path. |
| dmp_probe_idle_lun        | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether the path restoration kernel thread probes idle LUNs.                                                               |
| dmp_probe_threshold       | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The number of paths will be probed by the restore daemon.                                                                  |
| dmp_restore_cycles        | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The number of cycles between running the check_all policy when the restore policy is check_periodic.                       |
| dmp_restore_interval      | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The time interval in seconds the restore daemon analyzes the condition of paths.                                           |
| dmp_restore_policy        | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The policy used by DMP path restoration thread.                                                                            |
| dmp_restore_state         | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) Whether kernel thread for DMP path restoration is started.                                                                 |
| dmp_retry_count           | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The number of times a path reports a path busy error consecutively before DMP marks the path as failed.                    |
| dmp_scsi_timeout          | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The timeout value for any SCSI command sent via DMP.                                                                       |
| dmp_sfg_threshold         | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The status of the subpaths failover group (SFG) feature.                                                                   |
| dmp_stat_interval         | (Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing) The time interval between gathering DMP statistics.                                                                        |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fssmartmovethreshold         | (Veritas Volume Manager) The file system usage threshold for SmartMove (percent). This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| max_diskq                    | (Veritas File System) Specifies the maximum disk queue generated by a single file. The installer can only set the system default value of max_diskq. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device.                                                                                                                         |
| read_ahead                   | (Veritas File System) The 0 value disables read ahead functionality, the 1 value (default) retains traditional sequential read ahead behavior, and the 2 value enables enhanced read ahead for all reads. The installer can only set the system default value of read_ahead. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device. |
| read_nstream                 | (Veritas File System) The number of parallel read requests of size read_pref_io that can be outstanding at one time. The installer can only set the system default value of read_nstream. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device.                                                                                    |
| read_pref_io                 | (Veritas File System) The preferred read request size. The installer can only set the system default value of read_pref_io. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device.                                                                                                                                                  |
| reclaim_on_delete_start_time | (Veritas Volume Manager) Time of day to start reclamation for deleted volumes. This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                       | Description                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| reclaim_on_delete_wait_period | (Veritas Volume Manager) Days to wait before starting reclamation for deleted volumes. This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.        |
| same_key_for_alldgs           | (Veritas Volume Manager) Use the same fencing key for all disk groups. This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.                        |
| sharedminorstart              | (Veritas Volume Manager) Start of range to use for minor numbers for shared disk groups. This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.      |
| storage_connectivity          | (Veritas Volume Manager) The CVM storage connectivity type. This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.                                   |
| usefssmartmove                | (Veritas Volume Manager) Configure SmartMove feature (all, thinonly, none). This tunable must be set after Veritas Volume Manager is started.                   |
| vol_checkpt_default           | (Veritas File System) Size of VxVM storage checkpoints (kBytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                          |
| vol_cmpres_enabled            | (Veritas Volume Manager) Allow enabling compression for Volume Replicator.                                                                                      |
| vol_cmpres_threads            | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of compression threads for Volume Replicator.                                                                           |
| vol_default_iodelay           | (Veritas Volume Manager) Time to pause between I/O requests from VxVM utilities (10ms units). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.             |
| vol_fmr_logsz                 | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum size of bitmap Fast Mirror Resync uses to track changed blocks (KBytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect. |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                | Description                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| vol_max_adminio_poolsz | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum amount of memory used by VxVM admin I/O's (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.             |
| vol_max_nmpool_sz      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum name pool size (bytes).                                                                                              |
| vol_max_rdback_sz      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Storage Record readback pool maximum (bytes).                                                                                |
| vol_max_wrspool_sz     | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum memory used in clustered version of Volume Replicator .                                                              |
| vol_maxio              | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum size of logical VxVM I/O operations (kBytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                  |
| vol_maxioctl           | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum size of data passed into the VxVM ioctl calls (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.         |
| vol_maxparallelio      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Number of I/O operations vxconfigd can request at one time. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.            |
| vol_maxspecialio       | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum size of a VxVM I/O operation issued by an ioctl call (kBytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect. |
| vol_min_lowmem_sz      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Low water mark for memory (bytes).                                                                                           |
| vol_nm_hb_timeout      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Volume Replicator timeout value (ticks).                                                                                     |
| vol_rvio_maxpool_sz    | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum memory requested by Volume Replicator (bytes).                                                                       |
| vol_stats_enable       | (Veritas Volume Manager) Enable VxVM I/O stat collection.                                                                                             |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable                     | Description                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| vol_subdisk_num             | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of subdisks attached to a single VxVM plex. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.         |
| voldrl_max_drtregs          | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of dirty VxVM regions. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                              |
| voldrl_max_seq_dirty        | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of dirty regions in sequential mode. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                |
| voldrl_min_regionsz         | (Veritas Volume Manager) Minimum size of a VxVM Dirty Region Logging (DRL) region (kBytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect. |
| voldrl_volumemax_drtregs    | (Veritas Volume Manager) Max per volume dirty regions in log-plex DRL.                                                                            |
| voldrl_volumemax_drtregs_20 | (Veritas Volume Manager) Max per volume dirty regions in DCO version 20.                                                                          |
| voldrl_dirty_regions        | (Veritas Volume Manager) Number of regions cached for DCO version 30.                                                                             |
| voliomem_chunk_size         | (Veritas Volume Manager) Size of VxVM memory allocation requests (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                   |
| voliomem_maxpool_sz         | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum amount of memory used by VxVM (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                     |
| voliot_errbuf_dflt          | (Veritas Volume Manager) Size of a VxVM error trace buffer (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                         |
| voliot_jobuf_default        | (Veritas Volume Manager) Default size of a VxVM I/O trace buffer (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                   |
| voliot_jobuf_limit          | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum total size of all VxVM I/O trace buffers (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.          |

**Table C-1** Supported tunable parameters (*continued*)

| Tunable              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| voliot_iobuf_max     | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum size of a VxVM I/O trace buffer (bytes). This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                                           |
| voliot_max_open      | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of VxVM trace channels available for vxtrace commands. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                      |
| volpagemod_max_memsz | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum paging module memory used by Instant Snapshots (Kbytes).                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| volraid_rsrtransmax  | (Veritas Volume Manager) Maximum number of VxVM RAID-5 transient reconstruct operations in parallel. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                |
| vx_era_nthreads      | (Veritas File System) Maximum number of threads VxFS will detect read_ahead patterns on. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                            |
| vx_bc_bufhwm         | (Veritas File System) VxFS metadata buffer cache high water mark. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| vxfs_ninode          | (Veritas File System) Number of entries in the VxFS inode table. This tunable requires a system reboot to take effect.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| write_nstream        | (Veritas File System) The number of parallel write requests of size write_pref_io that can be outstanding at one time. The installer can only set the system default value of write_nstream. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device. |
| write_pref_io        | (Veritas File System) The preferred write request size. The installer can only set the system default value of write_pref_io. Refer to the tunefstab(4) manual page for setting this tunable for a specified block device.                                                                |

# Configuration files

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [About the LLT and GAB configuration files](#)
- [About the AMF configuration files](#)
- [About the VCS configuration files](#)
- [About I/O fencing configuration files](#)
- [Sample configuration files for CP server](#)
- [Packaging related SMF services on Solaris 11](#)

## About the LLT and GAB configuration files

Low Latency Transport (LLT) and Group Membership and Atomic Broadcast (GAB) are VCS communication services. LLT requires `/etc/llthosts` and `/etc/llttab` files. GAB requires `/etc/gabtab` file.

[Table D-1](#) lists the LLT configuration files and the information that these files contain.

**Table D-1**      LLT configuration files

| File                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/etc/default/llt</code> | <p>This file stores the start and stop environment variables for LLT:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>LLT_START</code>—Defines the startup behavior for the LLT module after a system reboot. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that LLT is enabled to start up.</li> <li>0—Indicates that LLT is disabled to start up.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ <code>LLT_STOP</code>—Defines the shutdown behavior for the LLT module during a system shutdown. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that LLT is enabled to shut down.</li> <li>0—Indicates that LLT is disabled to shut down.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The installer sets the value of these variables to 1 at the end of SFHA configuration.</p> |
| <code>/etc/llthosts</code>    | <p>The file <code>llthosts</code> is a database that contains one entry per system. This file links the LLT system ID (in the first column) with the LLT host name. This file must be identical on each node in the cluster. A mismatch of the contents of the file can cause indeterminate behavior in the cluster.</p> <p>For example, the file <code>/etc/llthosts</code> contains the entries that resemble:</p> <pre style="margin-left: 40px;"> 0      sys1 1      sys2 </pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

**Table D-1**      LLT configuration files (*continued*)

| File        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /etc/llttab | <p>The file <code>llttab</code> contains the information that is derived during installation and used by the utility <code>lltconfig(1M)</code>. After installation, this file lists the private network links that correspond to the specific system. For example, the file <code>/etc/llttab</code> contains the entries that resemble the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For Solaris 10 SPARC: <pre> set-node sys1 set-cluster 2 link bge0 /dev/bge0 - ether - - link bge1 /dev/bge1 - ether - - </pre> </li> <li>■ For Solaris 11 SPARC : <pre> set-node sys1 set-cluster 2 link bge0 /dev/net/bge0 - ether - - link bge1 /dev/net/bge1 - ether - - </pre> </li> </ul> <p>The first line identifies the system. The second line identifies the cluster (that is, the cluster ID you entered during installation). The next two lines begin with the <code>link</code> command. These lines identify the two network cards that the LLT protocol uses.</p> <p>If you configured a low priority link under LLT, the file also includes a "link-lowpri" line.</p> <p>Refer to the <code>llttab(4)</code> manual page for details about how the LLT configuration may be modified. The manual page describes the ordering of the directives in the <code>llttab</code> file.</p> |

[Table D-2](#) lists the GAB configuration files and the information that these files contain.

**Table D-2** GAB configuration files

| File                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/etc/default/gab</code> | <p>This file stores the start and stop environment variables for GAB:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>GAB_START</b>—Defines the startup behavior for the GAB module after a system reboot. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that GAB is enabled to start up.</li> <li>0—Indicates that GAB is disabled to start up.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ <b>GAB_STOP</b>—Defines the shutdown behavior for the GAB module during a system shutdown. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that GAB is enabled to shut down.</li> <li>0—Indicates that GAB is disabled to shut down.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The installer sets the value of these variables to 1 at the end of SFHA configuration.</p>                                                                                                                         |
| <code>/etc/gabtab</code>      | <p>After you install SFHA, the file <code>/etc/gabtab</code> contains a <code>gabconfig(1)</code> command that configures the GAB driver for use.</p> <p>The file <code>/etc/gabtab</code> contains a line that resembles:</p> <pre style="margin-left: 40px;"><code>/sbin/gabconfig -c -nN</code></pre> <p>The <code>-c</code> option configures the driver for use. The <code>-nN</code> specifies that the cluster is not formed until at least <i>N</i> nodes are ready to form the cluster. Symantec recommends that you set <i>N</i> to be the total number of nodes in the cluster.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Symantec does not recommend the use of the <code>-c -x</code> option for <code>/sbin/gabconfig</code>. Using <code>-c -x</code> can lead to a split-brain condition. Use the <code>-c</code> option for <code>/sbin/gabconfig</code> to avoid a split-brain condition.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> |

## About the AMF configuration files

Asynchronous Monitoring Framework (AMF) kernel driver provides asynchronous event notifications to the VCS agents that are enabled for intelligent resource monitoring.

Table D-3 lists the AMF configuration files.

**Table D-3** AMF configuration files

| File                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/etc/default/amf</code> | <p>This file stores the start and stop environment variables for AMF:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>AMF_START</b>—Defines the startup behavior for the AMF module after a system reboot or when AMF is attempted to start using the init script. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that AMF is enabled to start up. (default)</li> <li>0—Indicates that AMF is disabled to start up.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ <b>AMF_STOP</b>—Defines the shutdown behavior for the AMF module during a system shutdown or when AMF is attempted to stop using the init script. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that AMF is enabled to shut down. (default)</li> <li>0—Indicates that AMF is disabled to shut down.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| <code>/etc/amftab</code>      | <p>After you install VCS, the file <code>/etc/amftab</code> contains a <code>amfconfig(1)</code> command that configures the AMF driver for use.</p> <p>The AMF init script uses this <code>/etc/amftab</code> file to configure the AMF driver. The <code>/etc/amftab</code> file contains the following line by default:</p> <pre style="margin-left: 20px;"><code>/opt/VRTSamf/bin/amfconfig -c</code></pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## About the VCS configuration files

VCS configuration files include the following:

- `main.cf`

The installer creates the VCS configuration file in the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config` folder by default during the SFHA configuration. The `main.cf` file contains the minimum information that defines the cluster and its nodes.

See [“Sample main.cf file for VCS clusters”](#) on page 529.

See [“Sample main.cf file for global clusters”](#) on page 531.
- `types.cf`

The file `types.cf`, which is listed in the include statement in the `main.cf` file, defines the VCS bundled types for VCS resources. The file `types.cf` is also located in the folder `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/config`.

Additional files similar to `types.cf` may be present if agents have been added, such as `OracleTypes.cf`.

Note the following information about the VCS configuration file after installing and configuring VCS:

- The cluster definition includes the cluster information that you provided during the configuration. This definition includes the cluster name, cluster address, and the names of users and administrators of the cluster.  
 Notice that the cluster has an attribute `UserNames`. The `installsfha` creates a user "admin" whose password is encrypted; the word "password" is the default password.
- If you set up the optional I/O fencing feature for VCS, then the `UseFence = SCSI3` attribute is present.
- If you configured the cluster in secure mode, the `main.cf` includes "`SecureClus = 1`" cluster attribute.
- The `installsfha` creates the `ClusterService` service group if you configured the virtual IP, SMTP, SNMP, or global cluster options.

The service group also has the following characteristics:

- The group includes the IP and NIC resources.
- The service group also includes the notifier resource configuration, which is based on your input to `installsfha` prompts about notification.
- The `installsfha` also creates a resource dependency tree.
- If you set up global clusters, the `ClusterService` service group contains an Application resource, `wac` (wide-area connector). This resource's attributes contain definitions for controlling the cluster in a global cluster environment. Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for information about managing VCS global clusters.

Refer to the *Symantec Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* to review the configuration concepts, and descriptions of `main.cf` and `types.cf` files for Solaris systems.

## Sample `main.cf` file for VCS clusters

The following sample `main.cf` file is for a three-node cluster in secure mode.

```
include "types.cf"
include "OracleTypes.cf"
include "OracleASMTypes.cf"
include "Db2udbTypes.cf"
include "SybaseTypes.cf"
```

```
cluster vcs02 (
 SecureClus = 1
```

```

)

system sysA (
)

system sysB (
)

system sysC (
)

group ClusterService (
 SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1, sysC = 2 }
 AutoStartList = { sysA, sysB, sysC }
 OnlineRetryLimit = 3
 OnlineRetryInterval = 120
)

NIC csgnic (
 Device = bge0
 NetworkHosts = { "10.182.13.1" }
)

NotifierMngr ntfr (
 SnmpConsoles = { sys4" = SevereError }
 SmtServer = "smtp.example.com"
 SmtpRecipients = { "ozzie@example.com" = SevereError }
)

ntfr requires csgnic

// resource dependency tree
//
// group ClusterService
// {
// NotifierMngr ntfr
// {
// NIC csgnic
// }
// }
// }
```

## Sample main.cf file for global clusters

If you installed SFHA with the Global Cluster option, note that the ClusterService group also contains the Application resource, wac. The wac resource is required to control the cluster in a global cluster environment.

In the following main.cf file example, bold text highlights global cluster specific entries.

```
include "types.cf"

cluster vcs03 (
 ClusterAddress = "10.182.13.50"
 SecureClus = 1
)

system sysA (
)

system sysB (
)

system sysC (
)

group ClusterService (
 SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1, sysC = 2 }
 AutoStartList = { sysA, sysB, sysC }
 OnlineRetryLimit = 3
 OnlineRetryInterval = 120
)

Application wac (
 StartProgram = "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wacstart -secure"
 StopProgram = "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wacstop"
 MonitorProcesses = { "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/wac -secure" }
 RestartLimit = 3
)

IP gcoip (
 Device = bge0
 Address = "10.182.13.50"
 NetMask = "255.255.240.0"
)
```

```
NIC csgnic (
 Device = bge0
 NetworkHosts = { "10.182.13.1" }
)
```

```
NotifierMngr ntfr (
 SnmpConsoles = { sys4 = SevereError }
 SmtServer = "smtp.example.com"
 SmtRecipients = { "ozzie@example.com" = SevereError }
)
```

**gcoip requires csgnic**

**ntfr requires csgnic**

**wac requires gcoip**

```
// resource dependency tree
//
// group ClusterService
// {
// NotifierMngr ntfr
// {
// NIC csgnic
// }
// Application wac
// {
// IP gcoip
// {
// NIC csgnic
// }
// }
// }
// }
```

## About I/O fencing configuration files

[Table D-4](#) lists the I/O fencing configuration files.

**Table D-4** I/O fencing configuration files

| File               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /etc/default/vxfen | <p>This file stores the start and stop environment variables for I/O fencing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ VXFEN_START—Defines the startup behavior for the I/O fencing module after a system reboot. Valid values include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that I/O fencing is enabled to start up.</li> <li>0—Indicates that I/O fencing is disabled to start up.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ VXFEN_STOP—Defines the shutdown behavior for the I/O fencing module during a system shutdown. Valid values include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1—Indicates that I/O fencing is enabled to shut down.</li> <li>0—Indicates that I/O fencing is disabled to shut down.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The installer sets the value of these variables to 1 at the end of SFHA configuration.</p> |
| /etc/vxfendg       | <p>This file includes the coordinator disk group information.</p> <p>This file is not applicable for server-based fencing.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

**Table D-4** I/O fencing configuration files (*continued*)

| File           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /etc/vxfenmode | <p>This file contains the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ vxfen_mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ scsi3—For disk-based fencing</li> <li>■ customized—For server-based fencing</li> <li>■ disabled—To run the I/O fencing driver but not do any fencing operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ vxfen_mechanism <p>This parameter is applicable only for server-based fencing. Set the value as cps.</p> </li> <li>■ scsi3_disk_policy <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ dmp—Configure the vxfen module to use DMP devices<br/>The disk policy is dmp by default. If you use iSCSI devices, you must set the disk policy as dmp.</li> <li>■ raw—Configure the vxfen module to use the underlying raw character devices</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must use the same SCSI-3 disk policy on all the nodes.</p> </li> <li>■ security <p>This parameter is applicable only for server-based fencing.</p> <p>1—Indicates that communication with the CP server is in secure mode. This setting is the default.</p> <p>0—Indicates that communication with the CP server is in non-secure mode.</p> </li> <li>■ List of coordination points <p>This list is required only for server-based fencing configuration.</p> <p>Coordination points in server-based fencing can include coordinator disks, CP servers, or both. If you use coordinator disks, you must create a coordinator disk group containing the individual coordinator disks.</p> <p>Refer to the sample file /etc/vxfen.d/vxfenmode_cps for more information on how to specify the coordination points and multiple IP addresses for each CP server.</p> </li> <li>■ single_cp <p>This parameter is applicable for server-based fencing which uses a single highly available CP server as its coordination point. Also applicable for when you use a coordinator disk group with single disk.</p> </li> <li>■ autoseed_gab_timeout <p>This parameter enables GAB automatic seeding of the cluster even when some cluster nodes are unavailable. This feature requires that I/O fencing is enabled.</p> <p>0—Turns the GAB auto-seed feature on. Any value greater than 0 indicates the number of seconds that GAB must delay before it automatically seeds the cluster.</p> <p>-1—Turns the GAB auto-seed feature off. This setting is the default.</p> </li> </ul> |

**Table D-4** I/O fencing configuration files (*continued*)

| File          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /etc/vxfentab | <p>When I/O fencing starts, the vxfen startup script creates this /etc/vxfentab file on each node. The startup script uses the contents of the /etc/vxfendg and /etc/vxfermode files. Any time a system is rebooted, the fencing driver reinitializes the vxfentab file with the current list of all the coordinator points.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The /etc/vxfentab file is a generated file; do not modify this file.</p> <p>For disk-based I/O fencing, the /etc/vxfentab file on each node contains a list of all paths to each coordinator disk along with its unique disk identifier. A space separates the path and the unique disk identifier. An example of the /etc/vxfentab file in a disk-based fencing configuration on one node resembles as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Raw disk:           <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">/dev/rdisk/clt1d0s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006804E795D075 /dev/rdisk/c2t1d0s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006814E795D076 /dev/rdisk/c3t1d2s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006824E795D077</pre> </li> <li>■ DMP disk:           <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">/dev/vx/rdmp/clt1d0s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006804E795D075 /dev/vx/rdmp/c2t1d0s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006814E795D076 /dev/vx/rdmp/c3t1d0s2 HITACHI%5F1724-100%20%20FASTT%5FDISKS%5F6 00A0B8000215A5D000006824E795D077</pre> </li> </ul> <p>For server-based fencing, the /etc/vxfentab file also includes the security settings information.</p> <p>For server-based fencing with single CP server, the /etc/vxfentab file also includes the single_cp settings information.</p> |

## Sample configuration files for CP server

The /etc/vxcps.conf file determines the configuration of the coordination point server (CP server.)

See “[Sample CP server configuration \(/etc/vxcps.conf\) file output](#)” on page 541.

The following are example main.cf files for a CP server that is hosted on a single node, and a CP server that is hosted on an SFHA cluster.

- The main.cf file for a CP server that is hosted on a single node:  
 See [“Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a single node that runs VCS”](#) on page 536.
- The main.cf file for a CP server that is hosted on an SFHA cluster:  
 See [“Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a two-node SFHA cluster”](#) on page 538.

---

**Note:** If you use IPM-based protocol for communication between the CP server and SFHA clusters (application clusters), the CP server supports Internet Protocol version 4 or version 6 (IPv4 or IPv6 addresses). If you use HTTPS-based protocol for communication, the CP server only supports Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4 addresses).

---

The example main.cf files use IPv4 addresses.

## Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a single node that runs VCS

The following is an example of a single CP server node main.cf.

For this CP server single node main.cf, note the following values:

- Cluster name: cps1
- Node name: cps1

```
include "types.cf"
include "/opt/VRTScps/bin/Quorum/QuorumTypes.cf"

// cluster name: cps1
// CP server: cps1

cluster cps1 (
 UserNames = { admin = bMNFmHmJNiNNlVNhMK, haris = fopKojNvpHouNn,
 "cps1.symantecexample.com@root@vx" = aj,
 "root@cps1.symantecexample.com" = hq }
 Administrators = { admin, haris,
 "cps1.symantecexample.com@root@vx",
 "root@cps1.symantecexample.com" }
 SecureClus = 1
 HacliUserLevel = COMMANDROOT
}
```

```

)

system cps1 (
)

group CPSSG (
 SystemList = { cps1 = 0 }
 AutoStartList = { cps1 }
)

IP cpsvip1 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge0
 Address = "10.209.3.1"
 NetMask = "255.255.252.0"
)

IP cpsvip2 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge1
 Address = "10.209.3.2"
 NetMask = "255.255.252.0"
)

NIC cpsnic1 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge0
 PingOptimize = 0
 NetworkHosts @cps1 = { "10.209.3.10 }
)

NIC cpsnic2 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge1
 PingOptimize = 0
)

Process vxcpserv (
 PathName = "/opt/VRTScps/bin/vxcpserv"
 ConfInterval = 30
 RestartLimit = 3
)

```

```

 Quorum quorum (
 QuorumResources = { cpsvip1, cpsvip2 }
)

cpsvip1 requires cpsnic1
cpsvip2 requires cpsnic2
vxcperv requires quorum

// resource dependency tree
//
// group CPSSG
// {
// IP cpsvip1
// {
// NIC cpsnic1
// }
// IP cpsvip2
// {
// NIC cpsnic2
// }
// Process vxcperv
// {
// Quorum quorum
// }
// }

```

## Sample main.cf file for CP server hosted on a two-node SFHA cluster

The following is an example of a main.cf, where the CP server is hosted on an SFHA cluster.

For this CP server hosted on an SFHA cluster main.cf, note the following values:

- Cluster name: cps1
- Nodes in the cluster: cps1, cps2

```

include "types.cf"
include "CFSTypes.cf"
include "CVMTTypes.cf"
include "/opt/VRTScps/bin/Quorum/QuorumTypes.cf"

// cluster: cps1

```

```

// CP servers:
// cps1
// cps2

cluster cps1 (
 UserNames = { admin = ajkCjeJgkFkkIskEjh,
 "cps1.symantecexample.com@root@vx" = JK,
 "cps2.symantecexample.com@root@vx" = dl }
 Administrators = { admin, "cps1.symantecexample.com@root@vx",
 "cps2.symantecexample.com@root@vx" }
 SecureClus = 1
)

system cps1 (
)

system cps2 (
)

group CPSSG (
 SystemList = { cps1 = 0, cps2 = 1 }
 AutoStartList = { cps1, cps2 })

 DiskGroup cpsdg (
 DiskGroup = cps_dg
)

 IP cpsvip1 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge0
 Device @cps2 = bge0
 Address = "10.209.81.88"
 NetMask = "255.255.252.0"
)

 IP cpsvip2 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge1
 Device @cps2 = bge1
 Address = "10.209.81.89"
 NetMask = "255.255.252.0"
)

```

```
Mount cpsmount (
 MountPoint = "/etc/VRTScps/db"
 BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/cps_dg/cps_volume"
 FSType = vxfs
 FsckOpt = "-y"
)
```

```
NIC cpsnic1 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge0
 Device @cps2 = bge0
 PingOptimize = 0
 NetworkHosts @cps1 = { "10.209.81.10" }
)
```

```
NIC cpsnic2 (
 Critical = 0
 Device @cps1 = bge1
 Device @cps2 = bge1
 PingOptimize = 0
)
```

```
Process vxcpserv (
 PathName = "/opt/VRTScps/bin/vxcpserv"
)
```

```
Quorum quorum (
 QuorumResources = { cpsvip1, cpsvip2 }
)
```

```
Volume cpsvol (
 Volume = cps_volume
 DiskGroup = cps_dg
)
```

```
cpsmount requires cpsvol
cpsvip1 requires cpsnic1
cpsvip2 requires cpsnic2
cpsvol requires cpsdg
vxcpserv requires cpsmount
vxcpserv requires quorum
```

```
// resource dependency tree
//
// group CPSSG
// {
// IP cpsvip1
// {
// NIC cpsnic1
// }
// IP cpsvip2
// {
// NIC cpsnic2
// }
// Process vxcpserv
// {
// Quorum quorum
// Mount cpsmount
// {
// Volume cpsvol
// {
// DiskGroup cpsdg
// }
// }
// }
// }
// }
```

## Sample CP server configuration (/etc/vxcps.conf) file output

The following is an example of a coordination point server (CP server) configuration file `/etc/vxcps.conf` output.

```
The vxcps.conf file determines the
configuration for Veritas CP Server.
cps_name=cps1
vip=[10.209.81.88]
vip=[10.209.81.89]:56789
vip_https=[10.209.81.88]:55443
vip_https=[10.209.81.89]
port=14250
port_https=443
security=1
db=/etc/VRTScps/db
ssl_conf_file=/etc/vxcps_ssl.properties
```

# Packaging related SMF services on Solaris 11

After installing packages on Solaris 11 system, the following SMF services are present in online state. These SMF services are meant for proper package operation during uninstall operation. Symantec recommends you to not disable these services.

```
svc:/system/gab-preremove:default
```

```
svc:/system/llt-preremove:default
```

```
svc:/system/vxfen-preremove:default
```

# Configuring the secure shell or the remote shell for communications

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products](#)
- [Manually configuring and passwordless ssh](#)
- [Restarting the ssh session](#)
- [Enabling and disabling rsh for Solaris](#)

## About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products

Establishing communication between nodes is required to install Symantec software from a remote system, or to install and configure a cluster. The node from which the installer is run must have permissions to run `rsh` (remote shell) or `ssh` (secure shell) utilities. You need to run the installer with superuser privileges on the systems where you plan to install Symantec software.

You can install products to remote systems using either secure shell (`ssh`) or remote shell (`rsh`). Symantec recommends that you use `ssh` as it is more secure than `rsh`.

This section contains an example of how to set up `ssh` password free communication. The example sets up `ssh` between a source system (`sys1`) that contains the installation directories, and a target system (`sys2`). This procedure also applies to multiple target systems.

---

**Note:** The script- and web-based installers support establishing passwordless communication for you.

---

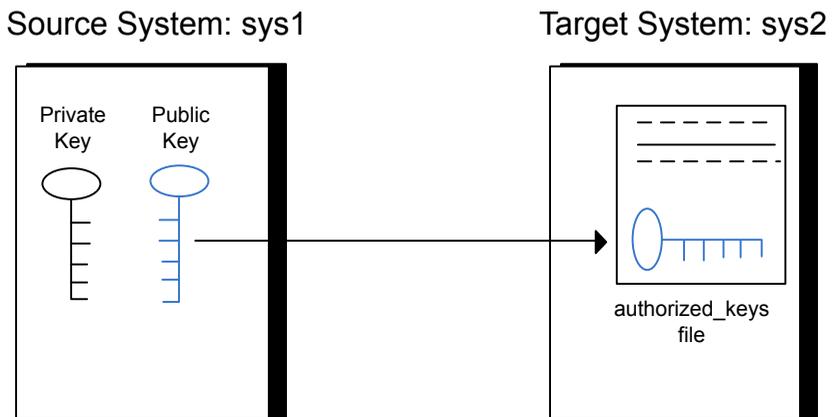
## Manually configuring and passwordless ssh

The ssh program enables you to log into and execute commands on a remote system. ssh enables encrypted communications and an authentication process between two untrusted hosts over an insecure network.

In this procedure, you first create a DSA key pair. From the key pair, you append the public key from the source system to the `authorized_keys` file on the target systems.

Figure E-1 illustrates this procedure.

**Figure E-1** Creating the DSA key pair and appending it to target systems



Read the ssh documentation and online manual pages before enabling ssh. Contact your operating system support provider for issues regarding ssh configuration.

Visit the OpenSSH website that is located at: <http://openssh.org> to access online manuals and other resources.

**To create the DSA key pair**

- 1 On the source system (sys1), log in as root, and navigate to the root directory.

```
sys1 # cd /
```

- 2 Make sure the `/.ssh` directory is on all the target installation systems (sys2 in this example). If that directory is not present, create it on all the target systems and set the write permission to root only:

Solaris 10:

```
sys2 # mkdir /.ssh
```

Solaris 11:

```
sys2 # mkdir /root/.ssh
```

Change the permissions of this directory, to secure it.

Solaris 10:

```
sys2 # chmod go-w /.ssh
```

Solaris 11:

```
sys2 # chmod go-w /root/.ssh
```

- 3 To generate a DSA key pair on the source system, type the following command:

```
sys1 # ssh-keygen -t dsa
```

System output similar to the following is displayed:

```
Generating public/private dsa key pair.
```

```
Enter file in which to save the key (//.ssh/id_dsa):
```

For Solaris 11:

```
Your identification has been saved in /root/.ssh/id_dsa.
```

```
Your public key has been saved in /root/.ssh/id_dsa.pub.
```

- 4 Press Enter to accept the default location of `/.ssh/id_dsa`.
- 5 When the program asks you to enter the passphrase, press the Enter key twice.

```
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
```

Do not enter a passphrase. Press Enter.

```
Enter same passphrase again:
```

Press Enter again.

### To append the public key from the source system to the `authorized_keys` file on the target system, using secure file transfer

- 1 Make sure the secure file transfer program (SFTP) is enabled on all the target installation systems (sys2 in this example).

To enable SFTP, the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file must contain the following two lines:

```
PermitRootLogin yes
Subsystem sftp /usr/lib/ssh/sftp-server
```

- 2 If the lines are not there, add them and restart ssh.

To restart ssh on Solaris 10 and Solaris 11, type the following command:

```
sys1 # svcadm restart ssh
```

- 3 From the source system (sys1), move the public key to a temporary file on the target system (sys2).

Use the secure file transfer program.

In this example, the file name `id_dsa.pub` in the root directory is the name for the temporary file for the public key.

Use the following command for secure file transfer:

```
sys1 # sftp sys2
```

If the secure file transfer is set up for the first time on this system, output similar to the following lines is displayed:

```
Connecting to sys2 ...
The authenticity of host 'sys2 (10.182.00.00)'
can't be established. DSA key fingerprint is
fb:6f:9f:61:91:9d:44:6b:87:86:ef:68:a6:fd:88:7d.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)?
```

- 4 Enter `yes`.

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
Warning: Permanently added 'sys2,10.182.00.00'
(DSA) to the list of known hosts.
root@sys2 password:
```

- 5 Enter the root password of `sys2`.
- 6 At the `sftp` prompt, type the following command:

```
sftp> put /.ssh/id_dsa.pub
```

The following output is displayed:

```
Uploading /.ssh/id_dsa.pub to /id_dsa.pub
```

- 7 To quit the SFTP session, type the following command:

```
sftp> quit
```

- 8 To begin the `ssh` session on the target system (`sys2` in this example), type the following command on `sys1`:

```
sys1 # ssh sys2
```

Enter the root password of `sys2` at the prompt:

```
password:
```

- 9 After you log in to `sys2`, enter the following command to append the `id_dsa.pub` file to the `authorized_keys` file:

```
sys2 # cat /id_dsa.pub >> /.ssh/authorized_keys
```

- 10 After the `id_dsa.pub` public key file is copied to the target system (`sys2`), and added to the authorized keys file, delete it. To delete the `id_dsa.pub` public key file, enter the following command on `sys2`:

```
sys2 # rm /id_dsa.pub
```

- 11 To log out of the `ssh` session, enter the following command:

```
sys2 # exit
```

- 12 Run the following commands on the source installation system. If your `ssh` session has expired or terminated, you can also run these commands to renew the session. These commands bring the private key into the shell environment and make the key globally available to the user `root`:

```
sys1 # exec /usr/bin/ssh-agent $SHELL
sys1 # ssh-add
```

```
Identity added: //./ssh/id_dsa
```

This shell-specific step is valid only while the shell is active. You must execute the procedure again if you close the shell during the session.

### To verify that you can connect to a target system

- 1 On the source system (`sys1`), enter the following command:

```
sys1 # ssh -l root sys2 uname -a
```

where `sys2` is the name of the target system.

- 2 The command should execute from the source system (`sys1`) to the target system (`sys2`) without the system requesting a passphrase or password.
- 3 Repeat this procedure for each target system.

## Restarting the ssh session

After you complete this procedure, `ssh` can be restarted in any of the following scenarios:

- After a terminal session is closed
- After a new terminal session is opened
- After a system is restarted
- After too much time has elapsed, to refresh `ssh`

**To restart ssh**

- 1 On the source installation system (sys1), bring the private key into the shell environment.

```
sys1 # exec /usr/bin/ssh-agent $SHELL
```

- 2 Make the key globally available for the user `root`

```
sys1 # ssh-add
```

## Enabling and disabling rsh for Solaris

The following section describes how to enable remote shell on Solaris system.

Symantec recommends configuring a secure shell environment for Symantec product installations.

See [“Manually configuring and passwordless ssh”](#) on page 544.

See the operating system documentation for more information on configuring remote shell.

**To enable rsh**

- 1 To determine the current status of `rsh` and `rlogin`, type the following command:

```
inetadm | grep -i login
```

If the service is enabled, the following line is displayed:

```
enabled online svc:/network/login:rlogin
```

If the service is not enabled, the following line is displayed:

```
disabled disabled svc:/network/login:rlogin
```

- 2 To enable a disabled `rsh/rlogin` service, type the following command:

```
inetadm -e rlogin
```

- 3 To disable an enabled `rsh/rlogin` service, type the following command:

```
inetadm -d rlogin
```

- 4 Modify the `.rhosts` file. A separate `.rhosts` file is in the `$HOME` directory of each user. This file must be modified for each user who remotely accesses the system using `rsh`. Each line of the `.rhosts` file contains a fully qualified domain name or IP address for each remote system having access to the local system. For example, if the root user must remotely access `sys1` from `sys2`, you must add an entry for `sys2.companyname.com` in the `.rhosts` file on `sys1`.

```
echo "sys2.companyname.com" >> $HOME/.rhosts
```

- 5 After you complete an installation procedure, delete the `.rhosts` file from each user's `$HOME` directory to ensure security:

```
rm -f $HOME/.rhosts
```

# Storage Foundation and High Availability components

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Storage Foundation and High Availability installation packages](#)
- [Symantec Cluster Server installation packages](#)
- [Chinese language packages](#)
- [Japanese language packages](#)
- [Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized installation packages](#)

## Storage Foundation and High Availability installation packages

[Table F-1](#) shows the package name and contents for each English language package for Storage Foundation and High Availability. The table also gives you guidelines for which packages to install based whether you want the minimum, recommended, or advanced configuration.

When you install all Storage Foundation and High Availability and Symantec Cluster Server (VCS) packages, the combined functionality is called Storage Foundation and High Availability and High Availability.

See [“Symantec Cluster Server installation packages”](#) on page 554.

**Table F-1** Storage Foundation and High Availability packages

| packages   | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Configuration |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| VRTSaslapm | Array Support Library (ASL) and Array Policy Module (APM) binaries<br><br>Required for the support and compatibility of various storage arrays.                                                                                                   | Minimum       |
| VRTSperl   | Perl 5.16.1 for Veritas                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Minimum       |
| VRTSvlic   | Symantec License Utilities<br><br>Installs the license key layout files required to decode the Storage Foundation license keys. Provides the standard license key utilities vxlicrep, vxlicinst, and vxlictest.                                   | Minimum       |
| VRTSvxfs   | Veritas File System binaries<br><br>Required for VxFS file system support.                                                                                                                                                                        | Minimum       |
| VRTSvxvm   | Veritas Volume Manager binaries, scripts, and utilities. Required for VxVM volume manager support.                                                                                                                                                | Minimum       |
| VRTSdbed   | Storage Management Software for Databases                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Recommended   |
| VRTSob     | Veritas Enterprise Administrator Service                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Recommended   |
| VRTSodm    | Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager<br><br>Veritas Extension for Oracle Disk Manager is a custom storage interface designed specifically for Oracle. Oracle Disk Manager enables Oracle to improve performance and manage system bandwidth. | Recommended   |

**Table F-1** Storage Foundation and High Availability packages (*continued*)

| packages    | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Configuration |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| VRTSsfcp161 | <p>Symantec Storage Foundation Installer</p> <p>The Storage Foundation Common Product installer package contains the installer libraries and product scripts that perform the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ installation</li> <li>■ configuration</li> <li>■ upgrade</li> <li>■ uninstallation</li> <li>■ adding nodes</li> <li>■ etc.</li> </ul> <p>You can use these script to simplify the native operating system installations, configurations, and upgrades.</p>                                   | Minimum       |
| VRTSsfmh    | <p>Veritas Operations Manager Managed Host.</p> <p>Discovers configuration information on a Storage Foundation managed host. If you want a central server to manage and monitor this managed host, download and install the VRTSsfmcs package on a server, and add this managed host to the Central Server. The VRTSsfmcs package is not part of this release. You can download it separately from:</p> <p><a href="http://www.symantec.com/veritas-operations-manager">http://www.symantec.com/veritas-operations-manager</a></p> | Recommended   |
| VRTSspt     | Veritas Software Support Tools                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Recommended   |
| VRTSfsadv   | Veritas File System Advanced                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Minimum       |
| VRTSfssdk   | <p>Veritas File System Software Developer Kit</p> <p>For VxFS APIs, the package contains the public Software Developer Kit (headers, libraries, and sample code). It is required if some user programs use VxFS APIs.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | All           |

**Table F-1** Storage Foundation and High Availability packages (*continued*)

| packages  | Contents                                                                  | Configuration |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| VRTSvcsnr | Veritas Cluster Server Disk Reservation Modules and Utilities by Symantec | All           |

## Symantec Cluster Server installation packages

[Table F-2](#) shows the package name and contents for each English language package for Symantec Cluster Server (VCS). The table also gives you guidelines for which packages to install based whether you want the minimum, recommended, or advanced configuration.

When you install all Storage Foundation and VCS packages, the combined functionality is called Storage Foundation and High Availability.

See [“Storage Foundation and High Availability installation packages”](#) on page 551.

**Table F-2** VCS installation packages

| package    | Contents                                                               | Configuration |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| VRTSgab    | Symantec Cluster Server group membership and atomic broadcast services | Minimum       |
| VRTSilt    | Symantec Cluster Server low-latency transport                          | Minimum       |
| VRTSamf    | Symantec Cluster Server Asynchronous Monitoring Framework              | Minimum       |
| VRTSvcs    | Symantec Cluster Server                                                | Minimum       |
| VRTSvcsag  | Symantec Cluster Server Bundled Agents                                 | Minimum       |
| VRTSvxfen  | Veritas I/O fencing                                                    | Minimum       |
| VRTSvcssea | Consolidated database and enterprise agent packages                    | Recommended   |

**Table F-2** VCS installation packages (*continued*)

| package | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Configuration |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| VRTScps | Veritas Coordination Point Server<br><br>The Coordination Point Server is an alternate mechanism for I/O fencing. It implements I/O fencing through a client/server architecture and can provide I/O fencing for multiple VCS clusters. | All           |

## Chinese language packages

The following table shows the package name and contents for each Chinese language package.

**Table F-3** Chinese language packages

| package  | Contents                                                                       |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VRTSzhvm | Chinese Veritas Volume Manager by Symantec – Message Catalogs and Manual Pages |

## Japanese language packages

The following table show the package name and contents for each Japanese language package.

**Table F-4** Japanese language packages

| package   | Contents                                                                                                                           |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VRTSjacav | Japanese Symantec Cluster Server Agents for Storage Foundation Cluster File System – Manual Pages and Message Catalogs by Symantec |
| VRTSjacs  | Symantec Cluster Server Japanese Message Catalogs by Symantec                                                                      |
| VRTSjacse | Japanese Symantec High Availability Enterprise Agents by Symantec                                                                  |
| VRTSjadba | Japanese Symantec Oracle Real Application Cluster Support package by Symantec                                                      |
| VRTSjadbe | Japanese Symantec Storage Foundation for Oracle from Symantec – Message Catalogs                                                   |

**Table F-4** Japanese language packages (*continued*)

| package   | Contents                                                                          |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VRTSjafs  | Japanese Veritas File System – Message Catalog and Manual Pages                   |
| VRTSjaodm | Veritas Oracle Disk Manager Japanese Message Catalog and Manual Pages by Symantec |
| VRTSjvm   | Japanese Veritas Volume Manager by Symantec – Message Catalogs and Manual Pages   |
| VRTSmulic | Multi-language Symantec License Utilities                                         |

## Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized installation packages

[Table F-5](#) lists the packages that are obsolete or reorganized for Storage Foundation and High Availability.

**Table F-5** Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized packages

| package                          | Description          |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Obsolete and reorganized for 6.1 |                      |
| VRTSat                           | Obsolete             |
| VRTSatZH                         | Obsolete             |
| VRTSatJA                         | Obsolete             |
| Obsolete and reorganized for 5.1 |                      |
| Infrastructure                   |                      |
| SYMCima                          | Obsolete             |
| VRTSaa                           | Included in VRTSsfmh |
| VRTSccg                          | Included in VRTSsfmh |
| VRTSdbms3                        | Obsolete             |
| VRTSicsco                        | Obsolete             |
| VRTSjre                          | Obsolete             |

**Table F-5** Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized packages (*continued*)

| package          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| VRTSjre15        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSmh           | Included in VRTSsfmh                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| VRTSobc33        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSobweb        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSobgui        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSspb          | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSsfm          | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTSweb          | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Product packages |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| VRTSacclib       | <p>Obsolete</p> <p>The following information is for installations, upgrades, and uninstalls using the script- or web-based installer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For fresh installations VRTSacclib is not installed.</li> <li>■ For upgrades, the existing VRTSacclib is uninstalled and a new VRTSacclib is installed.</li> <li>■ For uninstalls, VRTSacclib is not uninstalled.</li> </ul> |
| VRTSalloc        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScmccc        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScmcm         | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScmcs         | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScscm         | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScscw         | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScsocw        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| VRTScssim        | Obsolete                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

**Table F-5** Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized packages (*continued*)

| package   | Description                             |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|
| VRTScutil | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSd2gui | Included in VRTSdbed                    |
| VRTSdb2ed | Included in VRTSdbed                    |
| VRTSdbcom | Included in VRTSdbed                    |
| VRTSdbed  | Included in VRTSdbed                    |
| VRTSdcli  | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSddlpr | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSdsa   | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSfas   | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSfasag | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSfsman | Included in the product's main package. |
| VRTSfmnd  | Included in the product's main package. |
| VRTSfpro  | Included in VRTSsfmh                    |
| VRTSgapms | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSmapro | Included in VRTSsfmh                    |
| VRTSorgui | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSsybed | Included in VRTSdbed                    |
| VRTSvail  | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSvcldb | Included in VRTSvcsea                   |
| VRTSvcsmn | Included in VRTSvcsc                    |
| VRTSvcscr | Included in VRTSvcsea                   |
| VRTSvcssy | Included in VRTSvcsea                   |
| VRTSvcsvr | Included in VRTSvcsc                    |
| VRTSvdid  | Obsolete                                |

**Table F-5** Symantec Storage Foundation obsolete and reorganized packages (*continued*)

| <b>package</b> | <b>Description</b>                      |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| VRTSvmmman     | Included in the product's main package. |
| VRTSvmpro      | Included in VRTSsfmh                    |
| VRTSvrpro      | Included in VRTSob                      |
| VRTSvrw        | Obsolete                                |
| VRTSvxmsa      | Obsolete                                |

# Troubleshooting installation issues

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Restarting the installer after a failed connection](#)
- [What to do if you see a licensing reminder](#)
- [Incorrect permissions for root on remote system](#)
- [Inaccessible system](#)
- [Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation for Databases \(SFDB\) tools from 5.0.x to 6.1 \(2184482\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting the webinstaller](#)

## Restarting the installer after a failed connection

If an installation is killed because of a failed connection, you can restart the installer to resume the installation. The installer detects the existing installation. The installer prompts you whether you want to resume the installation. If you resume the installation, the installation proceeds from the point where the installation failed.

## What to do if you see a licensing reminder

In this release, you can install without a license key. In order to comply with the End User License Agreement, you must either install a license key or make the host managed by a Management Server. If you do not comply with these terms within 60 days, the following warning messages result:

```
WARNING V-365-1-1 This host is not entitled to run Symantec Storage
Foundation/Symantec Cluster Server.As set forth in the End User
License Agreement (EULA) you must complete one of the two options
set forth below. To comply with this condition of the EULA and
stop logging of this message, you have <nn> days to either:
- make this host managed by a Management Server (see
 http://go.symantec.com/sfhakeyless for details and free download),
 or
- add a valid license key matching the functionality in use on this host
 using the command 'vxlicinst' and validate using the command
 'vxkeyless set NONE'.
```

To comply with the terms of the EULA, and remove these messages, you must do one of the following within 60 days:

- Install a valid license key corresponding to the functionality in use on the host. After you install the license key, you must validate the license key using the following command:

```
/opt/VRTS/bin/vxlicrep
```

- Continue with keyless licensing by managing the server or cluster with a management server.

For more information about keyless licensing, see the following URL:

<http://go.symantec.com/sfhakeyless>

## Incorrect permissions for root on remote system

The permissions are inappropriate. Make sure you have remote root access permission on each system to which you are installing.

```
Failed to setup rsh communication on 10.198.89.241:
'rsh 10.198.89.241 <command>' failed
Trying to setup ssh communication on 10.198.89.241.
Failed to setup ssh communication on 10.198.89.241:
Login denied
```

```
Failed to login to remote system(s) 10.198.89.241.
Please make sure the password(s) are correct and superuser(root)
can login to the remote system(s) with the password(s).
If you want to setup rsh on remote system(s), please make sure
rsh with command argument ('rsh <host> <command>') is not
denied by remote system(s).
```

```
Either ssh or rsh is needed to be setup between the local node
and 10.198.89.241 for communication
```

```
Would you like the installer to setup ssh/rsh communication
automatically between the nodes?
Superuser passwords for the systems will be asked. [y,n,q] (y) n
```

```
System verification did not complete successfully
```

```
The following errors were discovered on the systems:
```

```
The ssh permission denied on 10.198.89.241
rsh exited 1 on 10.198.89.241
either ssh or rsh is needed to be setup between the local node
and 10.198.89.241 for communication
```

Suggested solution: You need to set up the systems to allow remote access using ssh or rsh.

See [“About configuring secure shell or remote shell communication modes before installing products”](#) on page 543.

---

**Note:** Remove remote shell permissions after completing the SFHA installation and configuration.

---

## Inaccessible system

The system you specified is not accessible. This could be for a variety of reasons such as, the system name was entered incorrectly or the system is not available over the network.

Suggested solution: Verify that you entered the system name correctly; use the `ping(1M)` command to verify the accessibility of the host.

## Upgrading Symantec Storage Foundation for Databases (SFDB) tools from 5.0.x to 6.1 (2184482)

The `sfua_rept_migrate` command results in an error message after upgrading SFHA or SF for Oracle RAC version 5.0 to SFHA or SF for Oracle RAC 6.1.

When upgrading from SFHA version 5.0 to SFHA 6.1 the S\*vxdbms3 startup script is renamed to NO\_S\*vxdbms3. The S\*vxdbms3 startup script is required by sfua\_rept\_upgrade. Thus when sfua\_rept\_upgrade is run, it is unable to find the S\*vxdbms3 startup script and gives the error message:

```
/sbin/rc3.d/S*vxdbms3 not found
SFORA sfua_rept_migrate ERROR V-81-3558 File: is missing.
SFORA sfua_rept_migrate ERROR V-81-9160 Failed to mount repository.
```

## Workaround

Before running sfua\_rept\_migrate, rename the startup script NO\_S\*vxdbms3 to S\*vxdbms3.

# Troubleshooting the webinstaller

This section provides possible solutions to problems that may occur when using the webinstaller script:

- Issue: The webinstaller script may report an error.

You may receive a similar error message when using the webinstaller:

```
Error: could not get hostname and IP address
```

Solution: Check whether /etc/hosts and /etc/resolv.conf file are correctly configured.

- Issue: The hostname is not a fully qualified domain name.

You must have a fully qualified domain name for the hostname in `https://<hostname>:<port>/`.

Solution: Check whether the domain section is defined in /etc/resolv.conf file.

- Issue: FireFox 3 may report an error.

You may receive a similar error message when using FireFox 3:

```
Certificate contains the same serial number as another certificate.
```

Solution: Visit FireFox knowledge base website:

<http://support.mozilla.com/en-US/kb/Certificate+contains+the+same+serial+number+as+another+certificate>

# Troubleshooting cluster installation

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Unmount failures](#)
- [Command failures](#)
- [Installer cannot create UUID for the cluster](#)
- [The vxfsentsthdw utility fails when SCSI TEST UNIT READY command fails](#)
- [Troubleshooting CP server](#)
- [Troubleshooting server-based fencing on the SFHA cluster nodes](#)
- [Issues during online migration of coordination points](#)

## Unmount failures

The `umount` command can fail if a reference is being held by an NFS server. Unshare the mount point and try the unmount again.

## Command failures

This section describes command failures.

- Manual pages not accessible with the `man` command. Set the `MANPATH` environment variable appropriately.  
See [“Setting environment variables”](#) on page 68.

- The `mount`, `fsck`, and `mkfs` utilities reserve a shared volume. They fail on volumes that are in use. Be careful when accessing shared volumes with other utilities such as `dd`, it is possible for these commands to destroy data on the disk.
- Running some commands, such as `vxupgrade -n 7 /vol02`, can generate the following error message:

```
vxfs vxupgrade: ERROR: not primary in a cluster file system
```

This means that you can run this command only on the primary, that is, the system that mounted this file system first.

## Installer cannot create UUID for the cluster

The installer displays the following error message if the installer cannot find the `uuidconfig.pl` script before it configures the UUID for the cluster:

```
Couldn't find uuidconfig.pl for uuid configuration,
please create uuid manually before start vcs
```

You may see the error message during SFHA configuration, upgrade, or when you add a node to the cluster using the installer.

Workaround: To start SFHA, you must run the `uuidconfig.pl` script manually to configure the UUID on each cluster node.

### To configure the cluster UUID when you create a cluster manually

- ◆ On one node in the cluster, perform the following command to populate the cluster UUID on each node in the cluster.

```
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/uuidconfig.pl -clus -configure nodeA
nodeB ... nodeN
```

Where `nodeA`, `nodeB`, through `nodeN` are the names of the cluster nodes.

## The `vxfcntlsthdw` utility fails when SCSI TEST UNIT READY command fails

While running the `vxfcntlsthdw` utility, you may see a message that resembles as follows:

```
Issuing SCSI TEST UNIT READY to disk reserved by other node
FAILED.
```

Contact the storage provider to have the hardware configuration fixed.

The disk array does not support returning success for a `SCSI TEST UNIT READY` command when another host has the disk reserved using SCSI-3 persistent reservations. This happens with the Hitachi Data Systems 99XX arrays if bit 186 of the system mode option is not enabled.

## Troubleshooting CP server

All CP server operations and messages are logged in the `/var/VRTScps/log` directory in a detailed and easy to read format. The entries are sorted by date and time. The logs can be used for troubleshooting purposes or to review for any possible security issue on the system that hosts the CP server.

The following files contain logs and text files that may be useful in understanding and troubleshooting a CP server:

- `/var/VRTScps/log/cpsrvr_[ABC].log`
- `/var/VRTSvcs/log/vcsauthserver.log` (Security related)
- If the `vxcperv` process fails on the CP server, then review the following diagnostic files:
  - `/var/VRTScps/diag/FFDC_CPS_pid_vxcperv.log`
  - `/var/VRTScps/diag/stack_pid_vxcperv.txt`

---

**Note:** If the `vxcperv` process fails on the CP server, these files are present in addition to a core file. VCS restarts `vxcperv` process automatically in such situations.

---

The file `/var/VRTSvcs/log/vxfen/vxfend_[ABC].log` contains logs that may be useful in understanding and troubleshooting fencing-related issues on a SF HA cluster (client cluster) node.

See [“Troubleshooting issues related to the CP server service group”](#) on page 567.

See [“Checking the connectivity of CP server”](#) on page 567.

See [“Issues during fencing startup on SF HA cluster nodes set up for server-based fencing”](#) on page 568.

See [“Issues during online migration of coordination points”](#) on page 568.

## Troubleshooting issues related to the CP server service group

If you cannot bring up the CPSSG service group after the CP server configuration, perform the following steps:

- Verify that the CPSSG service group and its resources are valid and properly configured in the VCS configuration.
- Check the VCS engine log (`/var/VRTSvcs/log/engine_[ABC].log`) to see if any of the CPSSG service group resources are **FAULTED**.
- Review the sample dependency graphs to make sure the required resources are configured correctly.

## Checking the connectivity of CP server

You can test the connectivity of CP server using the `cpsadm` command.

You must have set the environment variables `CPS_USERNAME` and `CPS_DOMAINTYPE` to run the `cpsadm` command on the SF HA cluster (client cluster) nodes.

### To check the connectivity of CP server

- ◆ Run the following command to check whether a CP server is up and running at a process level:

```
cpsadm -s cp_server -a ping_cps
```

where `cp_server` is the virtual IP address or virtual hostname on which the CP server is listening.

## Troubleshooting server-based fencing on the SFHA cluster nodes

The file `/var/VRTSvcs/log/vxfen/vxfend_[ABC].log` contains logs files that may be useful in understanding and troubleshooting fencing-related issues on a SFHA cluster (application cluster) node.

## Issues during fencing startup on SF HA cluster nodes set up for server-based fencing

**Table H-1** Fencing startup issues on SF HA cluster (client cluster) nodes

| Issue                                                                          | Description and resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><code>cpsadm</code> command on the SF HA cluster gives connection error</p> | <p>If you receive a connection error message after issuing the <code>cpsadm</code> command on the SF HA cluster, perform the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the CP server is reachable from all the SF HA cluster nodes.</li> <li>■ Check the <code>/etc/vxfenmode</code> file and ensure that the SF HA cluster nodes use the correct CP server virtual IP or virtual hostname and the correct port number.</li> <li>■ For HTTPS communication, ensure that the virtual IP and ports listed for the server can listen to HTTPS requests.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                               |
| <p>Authorization failure</p>                                                   | <p>Authorization failure occurs when the nodes on the client clusters and or users are not added in the CP server configuration. Therefore, fencing on the SF HA cluster (client cluster) node is not allowed to access the CP server and register itself on the CP server. Fencing fails to come up if it fails to register with a majority of the coordination points.</p> <p>To resolve this issue, add the client cluster node and user in the CP server configuration and restart fencing.</p> <p>See <a href="#">"Preparing the CP servers manually for use by the SF HA cluster"</a> on page 246.</p>                                                                                                                                    |
| <p>Authentication failure</p>                                                  | <p>If you had configured secure communication between the CP server and the SF HA cluster (client cluster) nodes, authentication failure can occur due to the following causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The client cluster requires its own private key, a signed certificate, and a Certification Authority's (CA) certificate to establish secure communication with the CP server. If any of the files are missing or corrupt, communication fails.</li> <li>■ If the client cluster certificate does not correspond to the client's private key, communication fails.</li> <li>■ If the CP server and client cluster do not have a common CA in their certificate chain of trust, then communication fails.</li> </ul> |

## Issues during online migration of coordination points

During online migration of coordination points using the `vxfenswap` utility, the operation is automatically rolled back if a failure is encountered during validation of coordination points from any of the cluster nodes.

Validation failure of the new set of coordination points can occur in the following circumstances:

- The `/etc/vxfenmode.test` file is not updated on all the SF HA cluster nodes, because new coordination points on the node were being picked up from an old `/etc/vxfenmode.test` file. The `/etc/vxfenmode.test` file must be updated with the current details. If the `/etc/vxfenmode.test` file is not present, `vxfenswap` copies configuration for new coordination points from the `/etc/vxfenmode` file.
- The coordination points listed in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file on the different SF HA cluster nodes are not the same. If different coordination points are listed in the `/etc/vxfenmode` file on the cluster nodes, then the operation fails due to failure during the coordination point snapshot check.
- There is no network connectivity from one or more SF HA cluster nodes to the CP server(s).
- Cluster, nodes, or users for the SF HA cluster nodes have not been added on the new CP servers, thereby causing authorization failure.

## Vxfen service group activity after issuing the `vxfenswap` command

The Coordination Point agent reads the details of coordination points from the `vxfenconfig -l` output and starts monitoring the registrations on them.

Thus, during `vxfenswap`, when the `vxfenmode` file is being changed by the user, the Coordination Point agent does not move to FAULTED state but continues monitoring the old set of coordination points.

As long as the changes to `vxfenmode` file are not committed or the new set of coordination points are not reflected in `vxfenconfig -l` output, the Coordination Point agent continues monitoring the old set of coordination points it read from `vxfenconfig -l` output in every monitor cycle.

The status of the Coordination Point agent (either ONLINE or FAULTED) depends upon the accessibility of the coordination points, the registrations on these coordination points, and the fault tolerance value.

When the changes to `vxfenmode` file are committed and reflected in the `vxfenconfig -l` output, then the Coordination Point agent reads the new set of coordination points and proceeds to monitor them in its new monitor cycle.

## Sample SF HA cluster setup diagrams for CP server-based I/O fencing

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Configuration diagrams for setting up server-based I/O fencing](#)

### Configuration diagrams for setting up server-based I/O fencing

The following CP server configuration diagrams can be used as guides when setting up CP server within your configuration:

- Two unique client clusters that are served by 3 CP servers:
- Client cluster that is served by highly available CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks:
- Two node campus cluster that is served by remote CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks:
- Multiple client clusters that are served by highly available CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks:

#### Two unique client clusters served by 3 CP servers

In the `vxfenmode` file on the client nodes, `vxfenmode` is set to `customized` with `vxfen` mechanism set to `cps`.

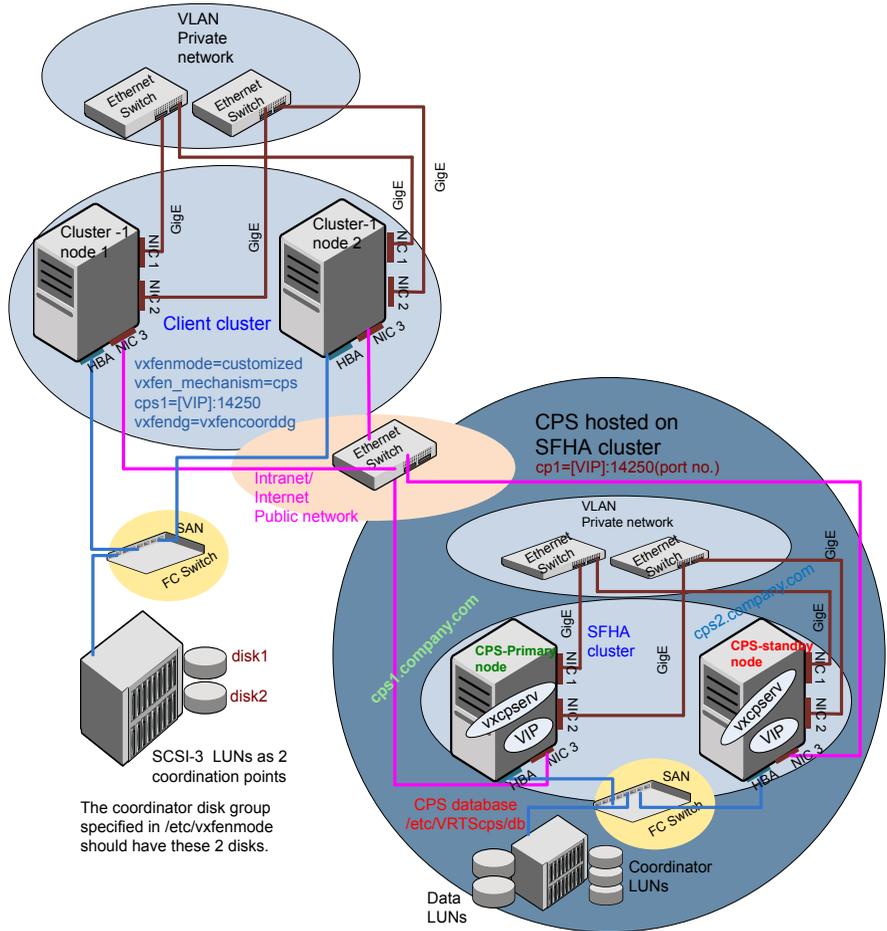
## Client cluster served by highly available CPS and 2 SCSI-3 disks

Figure I-1 displays a configuration where a client cluster is served by one highly available CP server and 2 local SCSI-3 LUNs (disks).

In the `vxfenmode` file on the client nodes, `vxfenmode` is set to customized with `vxfen` mechanism set to `cps`.

The two SCSI-3 disks are part of the disk group `vxfencoordg`. The third coordination point is a CP server hosted on an SFHA cluster, with its own shared database and coordinator disks.

**Figure I-1** Client cluster served by highly available CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks



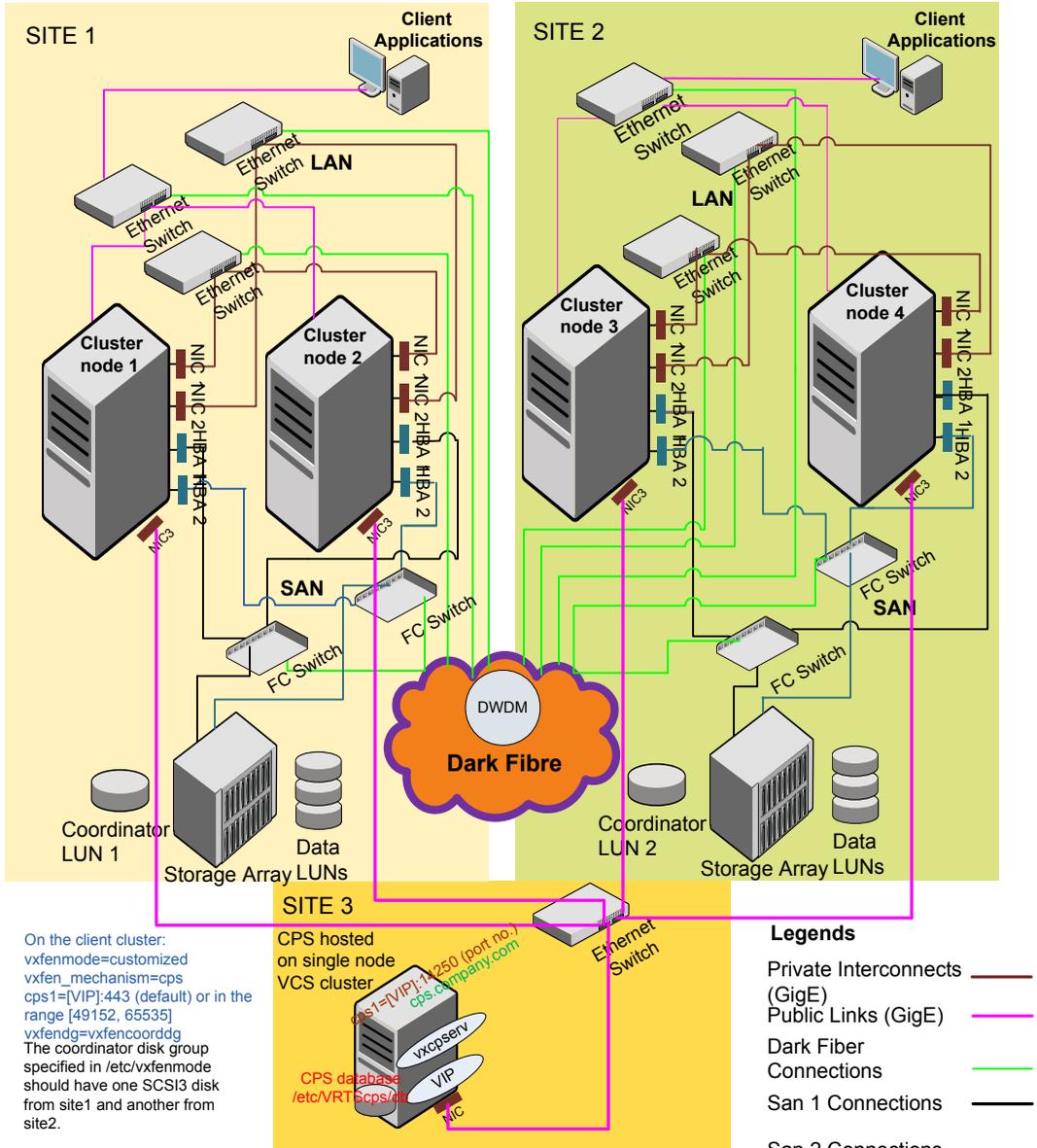
## Two node campus cluster served by remote CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks

Figure I-2 displays a configuration where a two node campus cluster is being served by one remote CP server and 2 local SCSI-3 LUN (disks).

In the `vxfenmode` file on the client nodes, `vxfenmode` is set to `customized` with `vxfen` mechanism set to `cps`.

The two SCSI-3 disks (one from each site) are part of disk group vxencoordg.  
 The third coordination point is a CP server on a single node VCS cluster.

**Figure I-2** Two node campus cluster served by remote CP server and 2 SCSI-3



On the client cluster:  
 vxfenmode=customized  
 vxfen\_mechanism=cps  
 cps1=[VIP]:443 (default) or in the range [49152, 65535]  
 vxfendg=vxfencoordg  
 The coordinator disk group specified in /etc/vxfenmode should have one SCSI3 disk from site1 and another from site2.

CPS hosted on single node VCS cluster



CPS database /etc/VRT/cps/443

## Multiple client clusters served by highly available CP server and 2 SCSI-3 disks

In the `vxfenmode` file on the client nodes, `vxfenmode` is set to `customized` with `vxfen` mechanism set to `cps`.

The two SCSI-3 disks are part of the disk group `vxfencoordg`. The third coordination point is a CP server, hosted on an SFHA cluster, with its own shared database and coordinator disks.

# Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks](#)

## Reconciling major/minor numbers for NFS shared disks

Your configuration may include disks on the shared bus that support NFS. You can configure the NFS file systems that you export on disk partitions or on Veritas Volume Manager volumes.

An example disk partition name is `/dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2`.

An example volume name is `/dev/vx/dsk/shreddg/vol13`. Each name represents the block device on which the file system is to be mounted.

In a VCS cluster, block devices providing NFS service must have the same major and minor numbers on each cluster node. Major numbers identify required device drivers (such as a Solaris partition or a VxVM volume). Minor numbers identify the specific devices themselves. NFS also uses major and minor numbers to identify the exported file system.

Major and minor numbers must be verified to ensure that the NFS identity for the file system is the same when exported from each node.

## Checking major and minor numbers for disk partitions

The following sections describe checking and changing, if necessary, the major and minor numbers for disk partitions used by cluster nodes.

### To check major and minor numbers on disk partitions

- ◆ Use the following command on all nodes exporting an NFS file system. This command displays the major and minor numbers for the block device.

```
ls -lL block_device
```

The variable *block\_device* refers to a partition where a file system is mounted for export by NFS. Use this command on each NFS file system. For example, type:

```
ls -lL /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

Output on Node A resembles:

```
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32,1 Dec 3 11:50 /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

Output on Node B resembles:

```
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32,1 Dec 3 11:55 /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

Note that the major numbers (32) and the minor numbers (1) match, satisfactorily meeting the requirement for NFS file systems.

### To reconcile the major numbers that do not match on disk partitions

- 1 Reconcile the major and minor numbers, if required. For example, if the output in the previous section resembles the following, perform the instructions beginning step 2:

Output on Node A:

```
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32,1 Dec 3 11:50 /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

Output on Node B:

```
crw-r----- 1 root sys 36,1 Dec 3 11:55 /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

- 2 Place the VCS command directory in your path.

```
export PATH=$PATH:/usr/sbin:/sbin:/opt/VRTS/bin
```

- 3 Attempt to change the major number on System B (now 36) to match that of System A (32). Use the command:

```
haremajor -sd major_number
```

For example, on Node B, enter:

```
haremajor -sd 32
```

- 4 If the command succeeds, go to step 8.
- 5 If the command fails, you may see a message resembling:

```
Error: Preexisting major number 32
These are available numbers on this system: 128...
Check /etc/name_to_major on all systems for
available numbers.
```

- 6 Notice that the number 36 (the major number on Node A) is not available on Node B. Run the `haremajor` command on Node B and change it to 128,

```
haremajor -sd 128
```

- 7 Run the same command on Node A. If the command fails on Node A, the output lists the available numbers. Rerun the command on both nodes, setting the major number to one available to both.
- 8 Reboot each system on which the command succeeds.
- 9 Proceed to reconcile the major numbers for your next partition.

#### To reconcile the minor numbers that do not match on disk partitions

- 1 In the example, the minor numbers are 1 and 3 and are reconciled by setting to 30 on each node.
- 2 Type the following command on both nodes using the name of the block device:

```
ls -l /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2
```

Output from this command resembles the following on Node A:

```
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 83 Dec 3 11:50
/dev/dsk/c1t1d0s2 -> ../../
devices/sbus@1f,0/QLGC,isp@0,10000/sd@1,0:d,raw
```

The device name (in bold) includes the slash following the word `devices`, and continues to, but does not include, the colon.

- 3 Type the following command on both nodes to determine the instance numbers that the SCSI driver uses:

```
grep sd /etc/path_to_inst | sort -n -k 2,2
```

Output from this command resembles the following on Node A:

```
"/sbus@1f,0/QLGC,isp@0,10000/sd@0,0" 0 "sd"
"/sbus@1f,0/QLGC,isp@0,10000/sd@1,0" 1 "sd"
"/sbus@1f,0/QLGC,isp@0,10000/sd@2,0" 2 "sd"
"/sbus@1f,0/QLGC,isp@0,10000/sd@3,0" 3 "sd"
.
.
"/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000/sd@d,0" 27 "sd"
"/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000/sd@e,0" 28 "sd"
"/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000/sd@f,0" 29 "sd"
```

In the output, the instance numbers are in the second field.

The instance number that is associated with the device name that matches the name for Node A displayed in step 2, is "1."

- 4 Compare instance numbers for the device in the output on each node.

After you review the instance numbers, perform one of the following tasks:

- If the instance number from one node is unused on the other— it does not appear in the output of step 3—edit `/etc/path_to_inst`. You edit this file to make the second node's instance number similar to the number of the first node.
- If the instance numbers in use on both nodes, edit `/etc/path_to_inst` on both nodes. Change the instance number that is associated with the device name to an unused number. The number needs to be greater than the highest number that other devices use. For example, the output of step 3 shows the instance numbers that all devices use (from 0 to 29). You edit the file `/etc/path_to_inst` on each node and reset the instance numbers to 30.

- 5 Type the following command to reboot each node on which `/etc/path_to_inst` was modified:

```
reboot -- -rv
```

## Checking the major and minor number for VxVM volumes

The following sections describe checking and changing, if necessary, the major and minor numbers for the VxVM volumes that cluster systems use.

### To check major and minor numbers on VxVM volumes

- 1 Place the VCS command directory in your path. For example:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/usr/sbin:/sbin:/opt/VRTS/bin
```

- 2 To list the devices, use the `ls -lL block_device` command on each node:

```
ls -lL /dev/vx/dsk/shareddg/vol3
```

On Node A, the output may resemble:

```
brw----- 1 root root 32,43000 Mar 22 16:4 1
/dev/vx/dsk/shareddg/vol3
```

On Node B, the output may resemble:

```
brw----- 1 root root 36,43000 Mar 22 16:4 1
/dev/vx/dsk/shareddg/vol3
```

- 3 Import the associated shared disk group on each node.

- 4 Use the following command on each node exporting an NFS file system. The command displays the major numbers for `vxio` and `vxspec` that Veritas Volume Manager uses. Note that other major numbers are also displayed, but only `vxio` and `vxspec` are of concern for reconciliation:

```
grep vx /etc/name_to_major
```

Output on Node A:

```
vxdump 30
vxio 32
vxspec 33
vxfen 87
vxglm 91
```

Output on Node B:

```
vxdump 30
vxio 36
vxspec 37
vxfen 87
vxglm 91
```

- 5 To change Node B's major numbers for `vxio` and `vxspec` to match those of Node A, use the command:

```
haremajor -vx major_number_vxio major_number_vxspec
```

For example, enter:

```
haremajor -vx 32 33
```

If the command succeeds, proceed to step 8. If this command fails, you receive a report similar to the following:

```
Error: Preexisting major number 32
These are available numbers on this system: 128...
Check /etc/name_to_major on all systems for
available numbers.
```

- 6 If you receive this report, use the `haremajor` command on Node A to change the major number (32/33) to match that of Node B (36/37). For example, enter:

```
haremajor -vx 36 37
```

If the command fails again, you receive a report similar to the following:

```
Error: Preexisting major number 36
These are available numbers on this node: 126...
Check /etc/name_to_major on all systems for
available numbers.
```

- 7 If you receive the second report, choose the larger of the two available numbers (in this example, 128). Use this number in the `haremajor` command to reconcile the major numbers. Type the following command on both nodes:

```
haremajor -vx 128 129
```

- 8 Reboot each node on which `haremajor` was successful.
- 9 If the minor numbers match, proceed to reconcile the major and minor numbers of your next NFS block device.
- 10 If the block device on which the minor number does not match is a volume, consult the `vxidg(1M)` manual page. The manual page provides instructions on reconciling the Veritas Volume Manager minor numbers, and gives specific reference to the `reminor` option.

Node where the `vxio` driver number have been changed require rebooting.

# Configuring LLT over UDP

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Using the UDP layer for LLT](#)
- [Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv4](#)
- [Using the UDP layer of IPv6 for LLT](#)
- [Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv6](#)

## Using the UDP layer for LLT

SFHA provides the option of using LLT over the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) layer for clusters using wide-area networks and routers. UDP makes LLT packets routable and thus able to span longer distances more economically.

### When to use LLT over UDP

Use LLT over UDP in the following situations:

- LLT must be used over WANs
- When hardware, such as blade servers, do not support LLT over Ethernet

LLT over UDP is slower than LLT over Ethernet. Use LLT over UDP only when the hardware configuration makes it necessary.

## Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv4

The following checklist is to configure LLT over UDP:

- Make sure that the LLT private links are on separate subnets. Set the broadcast address in `/etc/lltab` explicitly depending on the subnet for each link.

See [“Broadcast address in the /etc/llttab file”](#) on page 583.

- Make sure that each NIC has an IP address that is configured before configuring LLT.
- Make sure the IP addresses in the /etc/llttab files are consistent with the IP addresses of the network interfaces.
- Make sure that each link has a unique not well-known UDP port.  
See [“Selecting UDP ports”](#) on page 585.
- Set the broadcast address correctly for direct-attached (non-routed) links.  
See [“Sample configuration: direct-attached links”](#) on page 587.
- For the links that cross an IP router, disable broadcast features and specify the IP address of each link manually in the /etc/llttab file.  
See [“Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers”](#) on page 589.

## Broadcast address in the /etc/llttab file

The broadcast address is set explicitly for each link in the following example.

- Display the content of the /etc/llttab file on the first node sys1:

```
sys1 # cat /etc/llttab

set-node sys1
set-cluster 1
link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.168.9.1 192.168.9.255
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.168.10.1 192.168.10.255
```

Verify the subnet mask using the ifconfig command to ensure that the two links are on separate subnets.

- Display the content of the /etc/llttab file on the second node sys2:

```
sys2 # cat /etc/llttab

set-node sys2
set-cluster 1
link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.168.9.2 192.168.9.255
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.168.10.2 192.168.10.255
```

Verify the subnet mask using the ifconfig command to ensure that the two links are on separate subnets.

## The link command in the /etc/llttab file

Review the link command information in this section for the /etc/llttab file. See the following information for sample configurations:

- See [“Sample configuration: direct-attached links”](#) on page 587.
- See [“Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers”](#) on page 589.

[Table K-1](#) describes the fields of the link command that are shown in the /etc/llttab file examples. Note that some of the fields differ from the command for standard LLT links.

**Table K-1** Field description for link command in /etc/llttab

| Field                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>tag-name</i>      | A unique string that is used as a tag by LLT; for example link1, link2,....                                                                                                                               |
| <i>device</i>        | The device path of the UDP protocol; for example /dev/udp.                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>node-range</i>    | Nodes using the link. "-" indicates all cluster nodes are to be configured for this link.                                                                                                                 |
| <i>link-type</i>     | Type of link; must be "udp" for LLT over UDP.                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>udp-port</i>      | Unique UDP port in the range of 49152-65535 for the link.<br>See <a href="#">“Selecting UDP ports”</a> on page 585.                                                                                       |
| <i>MTU</i>           | "-" is the default, which has a value of 8192. The value may be increased or decreased depending on the configuration. Use the <code>lltstat -l</code> command to display the current value.              |
| <i>IP address</i>    | IP address of the link on the local node.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>bcast-address</i> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ For clusters with enabled broadcasts, specify the value of the subnet broadcast address.</li> <li>■ "-" is the default for clusters spanning routers.</li> </ul> |

## The set-addr command in the /etc/llttab file

The `set-addr` command in the /etc/llttab file is required when the broadcast feature of LLT is disabled, such as when LLT must cross IP routers.

See [“Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers”](#) on page 589.

[Table K-2](#) describes the fields of the set-addr command.

**Table K-2** Field description for set-addr command in /etc/llttab

| Field                | Description                                                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>node-id</i>       | The node ID of the peer node; for example, 0.                                |
| <i>link tag-name</i> | The string that LLT uses to identify the link; for example link1, link2,.... |
| <i>address</i>       | IP address assigned to the link for the peer node.                           |

## Selecting UDP ports

When you select a UDP port, select an available 16-bit integer from the range that follows:

- Use available ports in the private range 49152 to 65535
- Do not use the following ports:
  - Ports from the range of well-known ports, 0 to 1023
  - Ports from the range of registered ports, 1024 to 49151

To check which ports are defined as defaults for a node, examine the file /etc/services. You should also use the `netstat` command to list the UDP ports currently in use. For example:

```
netstat -a | more
UDP
 Local Address Remote Address State

 *.sunrpc *.* Idle
 *.32771 *.32776 Idle
 *.32777 *.32777 Idle
 *.name *.biff Idle
 *.talk *.32779 Idle
 .
 .
 .
 *.55098 Idle
 *.syslog Idle
```

```

*.58702 Idle
. Unbound

```

Look in the UDP section of the output; the UDP ports that are listed under Local Address are already in use. If a port is listed in the /etc/services file, its associated name is displayed rather than the port number in the output.

## Configuring the netmask for LLT

For nodes on different subnets, set the netmask so that the nodes can access the subnets in use. Run the following command and answer the prompt to set the netmask:

```
ifconfig interface_name netmask netmask
```

For example:

- For the first network interface on the node sys1:

```
IP address=192.168.9.1, Broadcast address=192.168.9.255,
Netmask=255.255.255.0
```

For the first network interface on the node sys2:

```
IP address=192.168.9.2, Broadcast address=192.168.9.255,
Netmask=255.255.255.0
```

- For the second network interface on the node sys1:

```
IP address=192.168.10.1, Broadcast address=192.168.10.255,
Netmask=255.255.255.0
```

For the second network interface on the node sys2:

```
IP address=192.168.10.2, Broadcast address=192.168.10.255,
Netmask=255.255.255.0
```

## Configuring the broadcast address for LLT

For nodes on different subnets, set the broadcast address in /etc/lfttab depending on the subnet that the links are on.

An example of a typical /etc/lfttab file when nodes are on different subnets. Note the explicitly set broadcast address for each link.

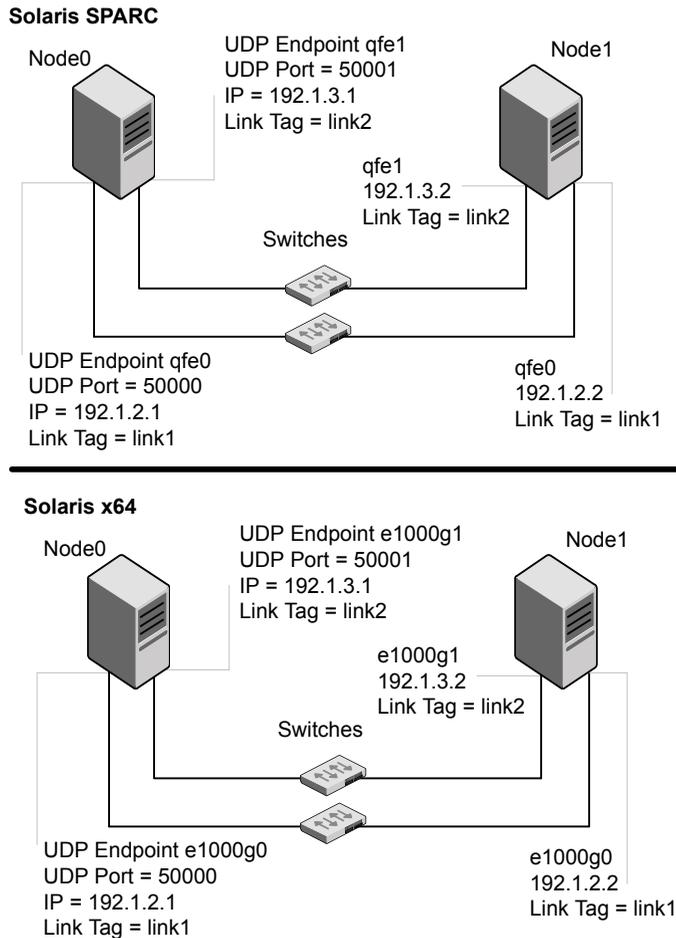
```
cat /etc/llttab
set-node nodexyz
set-cluster 100

link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.168.30.1 192.168.30.255
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.168.31.1 192.168.31.255
```

## Sample configuration: direct-attached links

Figure K-1 depicts a typical configuration of direct-attached links employing LLT over UDP.

**Figure K-1** A typical configuration of direct-attached links that use LLT over UDP



The configuration that the `/etc/llttab` file for Node 0 represents has directly attached crossover links. It might also have the links that are connected through a hub or switch. These links do not cross routers.

LLT sends broadcast requests to peer nodes to discover their addresses. So the addresses of peer nodes do not need to be specified in the `/etc/llttab` file using the `set-addr` command. For direct attached links, you do need to set the broadcast

address of the links in the `/etc/llttab` file. Verify that the IP addresses and broadcast addresses are set correctly by using the `ifconfig -a` command.

```
set-node Node0
set-cluster 1
#configure Links
#link tag-name device node-range link-type udp port MTU \
IP-address bcast-address
link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.1.2.1 192.1.2.255
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.1.3.1 192.1.3.255
```

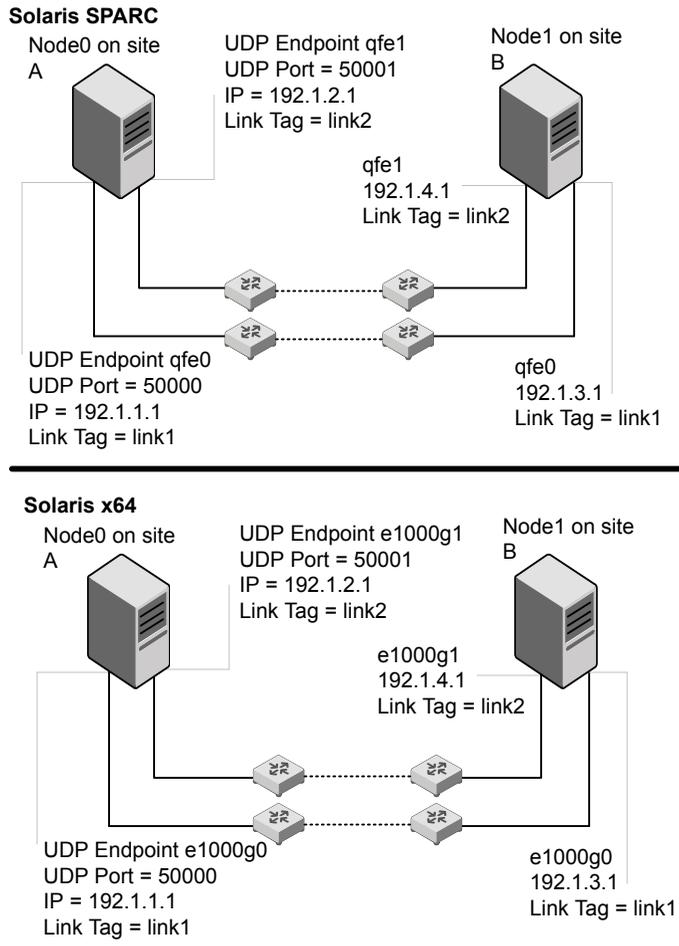
The file for Node 1 resembles:

```
set-node Node1
set-cluster 1
#configure Links
#link tag-name device node-range link-type udp port MTU \
IP-address bcast-address
link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.1.2.2 192.1.2.255
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.1.3.2 192.1.3.255
```

## Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers

[Figure K-2](#) depicts a typical configuration of links crossing an IP router employing LLT over UDP. The illustration shows two nodes of a four-node cluster.

**Figure K-2** A typical configuration of links crossing an IP router



The configuration that the following `/etc/llttab` file represents for Node 1 has links crossing IP routers. Notice that IP addresses are shown for each link on each peer node. In this configuration broadcasts are disabled. Hence, the broadcast address does not need to be set in the `link` command of the `/etc/llttab` file.

```
set-node Node1
set-cluster 1
```

```

link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.1.3.1 -
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.1.4.1 -

#set address of each link for all peer nodes in the cluster
#format: set-addr node-id link tag-name address
set-addr 0 link1 192.1.1.1
set-addr 0 link2 192.1.2.1
set-addr 2 link1 192.1.5.2
set-addr 2 link2 192.1.6.2
set-addr 3 link1 192.1.7.3
set-addr 3 link2 192.1.8.3

#disable LLT broadcasts
set-bcasthb 0
set-arp 0

```

The `/etc/llttab` file on Node 0 resembles:

```

set-node Node0
set-cluster 1

link link1 /dev/udp - udp 50000 - 192.1.1.1 -
link link2 /dev/udp - udp 50001 - 192.1.2.1 -

#set address of each link for all peer nodes in the cluster
#format: set-addr node-id link tag-name address
set-addr 1 link1 192.1.3.1
set-addr 1 link2 192.1.4.1
set-addr 2 link1 192.1.5.2
set-addr 2 link2 192.1.6.2
set-addr 3 link1 192.1.7.3
set-addr 3 link2 192.1.8.3

#disable LLT broadcasts
set-bcasthb 0
set-arp 0

```

## Using the UDP layer of IPv6 for LLT

Storage Foundation 6.1 provides the option of using LLT over the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) layer for clusters using wide-area networks and routers. UDP makes LLT packets routable and thus able to span longer distances more economically.

## When to use LLT over UDP

Use LLT over UDP in the following situations:

- LLT must be used over WANs
- When hardware, such as blade servers, do not support LLT over Ethernet

## Manually configuring LLT over UDP using IPv6

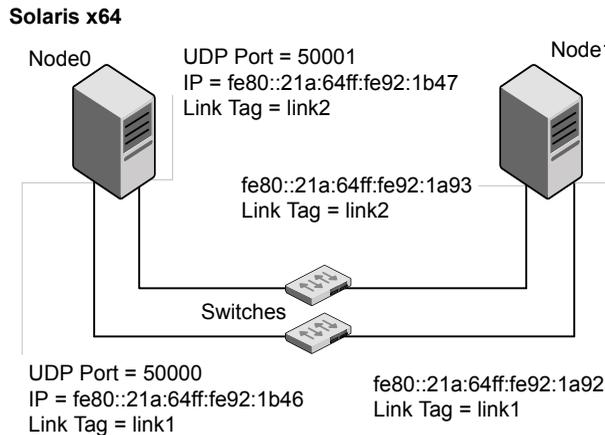
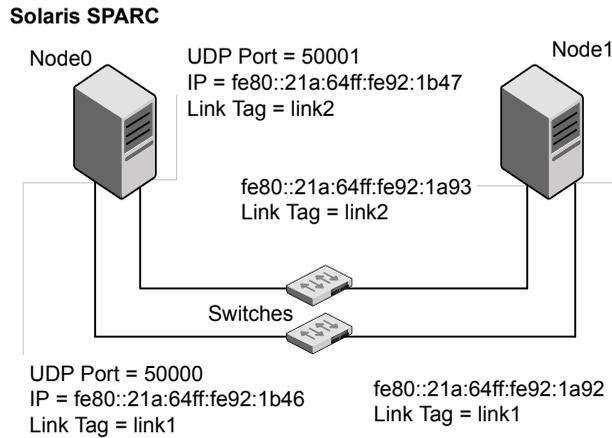
The following checklist is to configure LLT over UDP:

- For UDP6, the multicast address is set to "-".
- Make sure that each NIC has an IPv6 address that is configured before configuring LLT.
- Make sure the IPv6 addresses in the `/etc/litab` files are consistent with the IPv6 addresses of the network interfaces.
- Make sure that each link has a unique not well-known UDP port.
- For the links that cross an IP router, disable multicast features and specify the IPv6 address of each link manually in the `/etc/litab` file.  
See [“Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers”](#) on page 594.

## Sample configuration: direct-attached links

[Figure K-3](#) depicts a typical configuration of direct-attached links employing LLT over UDP.

**Figure K-3** A typical configuration of direct-attached links that use LLT over UDP



The configuration that the `/etc/lltab` file for Node 0 represents has directly attached crossover links. It might also have the links that are connected through a hub or switch. These links do not cross routers.

LLT uses IPv6 multicast requests for peer node address discovery. So the addresses of peer nodes do not need to be specified in the `/etc/lltab` file using the `set-addr` command. Use the `ifconfig -a` command to verify that the IPv6 address is set correctly.

```
set-node Node0
set-cluster 1
```

```
#configure Links
#link tag-name device node-range link-type udp port MTU \
IP-address mcast-address
link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50000 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b46 -
link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50001 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b47 -
```

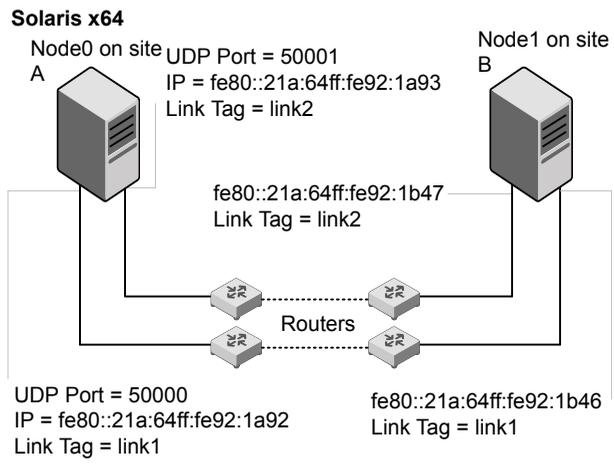
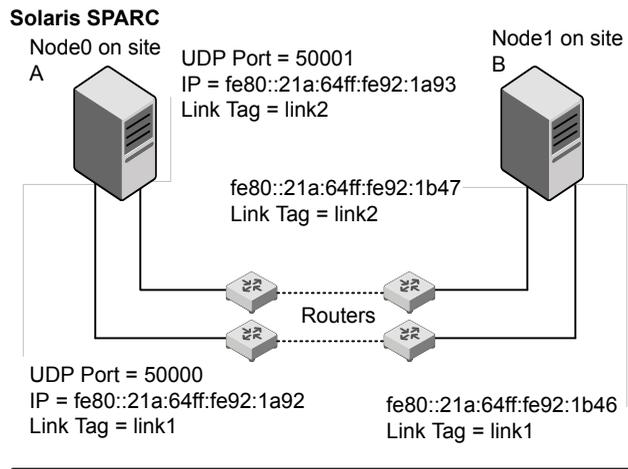
The file for Node 1 resembles:

```
set-node Node1
set-cluster 1
#configure Links
#link tag-name device node-range link-type udp port MTU \
IP-address mcast-address
link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50000 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a92 -
link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50001 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a93 -
```

## Sample configuration: links crossing IP routers

[Figure K-4](#) depicts a typical configuration of links crossing an IP router employing LLT over UDP. The illustration shows two nodes of a four-node cluster.

**Figure K-4** A typical configuration of links crossing an IP router



The configuration that the following `/etc/llttab` file represents for Node 1 has links crossing IP routers. Notice that IPv6 addresses are shown for each link on each peer node. In this configuration multicasts are disabled.

```
set-node Node1
set-cluster 1

link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50000 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a92 -
link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50001 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a93 -

#set address of each link for all peer nodes in the cluster
```

```
#format: set-addr node-id link tag-name address
set-addr 0 link1 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b46
set-addr 0 link2 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b47
set-addr 2 link1 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1d70
set-addr 2 link2 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1d71
set-addr 3 link1 fe80::209:6bff:fe1b:1c94
set-addr 3 link2 fe80::209:6bff:fe1b:1c95

#disable LLT multicasts
set-bcasthb 0
set-arp 0
```

The `/etc/llttab` file on Node 0 resembles:

```
set-node Node0
set-cluster 1

link link1 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50000 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b46 -
link link2 /dev/udp6 - udp6 50001 - fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1b47 -

#set address of each link for all peer nodes in the cluster
#format: set-addr node-id link tag-name address
set-addr 1 link1 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a92
set-addr 1 link2 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1a93
set-addr 2 link1 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1d70
set-addr 2 link2 fe80::21a:64ff:fe92:1d71
set-addr 3 link1 fe80::209:6bff:fe1b:1c94
set-addr 3 link2 fe80::209:6bff:fe1b:1c95

#disable LLT multicasts
set-bcasthb 0
set-arp 0
```



## Compatibility issues when installing Storage Foundation High Availability with other products

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when other Symantec products are present](#)
- [Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when VOM is already present](#)
- [Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when NetBackup is already present](#)

### **Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when other Symantec products are present**

Installing Storage Foundation when other Symantec products are installed can create compatibility issues. For example, installing Storage Foundation products when VOM, ApplicationHA, and NetBackup are present on the systems.

## **Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when VOM is already present**

If you plan to install or upgrade Storage Foundation products on systems where VOM has already been installed, be aware of the following compatibility issues:

- When you install or upgrade Storage Foundation products where VOM Central Server is present, the installer skips the VRTSsfmh upgrade and leaves the VOM Central Server and Managed Host packages as is.
- When uninstalling Storage Foundation products where VOM Central Server is present, the installer does not uninstall VRTSsfmh.
- When you install or upgrade Storage Foundation products where VOM Managed Host is present, the installer gives warning messages that it will upgrade VRTSsfmh.

## **Installing, uninstalling, or upgrading Storage Foundation products when NetBackup is already present**

If you plan to install or upgrade Storage Foundation on systems where NetBackup has already been installed, be aware of the following compatibility issues:

- When you install or upgrade Storage Foundation products where NetBackup is present, the installer does not uninstall VRTSspb and VRTSicsco. It does not upgrade VRTSat.
- When you uninstall Storage Foundation products where NetBackup is present, the installer does not uninstall VRTSspb, VRTSicsco, and VRTSat.

# Index

## A

- about
  - Deployment Server 269
  - global clusters 28
  - installation and configuration methods 46
  - installation preparation 59
  - installation using operating system-specific methods 220
  - response files 49
  - SORT 28
  - Symantec product licensing 52
  - Veritas Operations Manager 26
  - web-based installer 170
- adding
  - users 131
- agents
  - disabling 455
- applications, stopping 307
- assessing system
  - installation readiness 71
- attributes
  - UseFence 242
- Automated installer
  - about 221
  - installing 221
  - using 221

## B

- backup boot disk group 397
  - rejoining 397
- BE upgrade
  - administering BE in Solaris 11 393
  - completing Solaris 11 upgrade 392
  - creating new Solaris 11 BE 389
  - upgrading Solaris 11 using the installer 390
  - verifying Solaris 11 upgrade 392
- before using
  - web-based installer 171
- block device
  - partitions
    - example file name 575

- block device (*continued*)
  - volumes
    - example file name 575

## C

- cables
  - cross-over Ethernet 472
- changing root user 430
- checking
  - installation readiness 71
  - checking product versions 37
- cluster
  - removing a node from 487
  - verifying operation 440
- command failures 565
- commands
  - format 66
  - hastatus 440
  - hasys 441
  - litconfig 524
  - litstat 438
  - vxdisksetup (initializing disks) 140
  - vxlicinst 137–138
  - vxlicrep 137
- configuration
  - restoring the original 406
- configuring
  - private network 60
  - rsh 59
  - ssh 59
  - switches 60
- configuring SFHA
  - script-based installer 119
- configuring VCS
  - adding users 131
  - event notification 132–133
  - global clusters 135
  - starting 121
- controllers
  - private Ethernet 60
  - SCSI 63

- coordinator disks
  - DMP devices 31
  - for I/O fencing 31
  - setting up 240
- creating
  - /opt directory 68
  - backups 299
  - Flash archive 230
  - post-deployment scripts 231
- creating root user 67

**D**

- data disks
  - for I/O fencing 31
- deploying
  - specific Symantec release 287
  - Symantec product updates to your environment 284
- deployment management
  - overview 271
- deployment preferences
  - setting 274
- Deployment Script
  - installing 270
- Deployment Server
  - about 269
  - setting up 272
- Deployment Server command line option
  - for loading and downloading the most recent release information 276
  - for specifying a non-default repository location 275
- disabling
  - external network connection attempts 39
- disabling the agents 455
- disk space requirements 36
- disks
  - adding and initializing 140
  - coordinator 240
  - testing with vxfcntlshdw 141
  - verifying node access 142
- downloading maintenance releases and hot fixes 37

**E**

- eprom
  - parameters 60
- EMC powerpath
  - converting a foreign disk to auto:simple 412

- EMC PowerPath disk
  - converting a defined disk to auto:simple 414
  - converting a powervxvm disk to auto:simple 417
- Ethernet controllers 60, 472
- existing coordination points
  - order 190

**F**

- FC-AL controllers 66
- flarcreate 230
- Flash archive 230
  - post-deployment scripts 231
- freezing service groups 307

**G**

- GAB
  - description 26
- gabtab file
  - verifying after installation 524
- global clusters 28
  - configuration 135

**H**

- hastatus -summary command 440
- hasys -display command 441
- hubs 60
  - independent 472

**I**

- I/O fencing
  - checking disks 141
  - setting up 239
  - shared storage 141
- I/O fencing requirements
  - non-SCSI-3 44
- Install Bundles
  - integration options 310
- installer
  - about the script-based installer 75
- installer hot fixes
  - obtaining either manually or automatically 38
- Installing
  - SFHA with the web-based installer 174
  - web-based installer 174
- installing
  - Automated Installer 221
  - JumpStart 226
  - language packages 80

installing (*continued*)

- post 136
- SFHA using operating system-specific methods 220
- Symantec product license keys 55
- the Deployment Script 270
- using Flash archive 230
- using response files 194
- using the system command 232

**J**

## JumpStart

- installing 226

## Jumpstart

- Generating the finish scripts 227
- overview 226
- Preparing installation resources 228

**K**

## keyless licensing

- setting or changing the product level 53

**L**

## language packages

- removal 461

## license keys

- adding with vxlicinst 137
- replacing demo key 138

## licenses

- information about 137

## licensing

- installing Symantec product license keys 55
- setting or changing the product level for keyless licensing 53

## links

- private network 524

## Live Upgrade

- administering Solaris 10 boot environments 387
- completing Solaris 10 upgrade 385
- preparing 379
- reverting to primary boot environment 387
- Solaris 10 systems 378
- supported upgrade paths 376
- Switching boot environment for Solaris SPARC 388
- upgrading Solaris 10 on alternate boot disk 380
- upgrading Solaris 10 using the installer 384
- verifying Solaris 10 upgrade 387

Live Upgrade (*continued*)

- VVR environment 395

## LLT

- description 26
- interconnects 70
- verifying 438

## lltconfig command 524

## llthosts file

- verifying after installation 524

## lltstat command 438

## llttab file

- verifying after installation 524

## loading and downloading the most recent release information

- Deployment Server command line option for 276

## localized environment settings for using VVR

- settings for using VVR in a localized environment 304

## log files 566

**M**

## MAC addresses 60

## main.cf file

- contents after installation 529

## main.cf files 535

## major and minor numbers

- checking 576, 579
- shared devices 575

## manual pages

- potential problems 564
- troubleshooting 564

## media speed 70

- optimizing 68

## mounting

- software disc 70

**N**

## network switches 60

## NFS services

- shared storage 575

## nodes

- adding application nodes
  - configuring GAB 478
  - configuring LLT 478
  - configuring VXFEN 478
  - starting Volume Manager 477

## non-SCSI-3 fencing

- manual configuration 260

- non-SCSI-3 fencing (*continued*)
  - setting up 260
- non-SCSI-3 I/O fencing
  - requirements 44
- non-SCSI3 fencing
  - setting up 163
  - using installsfha 163

## O

- obtaining
  - installer hot fixes either automatically or manually 38
  - security exception on Mozilla Firefox 172
- optimizing
  - media speed 68
- original configuration
  - restoring the 406
- overview
  - deployment management 271

## P

- parameters
  - eprom 60
- PATH variable
  - VCS commands 437
- persistent reservations
  - SCSI-3 63
- phased 340
- phased upgrade 340, 342
  - example 341
  - using web-based installer 360
- planning to upgrade VVR 301
- post-deployment scripts 231
- post-upgrade
  - adding JBOD support 410
  - unsuppressing DMP for EMC PowerPath disks 411
  - updating variables 410
  - upgrading the array support library 410
  - verifying 428
- prechecking
  - using the installer 71
- preinstallation 301
- preinstallation check
  - web-based installer 173
- preparing
  - Live Upgrade 379
- preparing to upgrade 296

- preparing to upgrade VVR 307
- private network
  - configuring 60
- problems
  - accessing manual pages 564
  - executing file system commands 565

## R

- rejoining
  - backup boot disk group 397
- release images
  - viewing or downloading available 277
- release information
  - updating on systems without Internet access 288
- release notes 34
- releases
  - finding out which releases you have, and which upgrades or updates you may need 285
- removing
  - the Replicated Data Set 456
- removing a system from a cluster 487
- Replicated Data Set
  - removing the 456
- repository images
  - viewing and removing repository images stored in your repository 281
- response files
  - about 49
  - installation 194
  - rolling upgrade 370
  - syntax 49
  - uninstalling 466
  - upgrading 366
- restoring the original configuration 406
- rolling upgrade
  - using response files 370
  - using the script-based installer 334
  - versions 331
- rsh 122
  - configuration 59

## S

- script-based installer
  - about 75
  - SFHA configuration overview 119
- SCSI driver
  - determining instance numbers 577

- SCSI-3
    - persistent reservations 63
  - SCSI-3 persistent reservations
    - verifying 239
  - service groups
    - freezing 307
    - unfreezing 405
  - setting
    - deployment preferences 274
    - environment variables 68
  - setting up
    - Deployment Server 272
  - settings for using VVR in a localized environment
    - localized environment settings for using VVR 304
  - SFHA
    - configuring 119
    - coordinator disks 240
  - SFHA installation
    - preinstallation information 35
    - verifying
      - cluster operations 437
      - GAB operations 437
      - LLT operations 437
  - shared storage
    - Fibre Channel
      - setting up 66
    - NFS services 575
  - simultaneous install or upgrade 310
  - SMTP email notification 132
  - SNMP trap notification 133
  - specifying
    - non-default repository location 275
  - ssh 122
    - configuration 59
  - starting
    - web-based installer 171
  - starting configuration
    - installvcs program 122
    - Symantec product installer 121
  - stopping
    - applications 307
  - storage
    - setting up shared fibre 66
  - supported upgrade paths
    - Live Upgrade 376
  - switches 60
  - Symantec product license keys
    - installing 55
  - Symantec product updates
    - deploying to your environment 284
  - Symantec products
    - starting process 435
    - stopping process 435
  - Symantec release
    - deploying a specific release 287
  - system state attribute value 440
- ## T
- troubleshooting
    - accessing manual pages 564
    - executing file system commands 565
  - tunables file
    - about setting parameters 511
    - parameter definitions 516
    - preparing 515
    - setting for configuration 512
    - setting for installation 512
    - setting for upgrade 512
    - setting parameters 515
    - setting with no other operations 513
    - setting with un-integrated response file 514
- ## U
- unfreezing service groups 405
  - uninstalling
    - about removing Storage Foundation and High Availability 446
    - language packages 461
    - moving volumes from an encapsulated root disk 447
    - moving volumes to disk partitions 447
    - preparing to remove Veritas File System 454
    - preparing to remove Veritas Volume Manager 446
    - preparing to uninstall 446
    - using pkg uninstall command 460
    - using pkgrm command 460
    - using response files 466
    - using the web-based installer 459
  - unsuccessful upgrade 397
  - updating release information
    - on systems without Internet access 288
  - upgrade
    - array support 309
    - creating backups 299
    - getting ready 296

- upgrade (*continued*)
  - methods 291
  - phased 340, 342
  - supported upgrade paths 292
- upgrades or updates
  - finding out which releases you have 285
- upgrading
  - language packages 330
  - OS upgrade 320
  - phased 340
  - Solaris operating system 325
  - using product installer 313
  - using response files 366
  - using the product installer 318
  - using the product installer or manual steps 317
  - using the web-based installer 324
  - using upgrade scripts 320
- upgrading VVR
  - from 4.1 302
  - planning 301
  - preparing 307
- using Live Upgrade 374

## V

- VCS
  - command directory path variable 437
  - configuration files
    - main.cf 528
- verifying
  - product installation 434
- verifying installation
  - kernel component 436
- viewing and removing repository images
  - stored in your repository 281
- viewing or downloading
  - available release images 277
- Volume Manager
  - Fibre Channel 66
- vradmin
  - delpri 457
  - stoprep 456
- VVR 4.1
  - planning an upgrade from 302
- vvr\_upgrade\_finish script 407
- vxdisksetup command 140
- vxlicinst command 137
- vxlicrep command 137

- vxplex
  - used to remove mirrors of root disk volumes 314, 318

## W

- web-based installer 174
  - about 170
  - before using 171
  - installation 174
  - phased upgrade 360
  - preinstallation check 173
  - starting 171
  - uninstalling 459
  - upgrading 324